A Biophysical Assessment of the Philippine Territory of the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion

Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Program

WWF-Philippines

May 2003

CREDITS

AUTHORS:
Angel Alcala, Ph.D.
Monyeen Alava, M.Sc.
Emmanuel Anglo, Ph.D.
Naniel Aragones, Ph.D.
Emmanuel Bate, M.Sc.
Flordeliz Guarin, Ph.D.
Rudolf Hermes, Ph.D.
Daniel Lagunzad, Ph.D.
Augustus Rex Montebon, M.Sc.
Ramon Miclat
Jose Angelito Palma
Johanna Pe-Montebon
Hildie Maria Nacorda, M.Sc.
Teresita Perez, Ph.D.
Gavino Trono, Jr., Ph.D.
Arnel Andrew Yaptinchay, D.V.M.

EDITORS: Johanna Pe-Montebon, Evangeline F.B. Miclat, M.Sc., and Jose Noel Dumaup

TECHNICAL ASSISTANTS: Josephine Sumangil-Evangelista and Dino Leoncarlo Calderon

INTEGRATOR: Johanna Pe-Montebon

TECHNICAL ADVISERS/REVIEWERS: Alan White, Ph.D., Angel Alcala, Ph.D., and Romeo Trono

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT: The Biophysical Assessment of the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion is funded by WWF-US.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Credits 1
Table of Contents 2
List of Figures 5
List of Tables 7
List of Appendices 9

Chapter I
Introduction
THE ECOREGION CONSERVATION CONCEPT 10
OBJECTIVES OF THE BIO-PHYSICAL ASSESSMENT 11
METHODOLOGY 12

Chapter II
The Physical Setting within Sulu-Sulawesi
GEOGRAPHIC COVERAGE AND GEOMORPHOLOGY 13
- The Marine Environments of Sulu-Sulawesi 13
- The Philippine Inland Seas 14
- The Sulu Sea 17
- The Sulu Archipelago-Zamboanga Peninsula 19
- Sulawesi Sea 22

GEOLOGY 23
- Tectonic Setting and Geologic History 23
- Active Geologic Processes 28

METEOROLOGY 32
- Climatic Controls 32
- Monthly Station Weather 38

OCEANOGRAPHY 47
- Bathymetry of Major Basins 47
- Tides 48
- Currents 49
- Wind-Generated Waves 53
- Sea Surface Temperature (SST) 54
- Storm Surges 61

WATER QUALITY 62
- Riparian Ecosystems 62
- Estuarine and Associated Ecosystems 73
- Coastal and Marine Ecosystems 75
- Effects on Primary Production 79

Chapter III

The Watersheds and their Linkages to the Ecoregion

THE WATERSHED DEFINED 81
LOCATION, OCCURRENCE AND DISTRIBUTION 81
THREATS TO WATERSHED AREAS 85
- Agriculture and aquaculture 86
- Legislation and Resource Management 87

Chapter IV

Coastal and Marine Ecosystems and their Associated Species

I. THE MANGROVE ECOSYSTEM 88
- Coverage, Occurrence and Distribution 88
- Species diversity 88
- Importance 96
- Threats 98
- Resource Management 99

II. THE SEAWEED AND SEAGRASS ECOSYSTEMS 101
- Occurrence, Distribution and Data Gaps 101
- Importance 104
- Threats and Resource Management Issues 105

III. THE CORAL REEF ECOSYSTEM 105
- Distribution of Noteworthy Reef Areas and Species Diversity 105
- Importance 124
- Threats and Issues 126
- Resource Management 127

IV. THE SOFT BOTTOM ECOSYSTEM 131
- Benthic Faunal Assemblages 131
- Importance 131
- Threats 132

V. MARINE PLANKTON AND ECOSYSTEM LINKAGES 133
- Dynamics and Linkages 134
- Importance 136
- Threats 137

VI. MARINE FISHERY RESOURCES OF NERITIC ECOSYSTEMS 144
- Major Fishing Grounds within SSME 144
- Major Fishery Resources of the Region 145
- Importance 157
- Threats 161
- Resource Management 162

Chapter V

Species of Special Concern

BACKGROUND 164
MARINE BIRDS 164

Occurrence and Distribution 164
Threats 167
Conservation Initiatives 167
MARINE MAMMALS 167
Dugongs 167
Whales and Dolphins 173
ELASMOBRANCHS 177
Characteristics and Distribution 177
Threats 178
Resource Management 179
MARINE REPTILES 180
Sea Turtles 180
Sea Snakes 183

Chapter VI
Approaches to Biodiversity Conservation
SUMMARY OF THREATS AND RESPONSES 188
What we have done… 188
What we must do… 189
STARTEGIES FOR PROMOTING BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION 192
POST BIOPHYSICAL ASSESSMENT 192
SELECTION OF PRIORITY AREAS 193

References 202
Acronyms 232
The Biophysical Assessment Team 236
Additional Contributors 239
Appendices 240

LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 2.1 Proposed boundary of the SSME 15
Figure 2.2 Bathymetric contours of the SSME 16
Figure 2.3 Major tectonic features of Sulu-Sulawesi 25
Figure 2.4 Sediment isopach map 27
Figure 2.5 Tsunami prone areas 31
Figure 2.6 Mean monthly position of the ITCZ over SSME (Flores and Balagot, 1969) 34
Figure 2.7 Anomalies in standardized rainfall due to the El Niño and La Niña (Anglo, 1999) 36
Figure 2.8 Mean annual tropical cyclone passage frequency over the Philippines (Anglo, 1999) 40
Figure 2.9 Wind roses from selected stations within SSME 41
Figure 2.10 Mean surface zonal (left) and meridional wind velocity over the project site (1960-1997) 42
Figure 2.11 Mean wind speed (left) and cloudiness over the project site (1960-1997) 43
Figure 2.12 Monthly rainfall at selected stations within SSME (mm) 44
Figure 2.13 Bathymetric contours of the SSME 50
Figure 2.14 Surface currents in the Sulu-Sulawesi region and vicinity (Wyrtki, 1961) 52
Figure 2.15 Mean annual sea surface temperature within SSME (NOAA/PMEL) 56
Figure 2.16a Mean monthly SST at SSME for January to April (NOAA/PMEL) 57
Figure 2.16b Mean monthly SST at SSME for May to August (NOAA/PMEL) 59
Figure 2.16c Mean monthly SST at SSME for September to December (NOAA/PMEL) 59
Figure 2.17 Mean annual salinity at SSME (NOAA/PMEL) 63
Figure 3.1 Watersheds within the Philippine portion of the SSME 83
Figure 3.2 Biogeographic zones of the Philippines (DENR, 1997) 84
Figure 4.1 Distribution of mangrove areas in the Philippines 89
Figure 4.2 Estimated area (has) of existing mangrove forests in the Philippines and their uses 91
Figure 4.3 Mangrove resource decline in the Philippines 98
Figure 4.4 Geographic distribution of seaweeds 102
Figure 4.5 Geographic distribution of seagrasses 103
Figure 4.6 Prominent reef areas in the Philippines 112
Figure 4.7 Reefs with 0-25% coral cover 115
Figure 4.8 Reefs with 25-50% coral cover 116
Figure 4.9 Reefs with 50-75% coral cover 117
Figure 4.11 Reefs where cyanide fishing is practiced 128
Figure 4.12 Reefs where blast fishing is praticed 129
Figure 4.13 Red tide occurrences in 1991 138

Figure 4.14 Red tide occurrences in 1992 139
Figure 4.15 Red tide occurrences in 1993 140
Figure 4.16 Red tide occurrences in 1994 141
Figure 4.17 Red tide occurrences in 1995 142
Figure 4.18 Red tide occurrences in 1996 143
Figure 4.19 Fishery resource distribution in the SSME..146
Figure 4.20 Commercial gear contribution to Sulu-Sulawesi's marine landings 147
Figure 4.21 Municipal gear contribution to Sulu-Sulawesi's marine landings 147
Figure 4.22 Important tuna fishing grounds for commercial fisheries 151
Figure 4.23 Movements of tuna released in the Philippines and recaptured outside Philippine waters (Skipjack - solid lines, yellowfin - dashed lines; PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)...152
Figure 4.24 Movements of tuna recaptured in the Philippines from releases outside Philippine waters (Skipjack - solid lines, yellowfin - dashed lines; PRIMEX-SPC, 1993) 152
Figure 4.25 Movements of tagged skipjack (PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)..............................153
Figure 4.26 Movements of tagged yellowfin (PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)............................154
Figure 4.27 Movements of tagged bigeye (PRIMEX-SPC, 1993) 155
Figure 4.28 Industrial and artisanal fish catch in the Philippine portion of the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas (KKP Marine Fisheries Program for the SSME)........160
Figure 4.29 Decreasing fish catch in the Philippine portion of the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas (1987-1995 Philippine Fisheries Profile: BFAR, Quezon City as presented by the KKP Marine Fisheries Program for the SSME) 160
Figure 5.1 Historical sightings of dugongs..169
Figure 5.2 Distribution of cetaceans in the Philippines 174
Figure 5.3 Actual and potential distributions of the 16 reported sea snake species in Philippine waters...184
Figure 6.1 Marine protected areas (MPAs) in the Philippines......................................191
Figure 6.2 Priority areas for mangrove conservation...194
Figure 6.3 Priority areas for seaweed and seagrass conservation..................................195
Figure 6.4 Priority areas for coral reef conservation 196
Figure 6.5 Priority areas for marine fish conservation 197
Figure 6.6 Priority areas for dugong conservation...198
Figure 6.7 Priority areas for cetacean conservation...199
Figure 6.8 Priority areas for chondrichthyan conservation..200
Figure 6.9 Priority areas for giant clam conservation..201

List of Tables

Table 2.1 Distribution of the marine environment in Sulu Sea 14
Table 2.2 Geologic time scale...23
Table 2.3 Drainage basins in islands surrounding the Sulu Sea 28
Table 2.4 Basins in Mindanao and Sulu Archipelago draining into the Sulawesi Sea...29
Table 2.5 Calculated ratio of diurnal to semi-diurnal tidal constituents..........................48
Table 2.6 Estimated significant wave heights (m) in SSME. 54
Table 2.7 Annual water balance analysis of the Sibalom-Guimbal Basins 67
Table 2.8 Discharge of rivers within the Tagum Libuganon Basins (discharge in cm) 70
Table 2.9 Summary of the water quality data from rivers associated with Davao Gulf 71
Table 2.10 Summary of the water quality data from rivers associated with Carigara Bay 71
Table 2.11 Water quality analyses in Iligan Bay 73
Table 2.12 Summary of the general water quality parameters in Davao Gulf 75
Table 2.13 Concentration of trace elements in the waters of Davao Gulf.......................76
Table 2.14 General water quality parameters in Carigara Bay (FSP, 1994)...................76
Table 2.15 General water quality parameters in Panguil Bay (FSP, undated b) 77
Table 4.1 Estimated mangrove areas in the Philippines 92
Table 4.2 Major (1-23) and minor (24-35) mangrove vascular plants reported to occur in the Philippines...93
Table 4.3 Mangrove-associated thallophytes in Likot and Mahabang Parang Coves, Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro (Banaag, 1972)............................94
Table 4.4 Mangrove-associated algal microphytes in Muelle Bay and Paniquian (Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro), Palsabangon (Pagbilao, Quezon), Ulugan Bay (Palawan), and Babatngon (Leyte). (Fortes, 1975; Cordero, 1978; Fortes and Trono, 1979) 95
Table 4.5 Average mangrove ecosystem valuation worldwide (adopted from White and Cruz-Trinidad, 1998)..97
Table 4.6 Estimated annual net economic value (US$) of Philippine mangroves based on different management levels (White and de Leon, 1996; de Leon and White, 1997) 97
Table 4.7 Meiofaunal communities in Cariga Bay (1994) 132
Table 4.8 Total marine fisheries production (commercial and municipal) in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas from 1978 to 1995. 148
Table 4.9 Demersal species groups found in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas (WWF, 1998) 156
Table 4.10 Average annual landings of demersal species groups in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas from 1978-1987 (metric tons). 157

Table 4.11 Trends in Philippine commercial and municipal fish catch in the SSME between 1987 and 1995 (values in thousand metric tons)...............158
Table 5.1 Seabird species recorded in Tubbataha Reef National Marine Park in March, May, and June 1995...165
Table 5.2 Number of breeding and possibly breeding birds in Bird (BI) and South (SI) Islet in 1981,1991, 1993, and 1995...166
Table 5.3 Elimination functions of seagrass habitats in coastal East Asia (modified from Fortes, 1989)..170
Table 5.4 List of confirmed and probably existing cetaceans in Philippine waters. 175

LIST OF APPENDICES

Appendix 1a Declared national parks in the Philippines (DENR, 1997)……………..…..234
Appendix 1b Protected areas declared through administrative and memorandum orders (DENR, 1997)………………………………………………………..239
Appendix 1c Islands proclaimed as tourist zones and marine reserves…..……………..241
Appendix 2a Mangrove-associated fishes in Pagbilao (Pinto, 1987)………………….243
Appendix 2b Faunal assemblage in Philippine mangrove swamps (Ronquillo and Llana, 1979)………………………………………………...……………247
Appendix 3 Occurrence of PSP in the Philippines from 1983 to 1996……….……..249
Appendix 4 Checklist of Philippine chondrichthyes……………………………..…..252
Appendix 5 Marine protected areas (MPAs) in the Philippines…………………..……..270

Chapter I

Introduction

<u>THE ECOREGION CONSERVATION CONCEPT</u>

The earth we humans call home is home to all species as well. But the exponential growth of our populations has placed a great stress on biological resources and the ecosystems' natural capacity for recovery. Amidst this evident discrepancy, the World Wildlife Fund for Nature (WWF) conceptualized an "*ecoregion-based*" approach to conservation to meet the challenges of the 21st century. WWF (1998) defined *ecoregion* as "*a relatively large unit of land or water that is biologically distinctive and harbors a characteristic set of species, ecosystems, dynamics and environmental conditions.*" In contrast to the conventional conservation method that targets a limited area, the ecoregion-based approach presents a revolutionary and exceptional scheme by adopting a large area transcending political boundaries, races, and cultures. It gauges both the immediate and root causes of threats to biodiversity and enables management interventions and mitigating measures to be done at various levels – from municipal to international.

The overall goal of ecoregion conservation is to preserve and restore the fullest possible range of biodiversity over large spatial and temporal scales.

The planning process for the ecoregion conservation consists of the following four elements:

- <u>Reconnaissance</u>

  A multidisciplinary rapid assessment to determine whether WWF should initiate an ecoregional conservation program to frame the development of an ecoregional plan and to identify any urgent needs that require immediate action.

- <u>Biodiversity Vision</u>

  A clear biodiversity vision should set out long-term (e.g. 50 years) goals for conservation of the ecoregion's biodiversity, identifying key sites, populations and ecoregional processes. This vision is the touchstone for WWF's conservation efforts in guiding the development of the Conservation Plan, and also in guiding strategic decisions as circumstances and opportunities change.

  In the Biodiversity Vision, WWF sets out to define the four fundamental conservation goals:

  - representation of all distinct natural communities within a network of protected areas managed for biodiversity conservation;

- maintenance of ecological and evolutionary processes that create and sustain biodiversity;
- maintenance of viable populations of species; and
- conservation of blocks of natural habitats large enough to be responsive to large-scale periodic disturbances and long-term changes.

A fifth goal has been added to the conservation of the SSME:

- create opportunities for sustainable livelihood systems.

The Biodiversity Vision is developed through a "*biological assessment*" which is conducted through the collection and analysis of biological information to identify priorities for long-term conservation. The assessment brings forward the distribution of biodiversity, its current status, and uses and threats that can potentially change such state. The assessment also includes the current resource management efforts that may enhance the present environmental condition of the resources and the mitigating factors that are put in place as intervention to the negative factors affecting biodiversity.

- <u>Ecoregional Conservation Plan</u>

  The Ecoregional Conservation Plan sets out the 10-15 year goals, based on the Biodiversity Vision, and identifies the actions needed to achieve them. The plan is a comprehensive blueprint for the conservation action. The plan may need to be reviewed and updated. Thus, a feedback mechanism needs to be put in place to make it achievable and adoptable over time.

- <u>WWF Action Program</u>

  The WWF Action Program provides a strategic blueprint for WWF's activities to set the stage for the long-term realization of the Conservation Plan. Like the Conservation Plan, the Action Program can immediately respond to amendments that may be adopted during its implementation.

By virtue of its outstanding biological wealth, the SSME was chosen as a priority site among the Global 200 ecoregions, which represents the earth's biodiversity (Olson and Dinerstein, 1998).

OBJECTIVES OF THE BIO-PHYSICAL ASSESSMENT

The Biophysical Assessment is conducted to gain knowledge of the biodiversity features of the ecoregion, understand the factors that affect them, and determine conservation priorities. These information will guide the setting of the long-term conservation goal (50 years), termed the *Biodiversity Vision*, for the ecoregion. Specifically, the assessment of the *Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion* (SSME) ams to:

1. Compile and synthesize available information on diversity and the biological and physical factors that influence it;

2. Identify the threats which put the resources and the ecosystems at risk;

3. Recognize the current initiatives and gaps in conservation and resource management; and

4. Guide the determination of priority areas for biodiversity conservation in the Philippine part of the SSME.

METHODOLOGY

The Biophysical Assessment for SSME adopted the watershed approach in acknowledging the influence that exists in linkage ecosystems. This report integrates the information gathered by desk studies commissioned by WWF-Philippines (1998b&c, 1999a–m, 2000a&b). Sources of information were:

- Scientific publications;
- Proceedings of national and international conferences;
- Reports from the government, research institutions, and scientists;
- Reports prepared by non-government organizations and private companies on resource and ecological assessments, fishery assessments, and coastal resource management;
- Environmental Impact Assessments of selected rivers and bays for major infrastructure projects;
- Information gained from stakeholders' participation in workshops; and
- Other unpublished reports prepared by local schools, state universities and non-government organizations identified during consultation with stakeholders in several areas within the SSME.

Chapter II

The Physical Setting within Sulu-Sulawesi

GEOGRAPHIC COVERAGE AND GEOMORPHOLOGY

Emmanuel S. Bate

The proposed boundary of the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion is shown in Figure 2.1. It lies above the equator between 1°30' and 12°00'N latitude and 117°00' and 127°00'E longitude. It covers the southwestern shoreline of southern Luzon (coastline of Batangas southwards to Bicol); the western shorelines of Samar-Leyte; rounding off the northern and entire southern coastal area of Mindanao until the Pujada Peninsula in Davao del Oriental. From the tip of Pujada Peninsula the proposed boundary extends southwards to the Indonesian territory of Sulawesi. The proposed line runs to the east of Sangihe Islands (Talaud Island and the other smaller islands). It gently curves to the west at the tip of the Sulawesi (Bunaken and Manado) and then follows the northern coastline of the northern arm of Sulawesi. It continues westerly until Sabah where it swings to the north following the coastline of northeast Borneo up to Samungat and Marchesa Bay. From this region it arches to the north, passing west of Banguey Island, across Balabac Strait traversing the eastern seaboard of Palawan. It continues its northeasterly trend, passing to the west of Busuanga and Batangas. This proposed boundary encompasses a total area (combined land and water) of 945,965 km^2 as measured by planimeter on a 1:575,000 scale map.

The Marine Environments of Sulu-Sulawesi

The marine geologic environment of the Sulu-Sulawesi can be classified into broad zones based on water depth. These are the neritic zone, bathyal zone and abyssal zone. The neritic zone or shelf area extends from the lowest tide limit to the "break in slope" at the edge of the continental shelf at about 100 fathoms. This zone is affected by water movements such as bottom currents, storm waves and tidal currents. All sediments emanating from terrestrial sources are either deposited or carried across this marine environment (Dunbar and Rogers, 1957). The neritic zone or shelf contains the most diverse marine plants and animals compared to the other environments. Below the shelf/neritic zone is the bathyal with its boundary from the abyssal zone at about 2,100 fathoms. Below 3,500 fathoms is the hadal zone (Hedgpeth, 1957) which, however, is not present in the ecoregion. Dunbar and Rogers (1957) state that there is no significant deviation in environmental conditions between bathyal and abyssal. Below 100 fathoms, the general environment in the ocean floor is totally dark, quiet and cold.

The shelf or neritic zone of the Sulu-Sulawesi extends from the lowest tide limit to depths of about 60 fathoms as interpreted from the bathymetric map (Figure 2.2). The shelf of Sulu Sea is considerably wide around the northern end of Borneo and northern Palawan, which extends far to the east in the region occupied by the Cuyo Group of Islands. The bathyal zone of Sulu is located in the northwest basin while the southeast basin being considerably deeper is abyssal. The distribution of the marine environments of Sulu Sea in terms of size are as follows:

Table 2.1 Distribution of the marine environment in Sulu Sea

Marine Environment	Area in Km^2
Neritic or shelf	13,515
Bathyal	22,086
Abyssal	7,353

In the Philippine side of the Sulawesi Sea, the neritic or shelf is significant only in the Sulu Archipelago and south of the Zamboanga Peninsula. The bathyal zone of Sulawesi Sea is very narrow with the abyssal zone occupying a large portion of the basin. The ecoregion consists of the Philippine Inland Seas, Sulu Sea, Sulawesi Sea, the small and large islands within these seas, and the watersheds around the ecoregion's border.

The Philippine Inland Seas

The Philippine Inland Seas is made up of the Verde Island Passage, the bays of Batangas, Tayabas Bay, Ragay Gulf, Sibuyan Sea, the Visayan Sea, Camotes Sea and the Bohol Sea. The bays of southern Batangas within the ecoregion are Balayan Bay and Batangas Bay. Balayan Bay is separated from the South China Sea by the Calatagan Peninsula and from Batangas Bay to the east by the Calumpan Peninsula. To the south of these bays is the Verde Island Passage, a narrow body of water between Mindoro Island and Batangas. The Verde Island Passage is contiguous with Tablas Strait, the Sibuyan Sea and the Cuyo Pass farther to the south. Sibuyan Sea is enclosed by the Tablas Island to the west, the shoreline of northern Panay to the south, and Masbate to the east-southeast.

The shelf zone around the islands of the central Philippines is narrow except in the Visayan Sea where a wide shelf zone is present. This zone is bound by northeast Panay, northern Negros, northwestern Cebu and Masbate Island. Deep water bathyal environments are present in the Sibuyan, Camotes and the Bohol Seas.

The eastern-northeastern limit of the Central Philippines displays a distinct alignment of islands and other geographic features. This is due to the influence of the active Philippine Fault Zone that runs along the north-south direction at the eastern side of the archipelago. The oldest terrain in the Central Philippines is located in the islands of Mindoro and Sibuyan. This is represented by the Carboniferous-Jurassic metamorphic rocks at the northern central region of Mindoro and central portion of Sibuyan Island. This terrain is interpreted by geologists to be of the same age as the rocks of northern Palawan, including Busuanga and Cuyo.

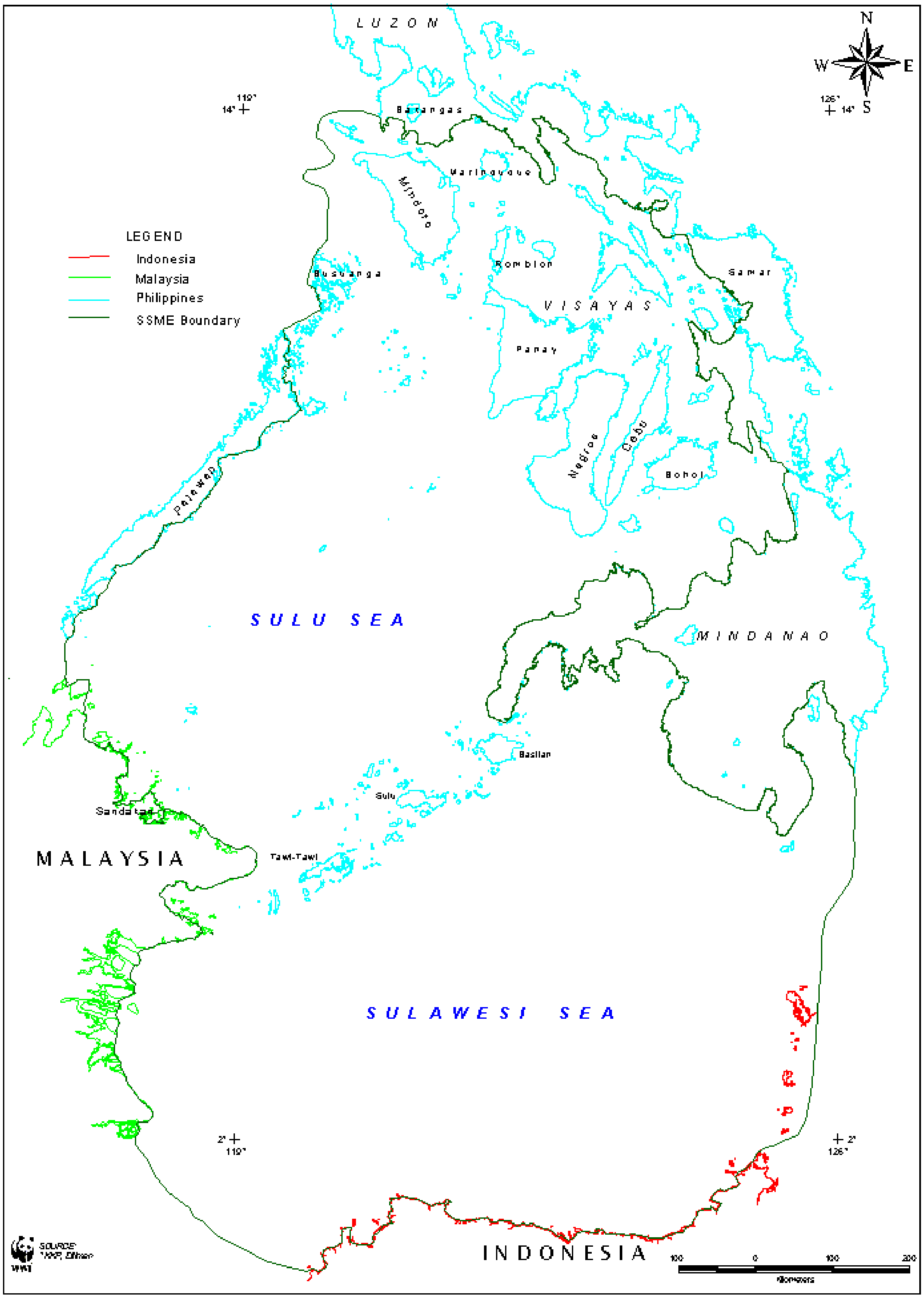


Figure 2.1 Proposed boundary of the SSME

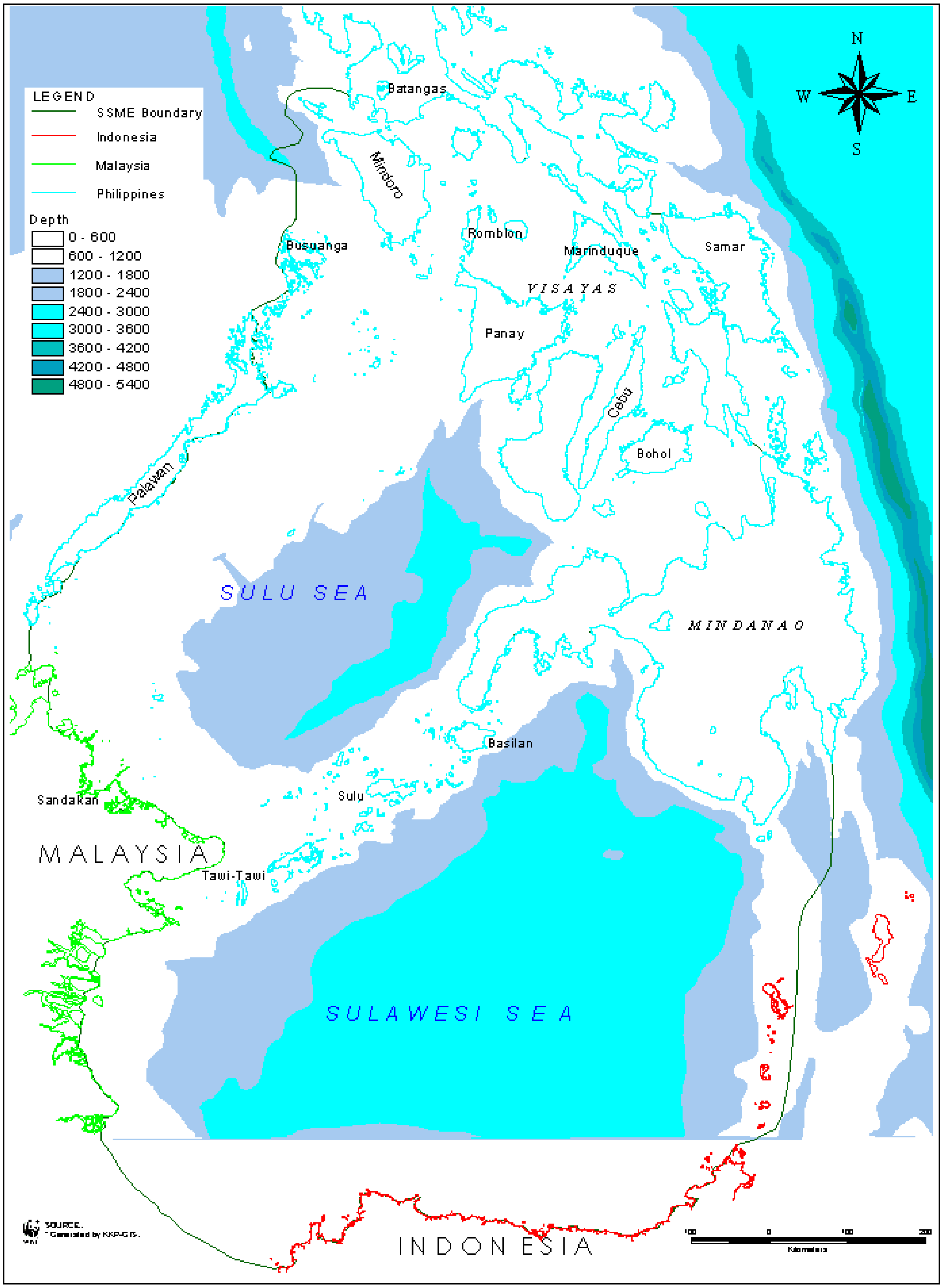


Figure 2.2 Bathymetric contours of the SSME

- Sibuyan Sea Basins

  The deep water of Sibuyan Sea is divided into two basins, the northern and southern basins. The two basins are separated by the island of Sibuyan. The North Sibuyan Sea Basin, enclosed by the islands of Marinduque, Burias, Masbate and Sibuyan Island, is described (BMG, 1982) as a rhomboidal depression with a depth at the center of the basin of ~900 meters. The Tablas Fault is inferred to control the western limit of the basin.

- Bohol Sea Basin

  The Bohol Sea Basin is enclosed by northern Mindanao to the south; Surigao Peninsula and the islands of Nonoc, Dinagat and Panaon to the east; by the islands of Bohol, Cebu, Siquijor and Negros to the north-northwest. Average depth of the basin is ~1,500 meters. Thick sediments cover the eastern part of the basin (Butuan Bay in Mindanao).

- Danajon Bank

  Most of the coral reefs in the central Philippines are of the fringing reef type except for the Danajon Bank off the northern coast of Bohol island. The Danajon Bank is a double barrier reef that occupies the northern shelf of Bohol Island. This reef complex is more than 120 kilometers long. The reef is marked by numerous sand cays and low coralline islands. Mangroves grow on Mahanay Island, Banacon Island, Basaan Island, Tambu Island and other small islets.

The Sulu Sea

- Sulu Sea

  The center of the Sulu Sea is approximately defined by geographic coordinates $9^{0}00$'N latitude and $120^{0}30$'E longitude. It is separated from the South China Sea by Palawan and Borneo at its northwestern side and from Sulawesi Sea by the alignment of Sulu Archipelago and the Zamboanga Peninsula. It is flanked to the northeast by the islands of Negros, Panay and Mindoro. The Sulu Sea is connected to the South China Sea by the Mindoro Strait at its northern end and by Balabac Strait at its southeastern side; and to Mindanao Sea and the Sulawesi through the passageways and channels in the Sulu Archipelago, the more prominent of which are the Basilan Strait and the Sibutu Passage.

  The general submarine morphology of the Sulu Sea is characterized by a wide shelf (or neritic zone) and a narrow shelf slope leading to the bathyal and abyssal zones. The Sulu Sea basin is subdivided by a submarine ridge into two sub-basins, the northwest and southeastern basins. This submarine ridge is called the Cagayan Ridge and is elongated along the northeast-southwest direction, parallel to Palawan Island and the alignment of Zamboanga Peninsula-Sulu Archipelago.

  The northwest basin reaches depths of up to 1300 m to 2000 meters. This basin deepens towards its southern end and then rises as it meets the continental shelf of northern Borneo. Covering the northwest basin is a thick wedge of sediment that thickens from 1,000 meters to as much as 7,500 meters towards the island of Palawan (BMG, 1982). It is thought that the Cagayan Ridge dammed the sediment, making the northwest basin relatively shallower than the southeast basin.

The southeastern basin is comparatively deeper reaching more than 5,000 meters at the foot of the Sulu Ridge where the Sulu Trench is located. The basin floor is rough with occasional seamounts (BMG, 1982). Thick sediment deposit at the southwestern part of this basin is suspected to have been derived from Borneo (BMG, 1982; Rangin and Silver, 1990).

- The Islands and Reefs of the Cagayan Ridge

  A series of islands and reefs in the middle of the Sulu Sea indicate the alignment of the Cagayan Ridge, a submarine volcanic feature that bisects the Sulu Basin. The reef complexes of Sulu Seas have been classified as platform type. These platform reefs are (from southwest to northeast) San Miguel, Bancoran, Basterra (Meander Reef), North and South Tubbataha, Jessie Beazly, Arena, Cavili and the islands of Cagayancillo. These platform reefs rise from depths of more than 900 meters. The North and South Tubbataha Reefs are considered to be of classic atoll formation with large lagoons protected by fringing outer reefs and little land above sea level.

  - Cagayancillo Islands

    The Cagayancillo Islands are composed of Cagayan, Dondonay, Calalong, Tanusa, Langisan, Manucan and Boombong. These islands and the elongated reefs form the atoll of Cagayancillo. To the north of the Cagayancillo Islands is the Sultana Shoal.

    The Cagayancillo Islands are inferred to be Plio-Pleistocene uplifted coral reefs. This carbonate formation outlines the substrate of the recent reefs.

    Calusa Island is located to the west of Cagayan Island. Immediately to the northeast of Cagayan Island is Sultana Shoal and further northeast is the southern tip of the island of Panay where the extension of the Cagayan Volcanic Ridge has been identified.

  - Tubbataha

    The largest of these reef complexes is Tubbataha. It is composed of the North and South Reefs. Both have lagoons with depths reaching more than 18 m. The bottom cover of these lagoons is sand with colonies of branching *Acropora*. The north reef is marked by sand cays (one of which is occupied by the ranger station); a small low island at the northeastern end, called Bird Island; and a number of rock outcrops. The recent reef mapping conducted by the Kabang Kalikasan ng Pilipinas Foundation Inc. (KKPFI) showed that the lagoon of the north reef is contiguous instead of the two lagoons depicted in NAMRIA Map 2537. The North Reef is elongated along the northeast-southwest direction. The approximate dimension of the reef is 17 by 5 kms.

About 8 kms to the southwest is the South Reef. Unlike the North Reef, the South Reef is elongated along the north-south direction. It is smaller than the north reef with its dimension of about 8km long and 2.5km wide. The reef is marked by a small coralline island at the southern end where the lighthouse is located, a ship wreck and some coralline rock outcrops such as the Black Rock. Previous drilling done in Tubbataha uncovered more than 400 meters of reefal deposit (Rangin and Silver, 1990).

- The Cuyo Group of Islands
  The Cuyo Island Group occupies the eastern limit of the northern shelf of Palawan. It is bound to the west by the West Cuyo Pass and to the east by the East Cuyo Pass. The important islands that make up this group are Cuyo, Bisucay, Diit, Agutaya, Manamoc, Pamalican, the Quiniluban Group and Tagauayan Island. The Cuyo Island Group is underlain by quaternary volcanic rocks. Geology of the other smaller islands is not known. An interesting part of the Cuyo Group is the Quiniluban Group composed of the islands of Quiniluban, Alcisiras, Tinitituan, Silad and Maligun. These islands and the reef flat are arranged in a somewhat circular pattern enclosing a shallow lagoon. The lagoon is sandy and presently used for seaweed farming. Numerous shoals and banks are present in the Cuyo Island Group.

- Culion-Busuanga
  Culion and Busuanga are the northernmost islands of Palawan. This group is separated from Mindoro by the Mindoro Strait.

- The Mindoro Strait - Apo Reef
  In the middle of Mindoro Strait between Busuanga and Mindoro is Apo Reef, which divides the Mindoro Strait into Apo East Pass and Apo West Pass. The Apo Reef complex is described by Zacher (1981) as two atoll-like reefs with elongated lagoons having depths ranging from 3 to 8 m. The two reefs are separated by a 30 m deep channel and the reefs are built upon an old submarine platform. A small coralline island, Apo Island, and a number of coralline rock outcrops mark the reef.

The Sulu Archipelago-Zamboanga Peninsula

The alignment of the Sulu Archipelago and Zamboanga Peninsula divides the Sulu Sea from the Sulawesi Sea. The Sulu Archipelago is a string of young volcanic islands, Plio-Pleistocene coralline islands and old terranes.

The following groups of islands are found in the Sulu Archipelago:

- <u>Sibutu Group</u>

  The southwestern end of the Sulu Archipelago is composed of the Sibutu Group of Islands which is separated from Borneo by the Alice Channel. The Sibutu Group is made up of elongated and narrow reef complexes and islands that are separated by narrow and deep channels. These are the Meridien Channel and the Tumindao Channel with widths of 2 km to 3.5 km. Depths in both channels reach up to -100m as indicated in NAMRIA Map 2555. Interestingly, the islands and reefs of Sibutu are oriented along the north south direction suggesting strong influence of geology and possibly current movement. The easternmost island of this group is the narrow and elongated Sibutu Island. To the west of Sibutu Island is the Tumindao reef complex.

- <u>Tawi-Tawi Island Group</u>

  To the northeast of the Sibutu Group, separated by the Sibutu Passage is the Tawi-Tawi Island Group. This island group is dominated by the large island of Tawi-Tawi which is elongated along the northeast-southwest direction. The smaller islands of this group are Baliungan and Tandubato at the northeastern end and Sanga-Sanga, Bongao, Simunul and Manuk Manka at the southern end.

  As interpreted from NAMRIA Map 2553, a patch reef occurs pervasively on the shelf at the southeastern part of Tawi-Tawi. An enclosed body of marine water, about 20 km x 10 km is present at the southern end of Tawi-Tawi. This is enclosed by southern part of Tawi-Tawi Island, Sanga-Sanga and Bongao at the northwestern side; by Simunul Island, Sangasiapu Island and Lao Island at its southeastern side and by an extensive reef flat at the eastern flank.

  The rocks of Tawi-Tawi Island are the oldest exposed in the Sulu Archipelago. The Bureau of Mines and Geosciences (1982) reported that the northern half of Tawi-Tawi is made up of Mesozoic (Jurassic to Cretaceous) serpentine and basalt associated with metavolanic intrusives with thick quartz veins. While the southern part including Bongao is underlain by Miocene sandstone conglomerate. The presence of the Miocene conglomerate indicates the presence of large land masses during this geologic epoch from which clasts of the conglomerate are derived.

- <u>Tapul –Siasi Island Group</u>

  This group of islands is separated from the Sibutu Island Group by the Sugbai Passage. Islands making this group are Lapac Island, Siasi Island, Lugus Island, Tapul Island, Cabingaan Island, Paquia Island and Tangkapaan Island. Again, the north-south alignment of submarine features between Sugbai Passage and Tapaan Passage stands out. The islands of the Tapul-Siasi Group are of Quaternary volcanic origin. Other islands, the small and flat islands are probably of coralline origin. As noted in the NAMRIA Map 2553, large mangrove swamps are present in the island groups of Cabingaan, Tangakapaan and Paquia.

- Jolo Island Group

  Jolo island group is composed of the islands of Jolo, Pata, Patian, Capual, Bitinan, Gujangan, Marongas, Cabucan, Bubuan and other small islets. The islands of Jolo, Pata and Patian are sites of Plio-Pleistocene volcanism. While the other small flat islands, including the islands of Cabucan, Marongas, Pangasinan, Bubuan, Hegas and Minis could be uplifted coralline formation.

- Pangutaran Island Group

  To the northwest of Jolo Island is another group of flat islands, the Pangutaran Island Group. This island group is further divided into smaller groups of islands by deep channels. To the south is the island group of North Ubian, Ticul, Usada, Cunilan and Basbas. To the north is Pangutaran Island which is separated from the other islands by deep channels one of which is the Pangutaran Passage. To the east of Pangutaran Island are the islands of Kulassein and Panducan. Smaller islands further to the east include Tubigan and Teomabal.

  No information is at hand on the geology of the other islands. The Bureau of Mines and Geosciences (1982) classified Pangutaran Island as Plio-Pleistocene reef limestone. It is presumed that recent reefs veneer this older carbonate formation.

- Samales Group

  To the east of the Jolo Group is the Samales Island Group. The very narrow Capaul Channel separates this island group from Jolo Group. The islands composing the Samales Group are Bangalao, Simisa, Balanguingi, Tongquil, Bulan and Bucutua. It is inferred that the flat islands of the Samales Group are recent coral reef. The exception is the island of Bulan which by its topography is suspected to be volcanic. Extensive mangrove swamps in almost all of the island are indicated in the NAMRIA Map 2549.

- Basilan Island and the smaller island groups

  Lumped together with Basilan Island are the Tapiantana Group, located south of Basilan and the Pilas Island Group situated west of Basilan. Separating these island groups from mainland Basilan are the Tapiantan Channel and the Pilas Channel, respectively. Basilan is a volcanic island (Plio-Pleistocene) with multiple eruption vents expressed by the mountain peaks scattered in the island. The flat islands of Tapiantana and Pilas are inferred to be of coralline origin. Mangrove swamps occupy much of these smaller islands.

- The Zamboanga Peninsula

  Basilan Island is isolated from the Zamboanga Peninsula by the relatively shallow Basilan Strait. Unlike most of the channels of the Sulu Archipelago, the Basilan Channel is relatively shallow with maximum depth of about -50m. Zamboanga Peninsula is an amalgamation of the oldest terrane known in the Philippine archipelago and the younger island arc system. The oldest terrane mapped in Zamboanga is the Cretaceous metamorpic rocks which covers much of the peninsula. Tertiary sediments and igneous intrusives are also represented. Plio-Pleistocene volcanism is very active in Zamboanga as evidenced by the presence of extensive formation of volcanic rocks. Reefs of the Zamboanga Peninsula are commonly fringing type. Shelf around the western and northern seaboard of Zamboanga Peninsula is considerably narrow.

- Continental Shelf of Northwest Borneo

  This section shall dwell only on the description of the part of the shelf within the Philippine territory. The northeastward limits of Borneo's continental shelf is approximately indicated by the Cagayan de Tawi-Tawi and the Turtle Islands Group. Farther to the north, the continental shelf of Borneo merges with the shelf of Palawan. Important islands in this border of the Philippines are Balabac, Mantangule, Bancalan, Pandanan and Bugsuk.

- The Turtle Islands Group

  The Turtle Islands Group on the Philippine side is made up of 6 major islands. These are Taganak, Baguan, Baoan, Bakkungaan, Lihiman and Langaan. The first two, Taganak and Baguan, are volcanic in origin, of the Plio-Pleistocene age. Accumulated around the foot of the volcanic hills are recent alluvial deposits mainly composed of coralline sand. The islands of Baoan, Bakkungaan and Lihiman have different modes of formation. These islands were built up by diapiric activities. Mud and boulders are forced to the surface from subsurface sources due to intense pressure, hence the formation of mud volcanoes. Shapes of these islands are tadpole-like, rounded-head, tapering towards the tail. The rounded-head is interpreted to be formed by the shifting positions of mud flow channels. This is best illustrated by the present activity in Lihiman Island. Geologic mapping in Bakkungan identified sandstone formation that is possibly of Middle Miocene age, the same age as the Crocker Range Formation of Sabah. All these major islands are rimmed by fringing reefs.

- Cagayan de Tawi-Tawi

  Cagayan de Tawi-Tawi is generally flat with hills punctuating the broad alluvial plains. The hills are of volcanic origin. The circular lakes at the southern part of the island are interpreted to be products of maar explosion, a process similar to the formation of the lakes of San Pablo, Laguna and Batangas.

Sulawesi Sea

The Sulawesi Sea is bound to the northwest by the Zamboanga Peninsula and the Sulu Archipelago, separating Sulawesi Sea from the Sulu Sea. Major embayments in the gulf are Sibuguey Bay, Yllana Bay, Saranggani Bay and other smaller bays. The widest shelf area in the Philippine side of the Sulawesi Sea is located in the Sulu Archipelago and the southern coast of the Zamboanga Peninsula. The shelf is extremely narrow beyond this region.

The basin, as described by the Bureau of Mines and Geosciences (1982) based on results of seismic surveys, has a rather flat bottom, with depths ranging from 4500 to 5000 meters. The flat seafloor is occasionally interrupted by small seamounts. Sediment cover of the basin is estimated at about two kilometers thick. Relatively recent bathymetric data suggests that the Sulawesi Sea is divided into two sub-basins by a northwest trending ridge connecting to the Sulu Archipelago at the north (Rangin and Silver, 1990).

GEOLOGY

Emmanuel S. Bate

Tectonic Setting and Geologic History

Table 2.2 Geologic time scale

Era	Period	Epoch	Millions of Years Ago
Cenozoic	Quaternary	Recent	0.01
		Pleistocene	2.5
	Tertiary	Pliocene	7
		Miocene	26
		Oligocene	38
		Eocene	54
		Paleocene	65
Mesozoic	Cretaceous		136
	Jurassic		160
	Triassic		225
Paleozoic	Permian		280
	Carboniferous		345
	Devonian		395
	Silurian		430
	Ordovician		500
	Cambrian		570

TECTONIC SETTING

The Sulu-Sulawesi region is situated in a geologically complicated part of the earth. The Philippine arc for instance is made up of a complex collection of island arcs and fragments of continental and oceanic crusts. The ecoregion is located along the boundaries of three major tectonic plates, the Philippine Sea Plate, the Eurasian Plate and the Australian Plate. As described by Ramos (1999), the Philippines is located between the Philippine Sea Plate (smaller section of the Pacific Plate) and the Eurasian Plate represented by the South China Sea. The convergence of the northwestward moving Philippine Sea Plate and the Eurasian Plate is responsible for the tectonic activities in the Philippine Arc.

The commonly recognized major tectonic features of the region are: (1) the Philippine Trough along the eastern border of the Philippine Arc; (2) the Manila Trough along the northwestern part of the arc; (3) the Sulu-Negros Trough in west central part of the Philippine Arc; (4) the Cotabato Trough at the southern part of the Philippine Arc; (5) the northeast-southwest Cagayan Ridge which bisects the Sulu Sea Basin; and (6) the active Philippine Fault (Figure 2.3).

The Philippine Trough marks the northwestward convergence of the western edge of the Philippine Sea Plate with the Eurasian plate. This trough extends far south to the Halmahera. To the north of the Philippine Trough is the East Philippine Trough, which marks the pate convergence at the northeastern part of the Philippine Arc. As described by Rangin and Pubellier (1999), convergence in this zone of the Philippine Sea Plate is minor due to the blockage of subduction with the arrival of the Benham Rise. Instead, much of the convergence is absorbed by the Manila Trough. Within the central part of the Philippine Arc, part of the convergence of the Philippine Sea Plate with the Eurasian Plate is taken up by the Negros-Cotabato-Sulu Trenches (Rangin and Pubellier, 1999), while the Sulawesi Sea oceanic crust is being consumed by the Cotabato Trough.

The Cagayan Ridge is an east-northeast trending submerged ridge that divides the Sulu Basin into northwest and southeast basins. This is a constructional ridge that is mainly of volcanic origin (BMG, 1982) and is part of the Cagayan Volcanic Arc. The volcanic islands of Cagayan de Tawi-Tawi and the Turtle Islands are presumed, as well, to be part of this volcanic arc. Rangin and Silver (1990) described the northwest slope of the ridge as relatively smooth while the southeast slope is steep cut by normal faults. Drilling at the southern part of the ridge showed a thick accumulation of volcanic rocks (andesite, basaltic flows and pyroclastics) interlayered with lower and lower middle Miocene shallow marine to brackish clastic sediments (Rangin and Silver, 1990; see Table 2.2 for geologic time scale). The northern part of the ridge is capped by platform reefs of Arena, Cavili, Jessie Beazley, Tubbataha, Basterra, Bancoran and San Miguel.

Separating the Sulu Basin from the Sulawesi Basin is the Sulu Volcanic Arc - represented by the Sulu Archipelago extending into the Zamboanga Peninsula. Volcanism in this arc is Plio-Pleistocene in age. This Quaternary volcanic sequence overlays the pre-Tertiary metamorphic basement in the Zamboanga Peninsula. Similarly, older volcanic sequences have been identified in southern Sulu Archipelago (Tawi-tawi Island; Rangin and Silver, 1990). This arc has been traced to Panay as its northern limit and the Dent Peninsula in Sabah as its southern limit. Radiometric dating of this volcanic arc along its length by different workers showed varying ages of 16.2 to 14.4 Ma in Zamboanga, 16.2 to 9 Ma in Panay, and 13 to 11 Ma in the Dent Peninsula (Rangin and Silver, 1990).

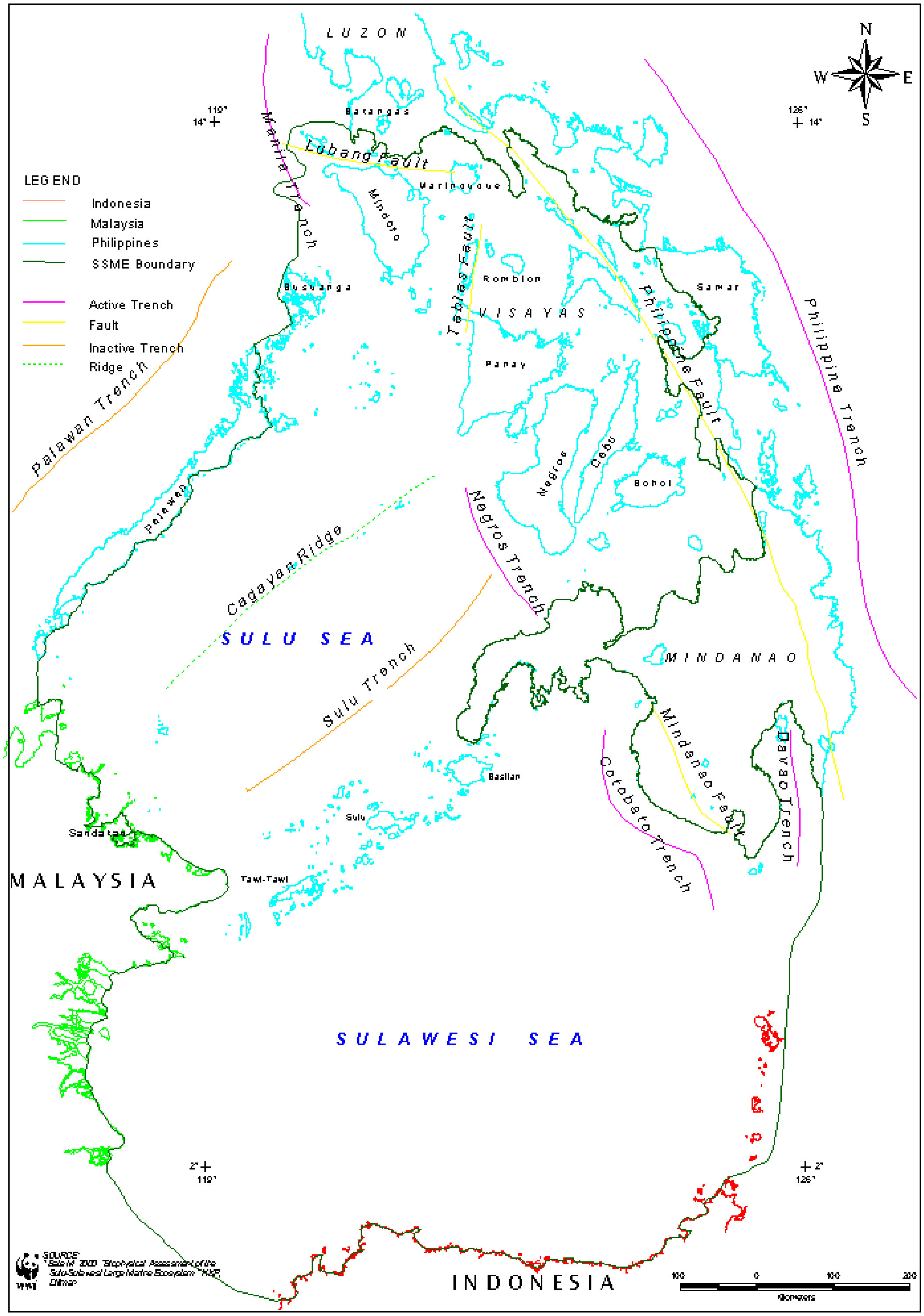


Figure 2.3 Major tectonic features of Sulu-Sulawesi

Seismic survey conducted in the Sulu-Sulawesi basins revealed substantial information on sediment deposition. The sediment isopach map (Mrozowski and Hayes, 1978; Figure 2.4) of the region indicates the most pervasive sediment deposition in the northwest basin of Sulu Sea. A thick sequence of sediment has also been mapped at the southeastern part of the southeast basin of Sulu Sea and along the western side of the Sulawesi Sea, through the length of the eastern periphery of Borneo. The Middle Miocene (9 Ma) collision of the Cagayan Ridge with the Philippine Arc (Panay) coincided with the peak in turbidite sedimentation all across the Sulu and Sulawesi Basins. Uplift and the fall of global sea level is suspected to have enhanced massive events of quartz rich turbidite deposition. The suspected source of quartz rich clastics is Sabah, namely the Crocker Formation (Rangin and Silver, 1990).

The northeast sub-basin of Sulawesi Sea is less sedimented. Seafloor magnetic anomalies have been identified by Weissel (1980, cited in Rangin and Silver, 1990) in the southwestern basin indicating the middle Eocene formation of that particular part of the basin (Rangin and Silver, 1990). Analyses of drill samples collected from the northeast basin showed claystone deposits containing clay minerals seen in modern pelagic clays of equatorial western Pacific (Rangin and Silver, 1990). Characteristics of the claystone further indicate that the depositional environment is not far from a continent but protected from terrestrial and volcanogenic deposition (Rangin and Silver, 1990). These authors further deduced that: (1) volcanic arc activity is not significant; (2) early volcanism in the Cagayan Ridge is not recorded in the sediments of the Sulawesi Basin; and (3) quartz rich turbidites encountered at the northeast basin (deposition of which started 18.5Ma) could not have come from Sabah (as in the southwest basin of Sulu Sea) since Cagayan-Palawan took place only between 17.8 to 14 Ma. They presumed that the source of such quartz-rich clastic is the granodiorites in the north arm of Sulawesi. Erosion of these granodiorites could have ensued uplift and collision of this arc with the Sula Platform.

PLEISTOCENE PALEOGEOGRAPHY

The paleogeography of the Sulu Sea region during the late Pleistocene can be reconstructed with some degree of accuracy. This is attributed to the fact that the region has become relatively stable since the late Miocene with the cessation of subduction activities along the Palawan Trench. Hence, much of the Philippine Archipelago must have already existed then with some geomorphic changes due to local uplift and active volcanism. The fluctuation of the sea level to about 120 meters during the late Pleistocene (Heaney, 1985) below present sea level exposed a wide area of the continental shelf of Northern Borneo, Palawan and the Sulu Archipelago. The reconstructed shoreline of Sulu Sea during the late Pleistocene is shown in the accompanying map. Based on this reconstruction, the Sulu Sea, together with the Sibuyan Sea, Camotes Sea and Bohol Sea formed a network of inland seas. These smaller bodies of water are connected to the Sulu Sea by narrow channels. This network of inland seas is isolated from the Pacific Ocean. Its connections to the South China Sea are the narrow Mindoro Strait and the Verde Island Passage at the northern region. Its access to Sulawesi Sea is only through the Sibutu Passage at its southernmost part.

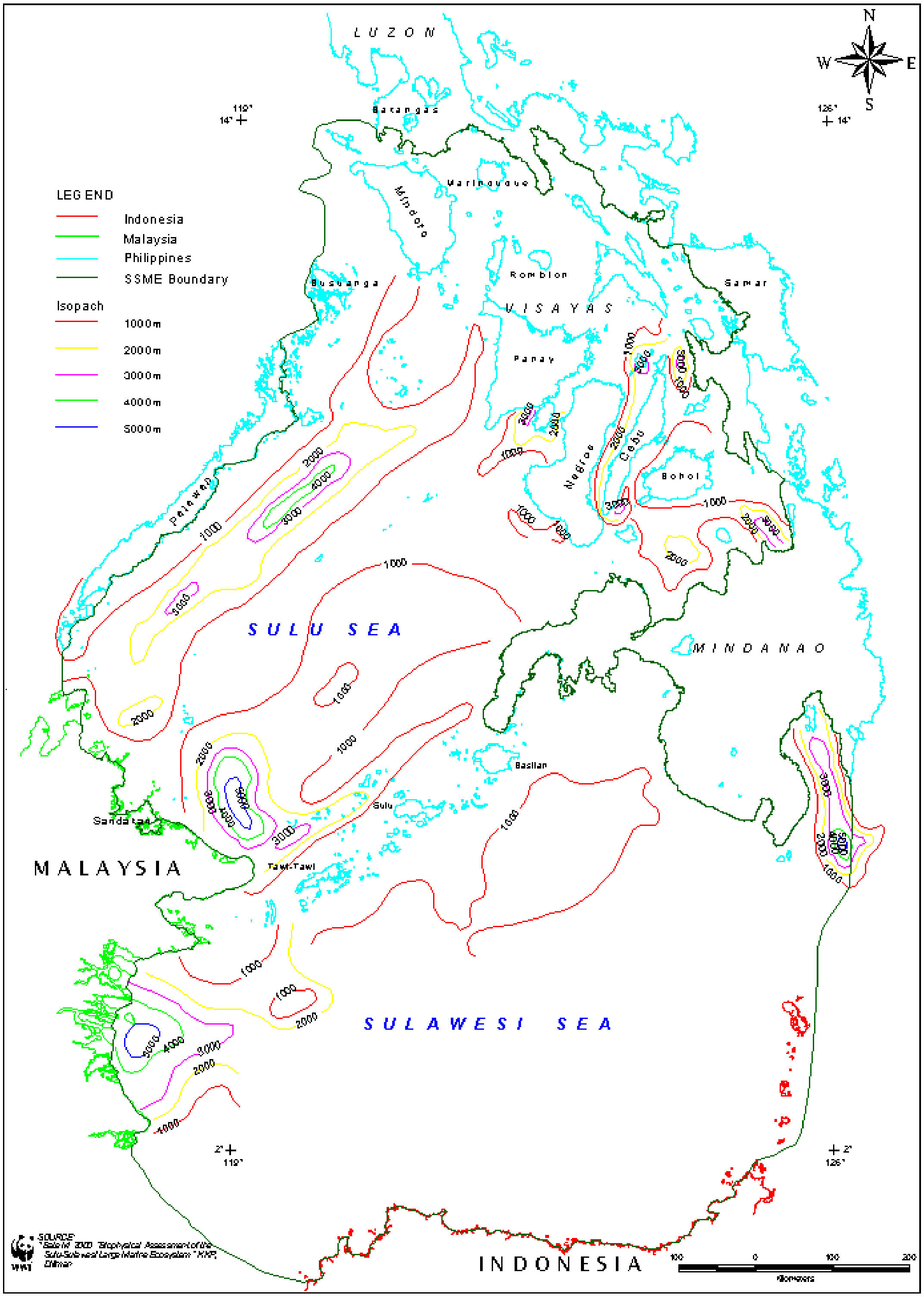


Figure 2.4 Sediment isopach map

The map showing the late Pleistocene shoreline of Sulu Sea indicates that Palawan, including the present day shelf, is connected to Borneo, while the Sulu Archipelago which is made up of large island masses is separated by deep channels. It is not known though how much the volcanic activities in the Sulu Archiplego have contributed to the build up of land masses in this region during the Pleistocene.

The island of Mindoro is inferred to have existed as an isolated land mass even before the Pleistocene. It is separated from its adjoining land masses by bodies of water such as: (1) the Mindoro Strait which separates it from northern Palawan; (2) the Verde Island Passage which separates it from Luzon; (3) and the Tablas Strait which separates it from the large island formed then by Panay, Negros and Cebu.

Mindanao must have been connected with Luzon through the eastern islands of the Philippine Archipelago during this geologic period, while the land masses of Panay, Negros and Cebu were connected to Mindanao by an isthmus, which is now the Bohol Island. It is surmised that the islands of Siquijor and Camiguin already existed then as small islands within the Bohol Sea.

Active Geologic Processes

SILTATION AND SEDIMENTATION

Geologic records show that sedimentation in the Sulu-Sulawesi Basins has been active since the middle Miocene (~15 Ma). Borneo is construed to have continuously been the major source of terrigenous sediment in the Sulu-Sulawesi Basin. Delineation of the drainage basins in the land masses surrounding the Sulu Sea shows that the drainage basin of Borneo accounts for more than 60% of all the drainage basins emptying into the Sulu marine basin (Table 2.3). Sediment plume from Sabah has been observed (R. Trono pers. comm.) to disperse beyond the Turtle Islands group.

Table 2.3 Drainage basins in islands surrounding the Sulu Sea

Island	Area in Km^2	Percent
Mindoro Occidental	4,623.51	6.09
Eastern Palawan	6,254.65	8.23
Western Panay	3,984.04	5.24
Zamboanga del Norte	6,997.50	9.21
Negros Occidental	7,274.04	9.57
Northwest Borneo	46,847.09	61.66
Total	75,980.82	100.00

The contribution of Borneo to the Sulawesi Sea is presumed to be similarly significant considering the size of catchments in the island of Borneo. In the Philippine side, the largest basin in Mindanao draining into the Sulawesi Sea is the Mindanao River System which has a total land area of almost 20,000 km^2. Table 2.4 summarizes the drainage basins in Mindanao and Basilan that drains into the Sulawesi Sea.

In the Turtle Islands, diapiric activity, indicated by the presence of mud volcanoes in Lihiman, Baoan and Bakkungaan, is another likely source of siltation. Material being extruded by the mud volcanoes, as inferred from the deposit around the active one in Lihiman Island, is grey mud with angular clasts of gravel to boulder size rocks. The presence of submarine mud volcanoes off Lihiman is suspected based on the reported occurrence of highly turbid water in the area.

Table 2.4 Basins in Mindanao and Sulu Archipelago draining into the Sulawesi Sea

Island / Province	Area in Km^2
Zamboanga del Sur	5,950.19
Lanao del Norte	592.16
Lanao del Sur	839.33
Maguindanao	542.81
Sultan Kudarat	1,708.23
South Cotabato (including Mindanao River)	25,418.66
Basilan	1,245.84
Total	36,297.22

Siltation is identified as the most important factor severely affecting the country's coral reefs (EMB, 1996). EMB (1996) estimated that a widespread phenomenon like the eruption of Mt. Pinatubo is estimated to translate into a fishery loss amounting to US$0.5 to 2.5 Million per annum for the next 5 to 10 years. The same study states that human activities that greatly contribute to siltation are deforestation (including logging), agriculture and mining.

SEISMIC AND VOLCANIC ACTIVITIES

A greater part of the Sulu-Sulawesi region is located in what is referred to as the stable region. Subduction in this region has ceased and consequently there are no seismic and volcanic activities. But volcanism and seismicity occur along the northeastern border of Sulu Sea, along the Negros-Sulu Arc and the Cotabato-Sangihe Arc at the eastern border of the Sulawesi Sea. At the northeastern periphery are the volcanoes of the island of Negros while volcanoes at the eastern border (Philippine side) include Mt. Apo in Davao and Balut Island. Further south, numerous volcanic centers are present along the Sangihe Archipelago.

In the Sulu Arc, the active volcanoes are the Bud Dajo and Jolo Volcanoes. Bud Dajo is a solfataric cinder cone while Jolo Volcano is a pyroclastic volcano extruding mostly basaltic ash. It was reportedly active in 1641 and again erupted in 1897 (BMG, 1982).

The southern coastline of Zamboanga, including the eastern coastline of Basilan and the coastline of Cotabato are susceptible to tsunami, triggered by earthquake generated by the Cotabato Trench. This region has been hit by a number of tsunami events (Figure 2.5).

SEA LEVEL RISE

Over the recent decades, there is an increasing concern for the effect of climate change on sea level rise. As such it is now recognized that sea level adjustment should be considered in coastal studies.

Earlier estimates predict sea level rise can be drastic while more recent estimates based on monitoring, predicts that for the period 1900 to 2100 sea level rise is placed at 46 cm translating to a rate of 4-5 mm per annum. A higher rate of more than 10 mm/annum is reported in deltas and coastal plains. But this is attributed to subsidence due to groundwater extraction.

A response of certain marine ecosystems to sea level rise in the Sulu Sea may well be exemplified by the platform reefs atop the Cagayan Ridge. The presence of a reef more than 400 meters thick in Tubbataha indicates that vertical expansion of the reef complexes in the Sulu Sea, at least during the last 18,000 years, kept pace with the fluctuating sea level at the end of the glacial period.

BEACH EROSION

There is limited information on beach erosion in the Sulu Sea. Among the few islands WWF has monitored is Baguan Island in the Turtle Islands. The pattern of sediment migration shows a possible long-term adjustment of the shoreline. While erosion is active in one part of the island, accretion takes place in the leeward side resulting to a change in the shape of the island.

Additionally, very pronounced erosion occurs in the islands of Taganak, Bakunggan and Baoan. The shoreline has in fact retreated. Other areas which experience shoreline retreat include Pamalican and Manamoc Islands of the Quiniluban Group, and Cuyo in Palawan (SEASTEMS, 1990).

Figure 2.5 Tsunami prone areas

METEOROLOGY

Emmanuel Anglo

The SSME is a typical tropical oceanic region, with a mean surface air temperature of ~27°C. The waters prevent temperatures from fluctuating more than 10°C within the day, and monthly average temperatures deviate by less than 5°C between the coldest and warmest months. Between the northernmost and southernmost point of the area, mean annual temperatures differ by less than 3°C. Any significant geographic variation in temperature is largely due to elevation.

Relative humidity is nearly constant at 80%, seldom falling below 60% owing to the availability of water vapor all year round. Higher temperatures during summer increase evaporation from the ocean, but allows the atmosphere to hold more water without reaching saturation. Lower evaporation during the Northern Hemisphere winter reduces absolute humidity but relative humidity remains high. For the same reasons, clouds are always present even in the absence of disturbances.

The ocean is the main factor defining the climate over the area. Weather, on the other hand, is modified by various other climate controls discussed below.

Climatic Controls

Flores and Balagot (1969) identified several large-scale systems that control the meteorology of the area. Situated along the equatorial region, westward-flowing North Pacific Trade Winds define the general flow. The Asian monsoon imparts a conspicuous cycle in wind and rain patterns over much of the region.

Disturbances are so common that they characterize mean conditions in the area. These include short-lived convective thunderstorms associated with either the Intertropical Convergence Zone (ITCZ) or easterly waves embedded in the trade winds. Forecasters also attribute heavy cloudiness and precipitation during the winter months to fronts. However, the most important type of weather disturbance in the area is the tropical cyclone, which brings extreme rains and winds to northern portions of the area.

The 1982-83 El Niño-Southern Oscillation (ENSO) episode illustrated the vulnerability of the region to this phenomenon. Since then, strong interannual variations in the weather have been attributed to its irregular cycle. The last major episode was in 1998 when rainfall decreased initially followed by an ultimate rise in surface temperature.

TRADE WINDS

The Trades make up a belt of easterly winds along the equator. Together with westerlies along the middle latitudes and the easterlies around the polar caps, these winds form what is known as the general circulation of the atmosphere. Trade winds vary in strength along meridians, fluctuating from one month to the next and from one year to another. Trade winds also drive equatorial ocean surface currents, generating the westward-flowing North Pacific Equatorial Current.

Within SSME, the Trades are often dominated by the monsoonal flow such that they can only be distinctly pinpointed on months during the transition between the two regimes of the monsoon. The topography of Mindanao also modifies their speed and direction, weakening their presence near the surface.

THE ASIAN MONSOON

The factor imparting a strong seasonal variability in the weather over the Philippines is the Asian Monsoon. During the summer, temperatures progressively rise over the Asian mainland, generating a persistent low pressure area that draws warm moist air from the surrounding oceans to the interior of the continent. As these air masses spiral towards Asia, they impart a southwesterly flow over the Philippines, and unload large amounts of rainfall along the way.

During the Northern Hemisphere winter, the cooling over Asia forms a semi-permanent high near Siberia. The divergence of cold and dry air away from this high brings a chilly wind from the northeast over to the Philippines. The cold also tends to suppress evaporation from the ocean, bringing rainless days to many areas. However, air forced over the windward side of the mountain ranges in Southern Luzon and Eastern Mindanao undergoes condensation, causing precipitation in these areas to peak in this season.

Both the Southwest and Northeast Monsoons experience surges that bring intense rain over their areas of influence. In particular, heavy and widespread rainfall often takes place even with weak disturbances by enhancing the Southwest Monsoon. During the few weeks in the transition between the monsoons, trade winds become more prominent.

THE ITCZ, EASTERLY WAVES AND FRONTS

As noted earlier, these three systems influence cloudiness and rainfall over SSME through the development of thunderstorms. These tend to be mild disturbances that form part of the regular weather in the area.

The ITCZ is a region that marks the confluence between the northern and southern segments of the trade winds. During July and August it tends to stay north of the Philippines. When it appears in August to April, it will be found within the Sulu or the Sulawesi Sea (Figure 2.6). This cluster of cloudiness brings winds and mild to moderate rainfall, usually of short duration.

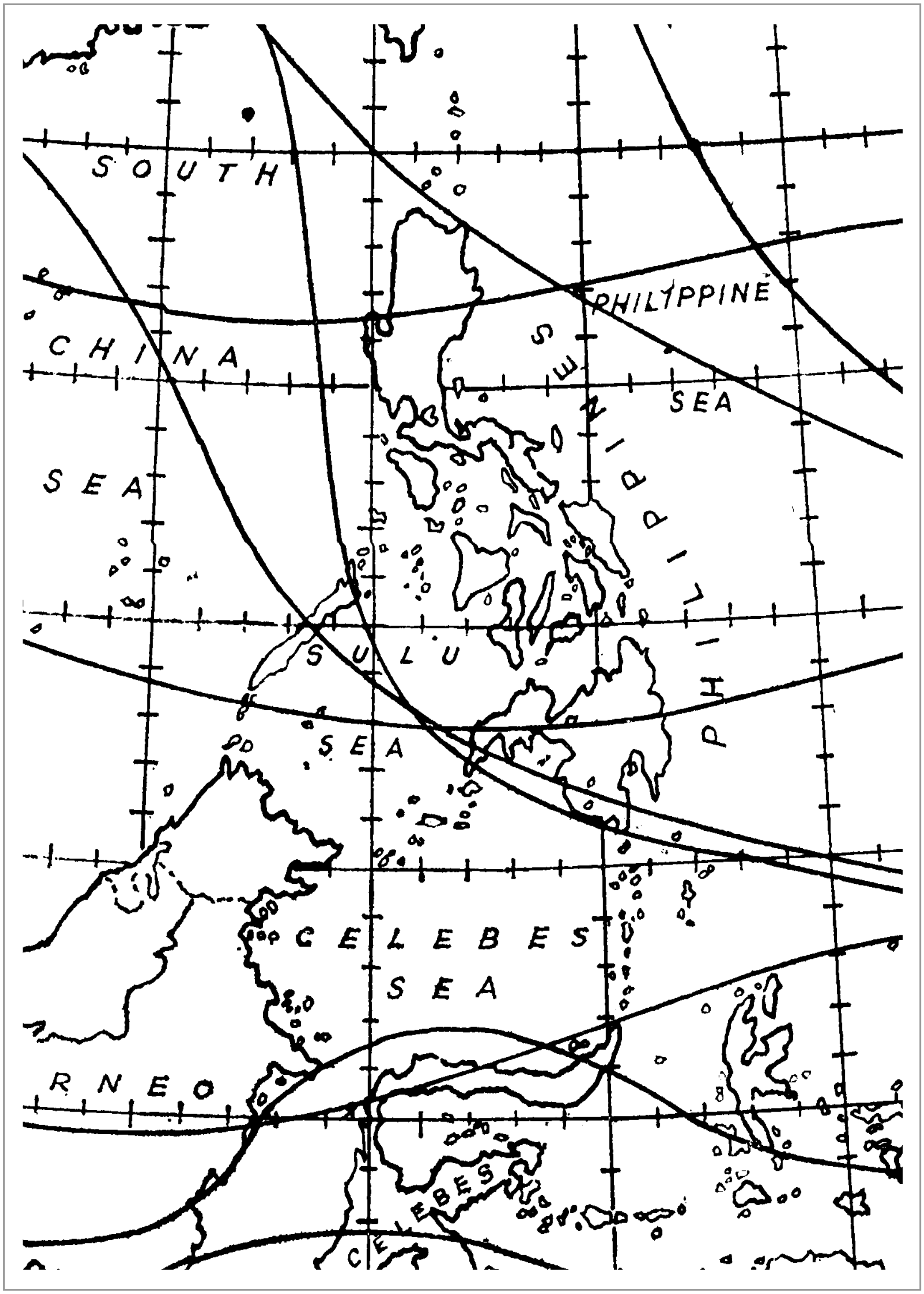


Figure 2.6 Mean monthly position of the ITCZ over SSME (Flores and Balagot, 1969)

Satellite images of easterly waves show nearly circular clusters of cloudiness drifting westward with the trade winds. During summer, about two of these clusters pass through the Philippines per week, usually bringing mild rainfall to the eastern coasts of the Philippines. Few are able to reach the waters of the ecoregion after raining themselves out on the topography of the Pacific Ocean side of the country. Only stronger systems with heavy showers lasting for 2 to 3 days are able to cross over to the Sulu Sea.

Whether the precipitation and cloudiness that prevail over the Philippines during the otherwise dry winter months are truly frontal in nature has long been debated. The main source of doubt is the absence of significant contrasts in temperature and humidity across the supposed interface. However, satellite images and synoptic charts often show these disturbances to be part of a cold front that extends from upper latitudes along a northeast-southwest axis that can reach Mindanao.

THE EL NIÑO SOUTHERN OSCILLATION (ENSO)

The ENSO is a major oceanographic and meteorological phenomenon characterized by a weakening (even reversal) of the trade winds, a decrease in the upwelling over western South America, resulting in an anomalous warming of the waters in the eastern Pacific. Indeed, the measure of the phase and intensity of the phenomenon is the mean sea surface temperature over the Central and Eastern Pacific.

Its effects are more subtle on the other side of the basin, but it can still be very profound. During the ENSO's warm phase, rainfall is generally below normal in the Philippines. As shown by De las Alas and Buan (1986), Mindanao is the region most prone to droughts during the ENSO period. Similar results were gathered by Harger (1995) for Indonesia, who also found an increasing equatorward sensitivity to the El Niño. Recent droughts associated with these events were accompanied by forest fires that persisted over large parts of Southeast Asia.

The El Niño ceases as wind and ocean patterns over the Central and Eastern Pacific revert back to normal. However, conditions can swing another extreme called the La Niña, characterized by stronger trades and cooler sea surface temperatures. Results by Anglo (1999) provide detail on the impact of the cold and warm phases of the ENSO. Maps of standardized composites of annual rainfall associated with the phenomenon (Figure 2.7) show that the eastern Philippines receives higher than normal rainfall during the warm phase (El Niño), lower than normal during the cold phase (La Niña). By contrast, the western section of Luzon exhibits a minimal decrease during the event. During a La Niña, the same western section of Luzon again experiences a decrease in rainfall. Strong La Niña events intensify this decrease, and brings western Visayas (northeast of Sulu Sea) also under drought.

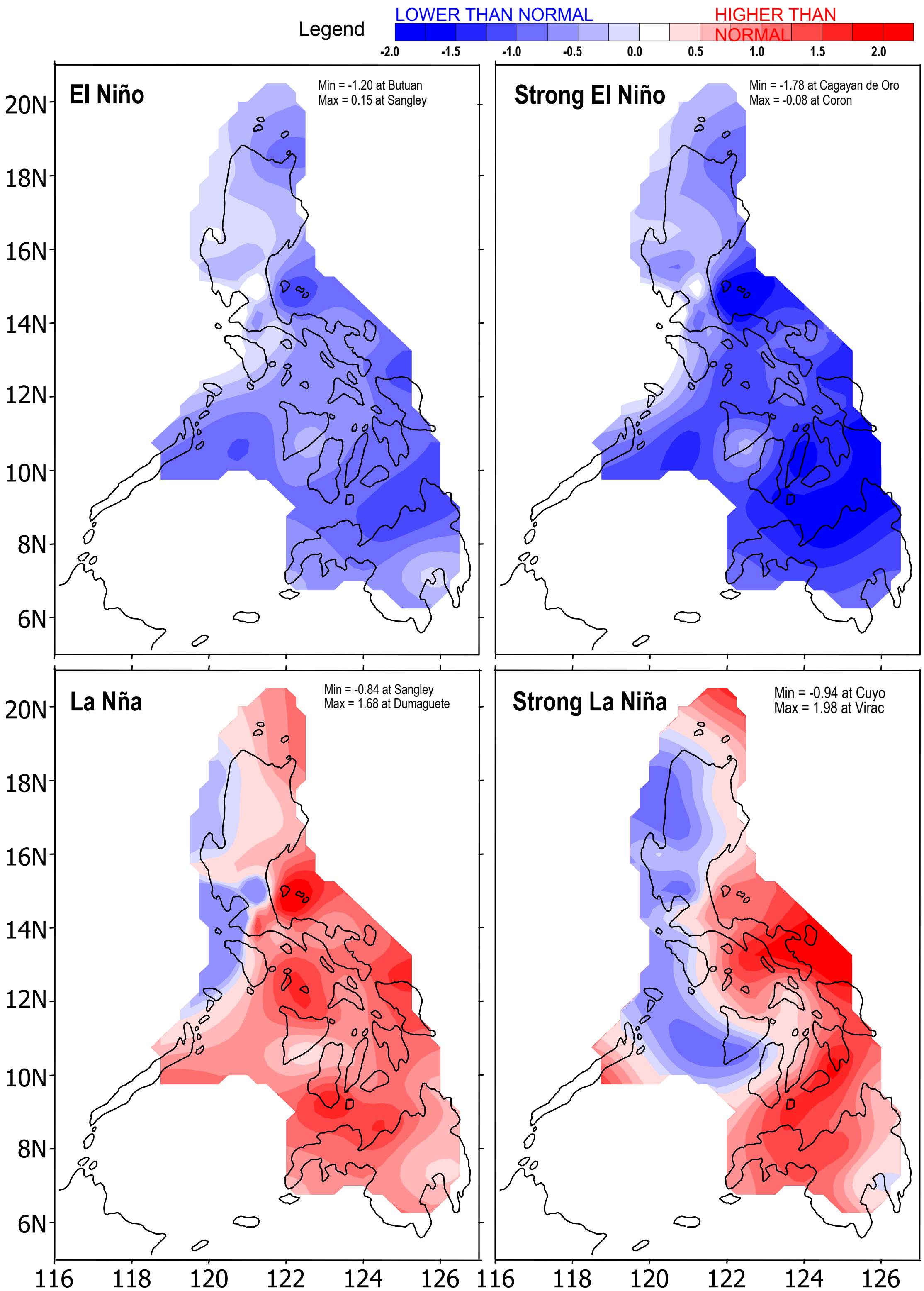


Figure 2.7 Anomalies in standardized rainfall due to the El Niño and La Niña (Anglo, 1999)

TROPICAL CYCLONES

The frequency of passage of tropical cyclones (TC) from 1950 to 1990 over the Philippine Area of Responsibility (PAR) is illustrated in (Figure 2.8), an update of a similar PAGASA map. As may be seen in this figure, most tropical cyclones pass through or originate from part of the Western Pacific east of the Northern Luzon area where more than 25 disturbances pass through every 10 years (or 2.5 annually). The ecoregion is relatively protected from these disturbances compared to the northern sections of the country. On average, less than two tropical cyclones pass through the area every year. Sulawesi Sea, in fact, is virtually free from being crossed by a tropical cyclone strong enough to be named. However, the area remains prone to the indirect effects of these disturbances through strong winds and rain.

Monthly Station Weather

As noted earlier, weather conditions over the SSME tend to remain invariant due to the buffering effect of the bodies of water. Variability is significant only in two parameters: wind and rainfall. Monthly patterns in these parameters are discussed below.

WIND PATTERNS

Wind statistics over the ecoregion are presented through wind roses from 20 stations surrounding the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas (Figure 2.9). Regional patterns, if any, appear to be subtle. Over the southeastern sector of the map, a north-south preference is visible. This covers Davao, General Santos, and Cagayan de Oro in Mindanao, Manado and Gorontalo in Sulawesi. This shared property is either coincidental or the influence of a large-scale system has not been investigated.

A “pure” southwest-northeast reversal depicting the Asian monsoon is distinctly clear in only 2 of the 20 stations, Cuyo and Mactan in Cebu. It is visible in Iloilo, Romblon, Dipolog, Masbate and Sandakan, although winds from other directions tend to make its influence less pronounced. These stations tend to lie along a southwest-northeast axis crossing the central Philippines.

Coron, Puerto Princesa, Calapan, Surigao, Tarakan and Manado indicate the presence of trade winds, even if winds in these stations can also come from other directions.

Wind statistics in the remaining stations exhibit the prevalence of unique wind directions, such as in Tacloban, Tagbilaran, and Zamboanga. Winds at these stations are probably topographically modified.

The data discussed above probably reflect only part of the wind conditions in the area. Owing to its volcanic origin, surface winds in the Philippines and its similarly situated neighbors will be channeled through valleys and around mountains. The tropical weather will mean that there will be enough solar energy over the entire archipelago to drive diurnally reversing winds called land-sea breezes arising from the coastal interface. Winds over the open ocean are probably more steady and much less influenced by the topography, but few stations are available to describe them.

Remotely sensed wind data gathered from the U. S. National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Agency (NOAA) are presented in Figure 2.10 as contours of zonal (east to west) and meridional (north to south) velocity components. A wind with a positive zonal component blows towards the east, that with a positive meridional component blows towards the north. The prevailing flow over the southeast sector of the ecoregion appears to be southwesterly. Over the northwestern sector the dominant flow is from the opposite direction. These averages tend however to mask the seasonal reversal resulting from the Asian monsoon.

Isopleths of mean wind speed found in Figure 2.11 reveal the ecoregion to be regularly ventilated by a moderate flow of at least 3 meters per second. Average wind speeds are weakest near the center of the Sulawesi Sea, becoming stronger near the South China Sea and the Pacific Ocean.

RAINFALL AND CLIMATE

Monthly rainfall statistics from 32 weather stations surrounding the ecoregion exhibit a moderately narrow range of annual totals and about four main types of monthly distribution (Figure 2.12). The monthly distribution is in fact the basis of the Coronas climate classification used in the Philippines. The four types in this classification are described as follows (Kintanar, 1984):

- Type I

  Climate characterized by a distinct dry season and a wet season between June to September. Stations within the ecoregion representing this type include Cuyo, Coron, San Jose (Mindoro), and La Granja. In general western Luzon and the western side of islands in the Visayas belong to this type. This wet season tends to occur with the southwest monsoon, and it is no coincidence that these stations directly face this general direction in their respective island locations.

- Type II

  Climate here has no dry season and has a pronounced rainfall maximum during winter, which also happens to be within the northeast monsoon regime. PAGASA maps find this type to be almost exclusively at the eastern sides of southern Luzon, Samar, Leyte, and Mindanao. Within the ecoregion, Maasin (Leyte), Tacloban, Surigao, Butuan and, outside of the Philippines on the other side of the Sulu Sea, Sandakan and Manado, all belong to this type. Also common to these stations is the fact that they all have unobstructed exposure to this wind direction.

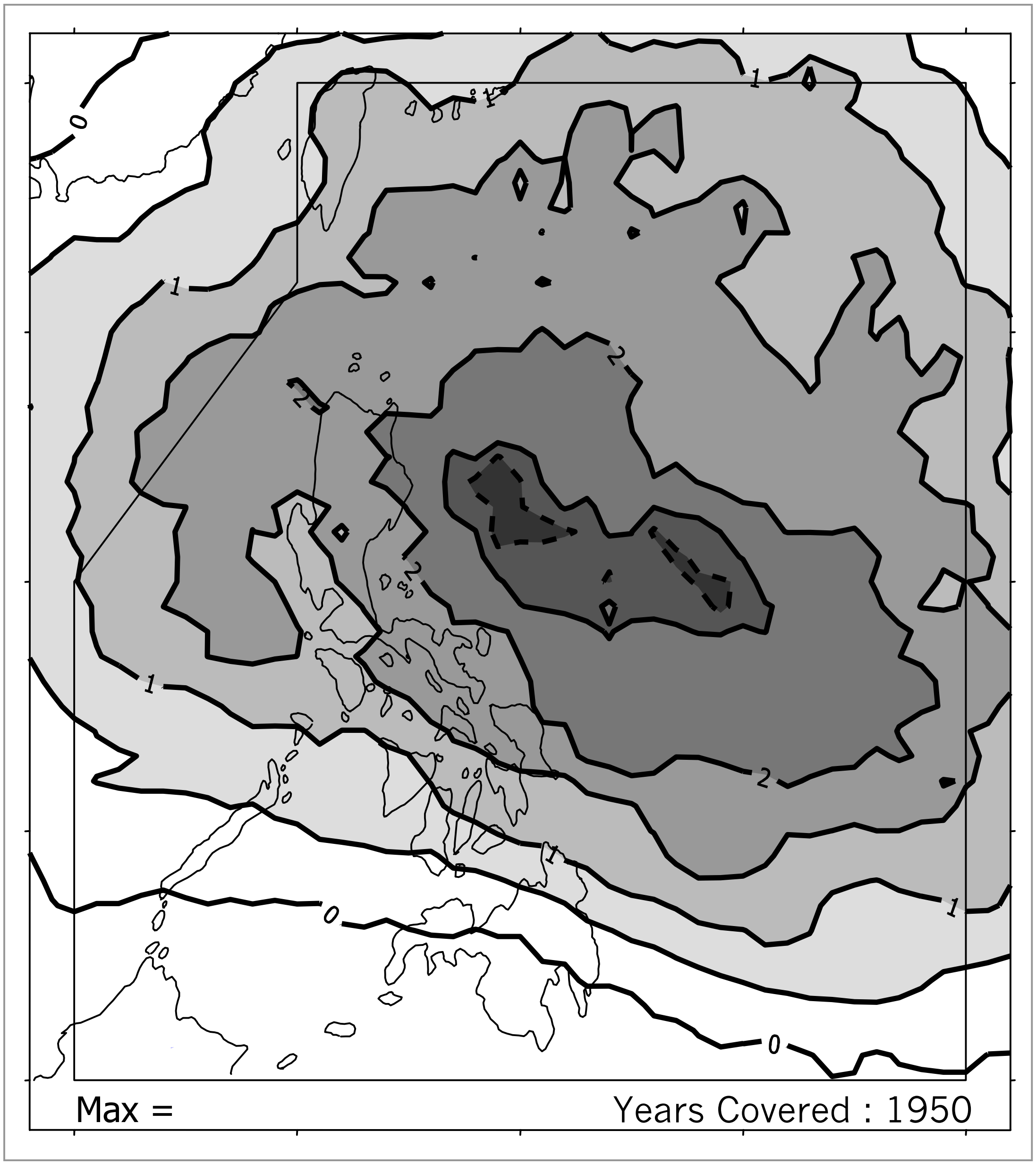


Figure 2.8 Mean annual tropical cyclone passage frequency over the Philippines (Anglo, 1999)

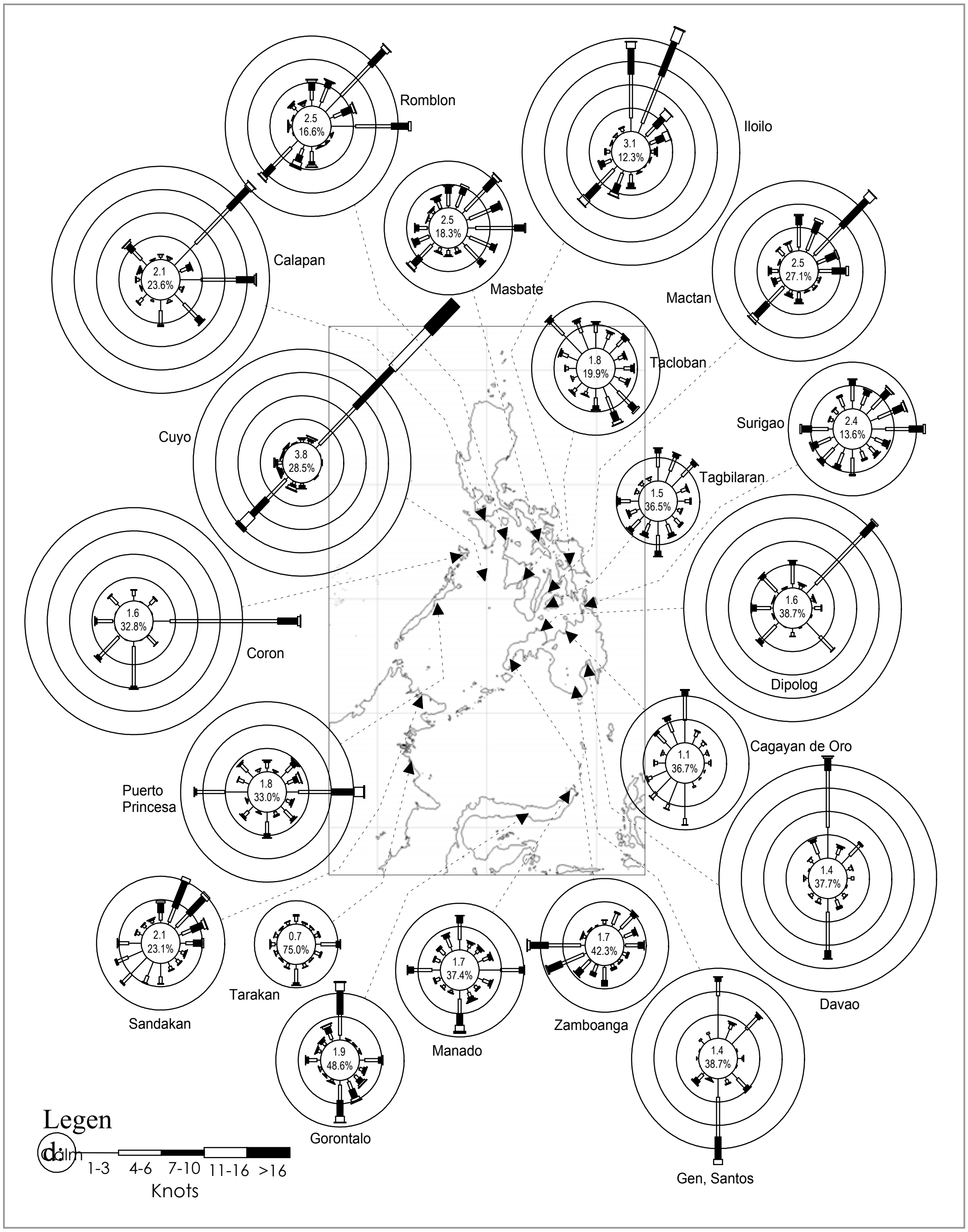
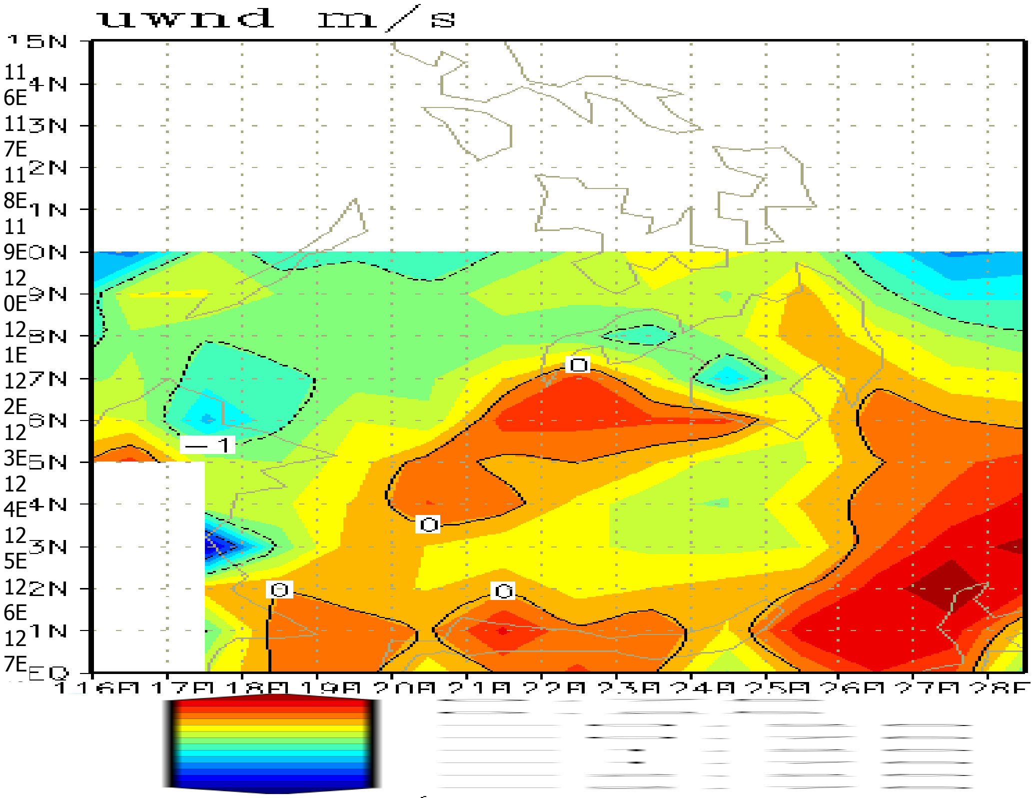
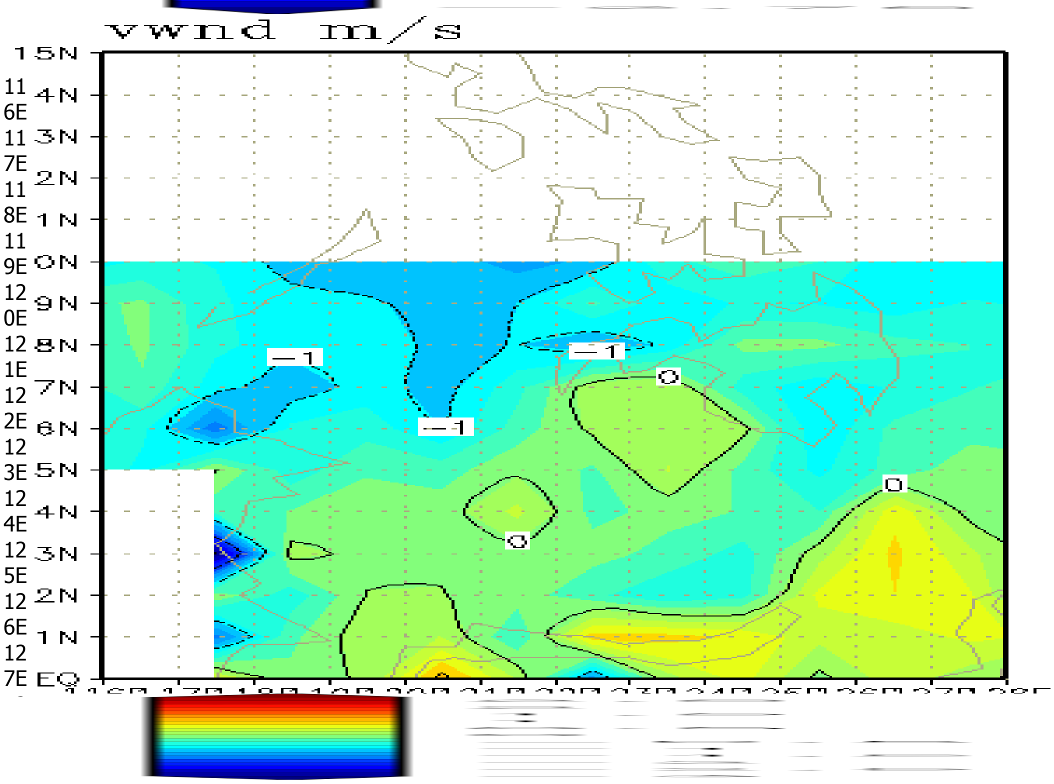


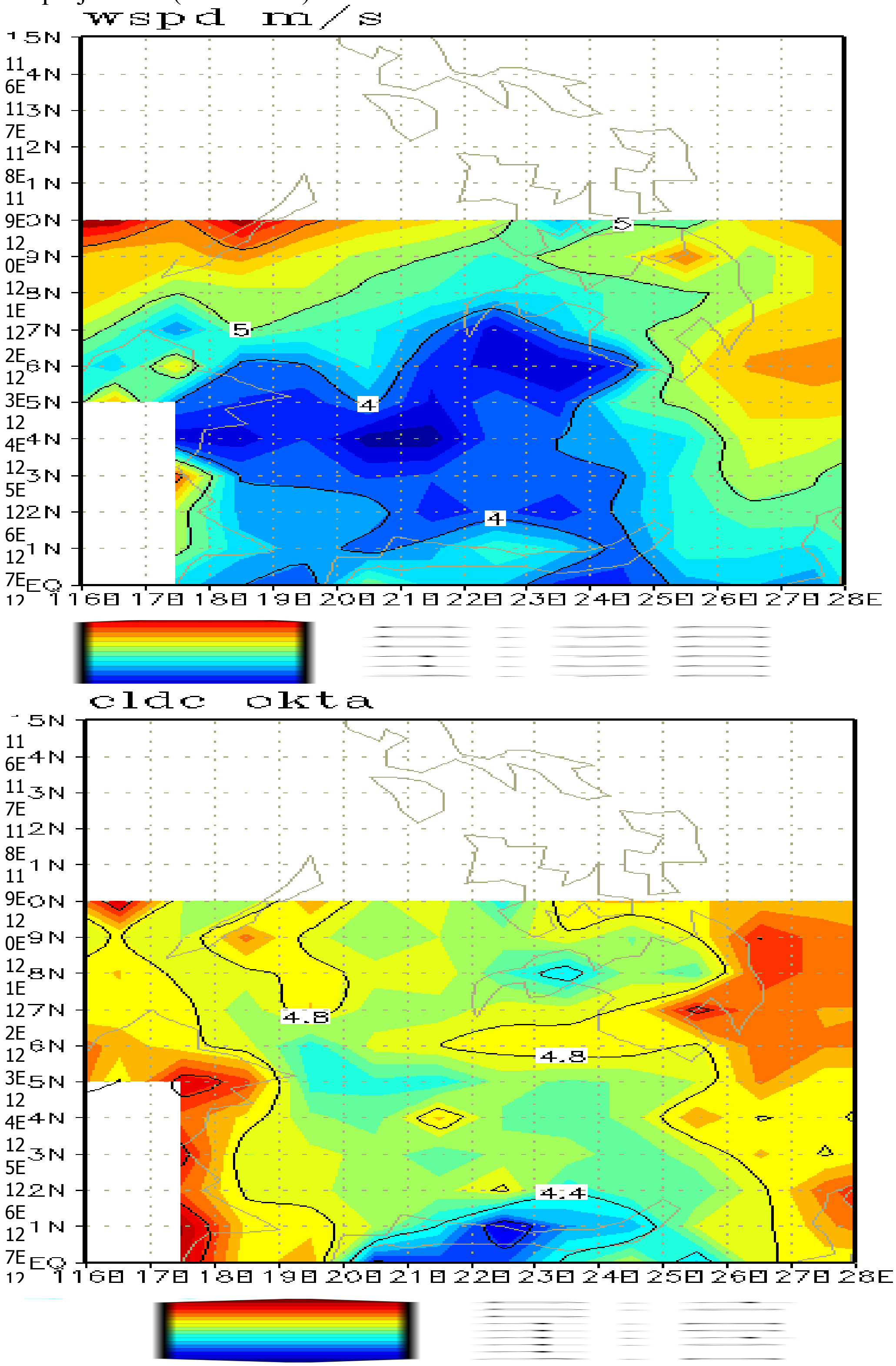
Figure 2.9 Wind roses from selected stations within SSME





Source: NOAA-CIRES/Climate Diagnostics Center

Figure 2.10 Mean surface zonal (left) and meridional wind velocity over the project site (1960-1997)



Source: NOAA-CIRES/Climate Diagnostics Center

Figure 2.11 Mean wind speed (left) and cloudiness over the project site (1960-1997)

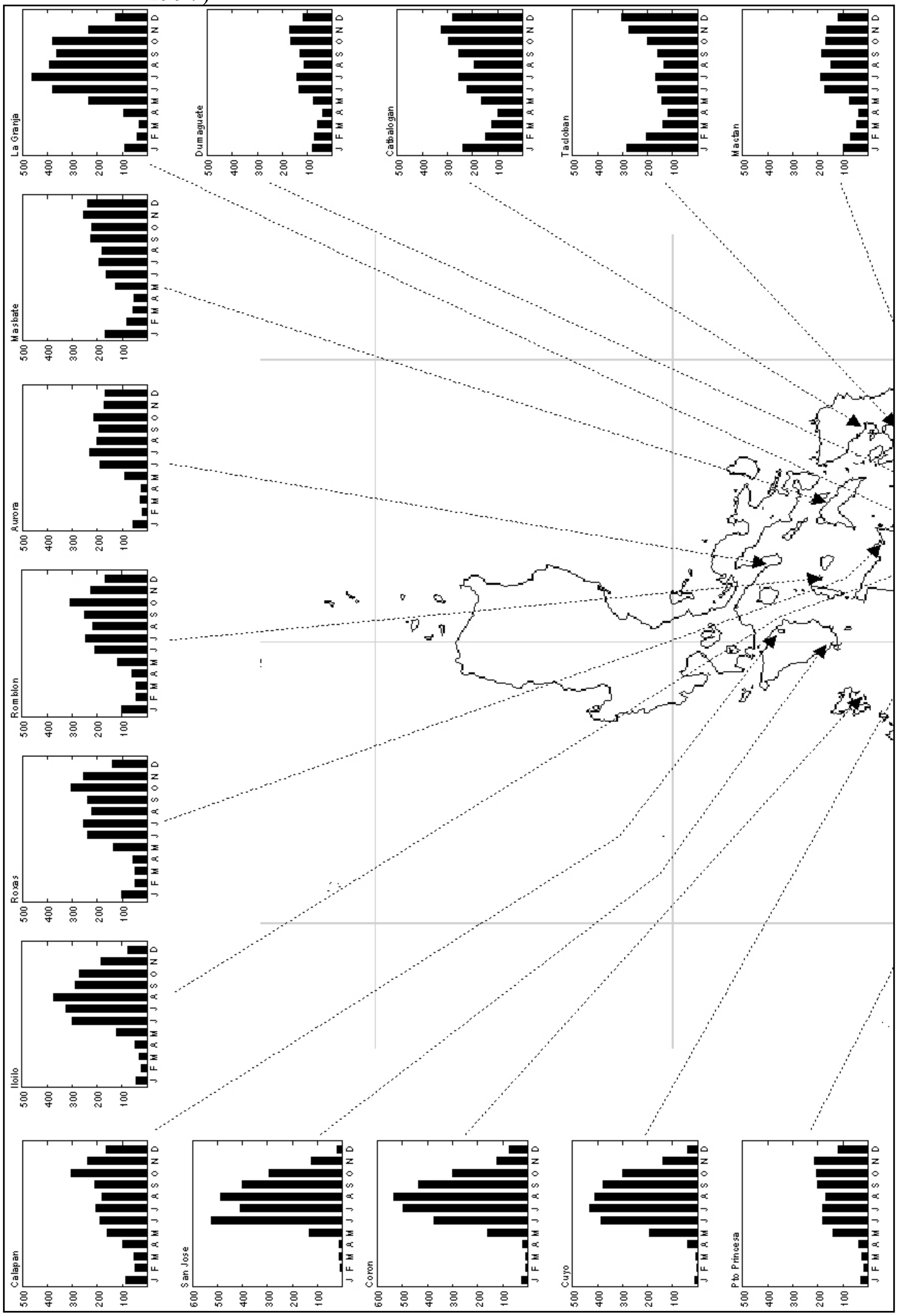
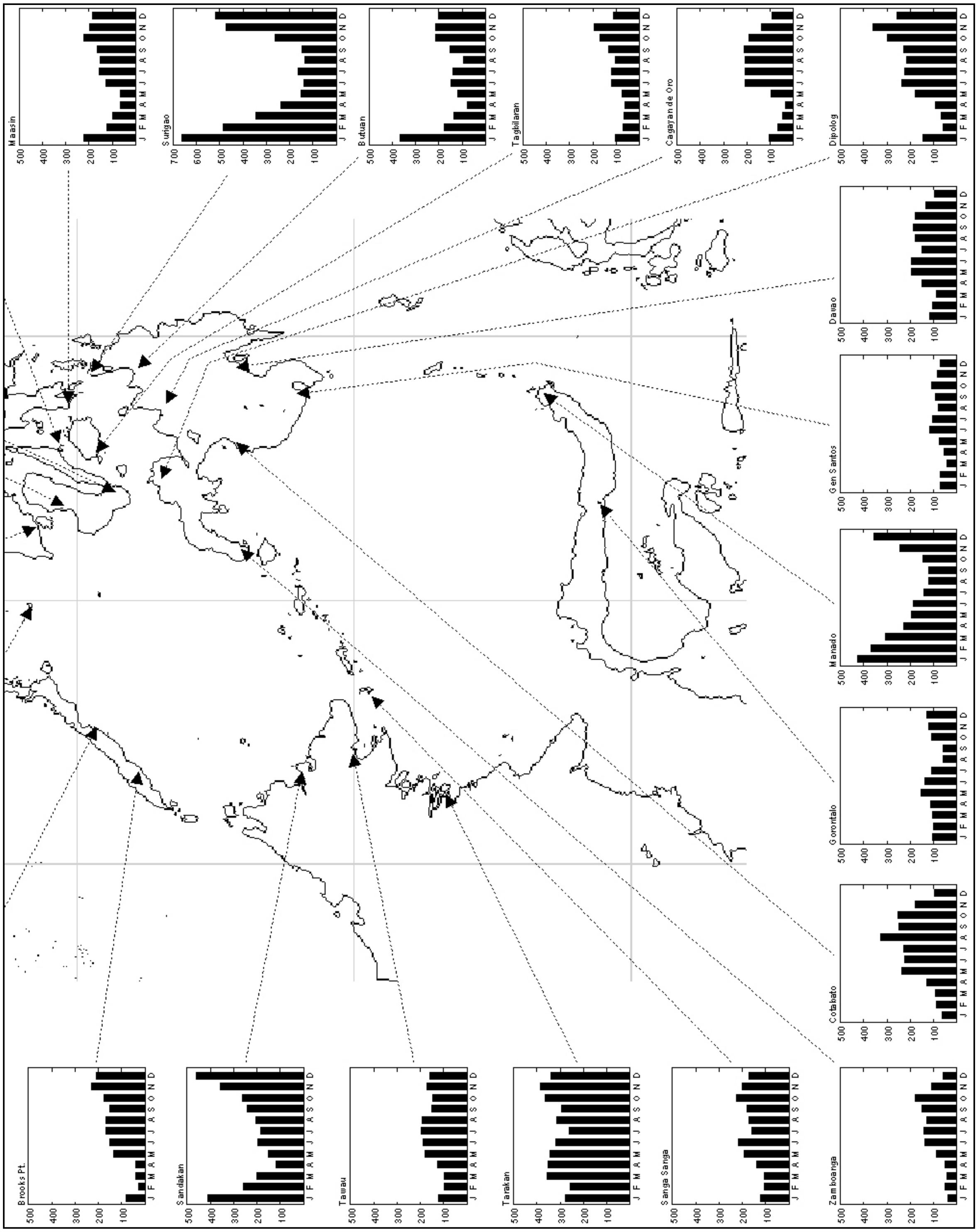


Figure 2.12 Monthly rainfall at selected stations within SSME (mm)



---figure 2.12 contd---

- Type III

  Stations with no pronounced rainfall peak and a short dry season in winter or spring are classified under this type. Most stations within Visayas not belonging to the other two previous types fall under Type III, such as Romblon, Iloilo, Masbate, Roxas, Calapan, Dumaguete and Zamboanga. The resemblance of this type to Type I indicates the influence of the southwest monsoon, but local or small-scale rainfall-inducing or suppressing elements probably modify the synoptic-scale processes.

- Type IV

  Rainfall here is nearly evenly distributed throughout the year, although in the absence of a clear definition of evenness there is some overlap between this type and Type III. Places that clearly fall under this type include Davao, General Santos, Tagbilaran, Sanga Sanga and Tawau. The lack of a seasonal pattern indicates the dominance of local rainfall controls such as topography and possibly land-sea breezes. Topography also probably reduces or eliminates the effect of large-scale processes.

In this part of the globe, the presence of the ocean, the year-round availability of sunlight, and the convergence of the trade winds all favor the uplift of moisture-laden air that condense to generate significant amounts of annual rainfall upon which tropical forests thrive. The ample rainfall is also mirrored by the isopleths of mean cloudiness in Figure 2.10, which show that clouds cover at least half of the sky (4 oktas) on average.

OCEANOGRAPHY

Emmanuel Anglo

Bathymetry of Major Basins

The SSME encompasses the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas and the south-central waters of the Philippines (Figure 2.13). The bathymetry of the area is highly complex owing to the presence of volcanic ridges and sea floor depressions between major islands. In Central and Southern Philippines, which form the northern part of the ecoregion, scattered islands fringed by coral reefs mark its shallower portions. This area exchanges water with the Pacific Ocean through the San Bernardino and Surigao Straits. The Sulu Sea, which is one of the major basins in the region, is nearly rectangular in shape with its bottom sloping from about 1,500 m in the west to more than 5,000 m in the east. This region exchanges bottom water with the South China Sea through a deep channel (>500 m) running along the western side of Panay Island and south of Mindoro Island. This basin is also connected to the South China Sea through the relatively shallow Balabac Strait south of Palawan. Surface water exchange between the two basins occurs through this channel.

The other major basin in the ecoregion, which lies just south of Sulu Sea and north of the equator, is the large Sulawesi Sea. Previous oceanographic soundings and bathymetric charts show that this area has sharp gradients with depths exceeding 5,000 m towards its center. In its central parts, a large abyssal plain is situated in a depth of about 5,100 m. East of the basin is the Sangihe Trough which extends along the ridge that connects North Sulawesi with Mindanao. This area has a shallower sill depth of about 2,000 m and a maximal depth of more than 3,800 m. The bottom waters of the Sulawesi Basin is largely replenished by the Pacific Ocean through this eastern open boundary. A possible exchange of surface waters between the Sulu and Sulawesi Basins may also occur through the Sulu Archipelago.

Tides

With few exceptions, the observed tides in the ecoregion are generally of mixed type, judging from the conspicuous inequality between the two high and the two low water heights indicated in most of the gauging stations covered by the National Mapping and Resource Information Authority (NAMRIA). The primary constituents that dictate the tidal fluctuation in the area of interest include the main lunar diurnal (O_1), the solitary lunar diurnal (K_1), the main lunar semi-diurnal (M_2) and the main solar semi-diurnal (S_2) constituents.

To examine the character of the tide in the stations of interest, ratios of the diurnal to the semi-diurnal constituents $(O_1 + K_1)/(M_2 + S_2)$ were obtained. The higher the value of this ratio in a station, the more dominant is its diurnal component. The estimated ratios are shown in Table 2.5. It can be seen that tides occurring in most of the stations are mixed, with a distinct semi-diurnal character as shown by the values that are close to unity. Davao Gulf is predominantly semi-diurnal based on its calculated ratio of 0.27, the lowest among the 21 stations and close to the characteristic ratio of 0.1 to be considered as purely semi-diurnal.

Table 2.5 Calculated ratio of diurnal to semi-diurnal tidal constituents

Tide Station	$(O_1+K_1)/(M_2+S_2)$
1. Banago Port, Negros Occidental	0.600497
2. Batangas Bay	1.393767
3. Cebu Port	0.645735
4. Surigao Port, Surigao del Norte	3.645838*
5. San Narciso, Quezon	1.006588
6. San Jose, Mindoro Occidental	2.642528*
7. Puerto Princesa, Palawan	1.878685
8. Penascosa, Palawan	4.611087*
9. Jolo Port, Sulu	2.822620*
10. Iloilo Port	1.243962
11. Dumaguete Port	1.384173

12. Catanauan, Quezon	1.140229
13. Tagbilaran City, Bohol	1.600161
14. Isabela, Basilan	2.311727*
15. Davao Gulf	0.271784 [s]
16. Balabac Strait-Southern Palawan	2.557886*
17. Ormoc, Leyte	1.038074
18. Tacloban, Leyte	2.137604*
19. Ozamis Port	1.005074
20. Iligan Bay	1.368399
21. Macajalar Bay, Cagayan de Oro	1.527248

* mixed, but predominantly diurnal
[s] semi-diurnal

Seven out of the 21 stations have predominantly diurnal tides. Most are found in the southern Philippines near open waters. Two of these stations (Jolo and Basilan) are located at the boundary of the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas. Judging from this trend, tides on the other side of the basin are likely to also exhibit predominantly diurnal tides.

In general, the tidal range within the ecoregion varies from 1 to 3 m. Stations in the northern portion showed tidal ranges of about 1 to less than 2 m. Slightly higher tidal ranges of 1.5 to 3 m have been reported in the Sulawesi Sea off the eastern coasts of Borneo.

Currents

Ocean currents in the ecoregion are mainly wind-driven and as such are expected to flow more or less in the direction of the seasonally varying monsoon winds. However, the presence of complex coastal boundaries and bottom topographic features in the area appear to have a profound influence on the observed circulation patterns. The formation of cyclonic and anticyclonic circulations are strongly dictated by wind stress and coastal and bathymetric configurations.

The physical oceanographic study of Southeast Asian waters by Wyrtki (1961) gives by far the most comprehensive documentation of ocean currents in the ecoregion. This report includes current measurements in the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas. More recent observations using drifters and Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers (ADCP) were gathered by Lukas *et al.* (1991), mainly in the Sulawesi Sea. The latter observations, which are complemented by model results, gives a good picture of the influence of the persistent North Equatorial Current and Mindanao Current on the southern part of the ecoregion.

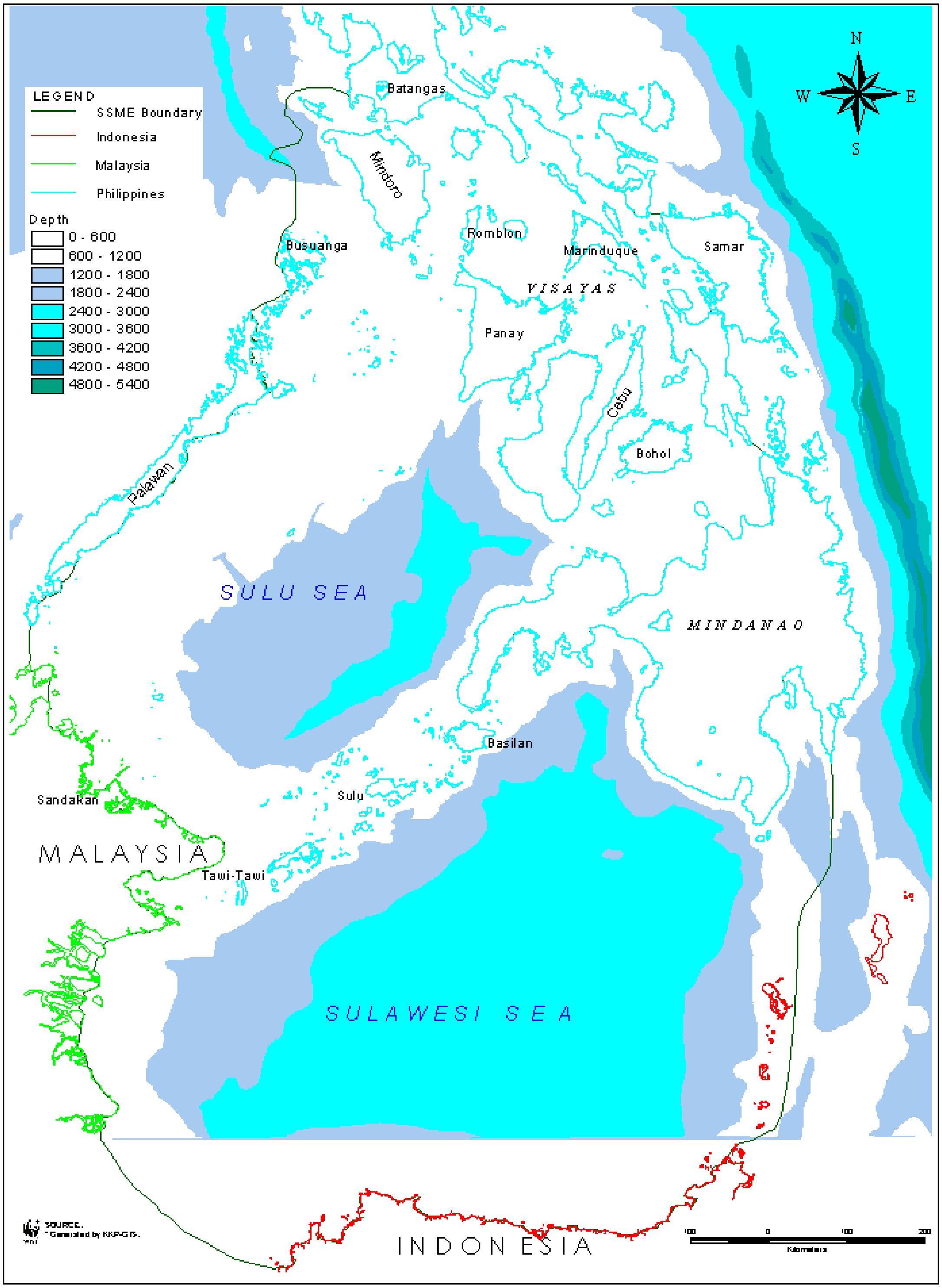


Figure 2.13 Bathymetric contours of the SSME

Scattered and intermittent observations on coastal currents within the Philippine Archipelago north of the ecoregion are gathered and compiled by the Coast and Geodetic Survey Department of the NAMRIA. Together with tide forecasts, predicted current velocities for selected channels are published annually by the agency.

Surface flow from the Pacific Ocean through the Philippine Islands occur in the San Bernardino and Surigao Straits. In these two straits, strong tidal currents (often exceeding 100 cm/s) and residual currents are observed. They transport water of the surface layer over a sill depth of 110 m in the San Bernardino Strait and of 65 m in the Surigao Strait (Wyrtki, 1961). Numerous small passages in between the Philippine Islands are also responsible for minor but continuous water exchange with the Pacific Ocean. There is also a continuous transport of water from the North Equatorial Current into the Sulu Sea. From May to September, the current transport is expected to be weak because the southwest monsoon wind opposes it. The maximal inflow occurs in February (the peak of the northeast monsoon) when the North Equatorial Current is strongest. During this period, the water masses flow into the Sulu Sea partly through the South China Sea.

Wyrtki's interpretation of the average bimonthly circulation patterns are shown in Figure 2.14. The surface currents in Sulu Sea show strong seasonal variability due to monsoon winds. The wind-driven surface currents are generally weak in Sulu Sea with magnitudes ranging from 10 to 25 cm/s. During the northeast monsoon months of February, October and December, surface currents in Sulu Sea are generally directed towards the southwest. Surface waters flow out of Sulu Sea towards the South China Sea in two main exit points namely, the Balabac Strait south of Palawan and the deep channel off the coasts of Panay and Mindoro.

During the southwest monsoon months of June and August, the surface currents in Sulu Sea change direction. The mean surface currents along the eastern coast of Sulu Sea in June appear to flow towards the northeast. As northeast-directed currents encounter the Philippine Islands, they veer to the northwest, and splits into a larger flow towards the South China Sea through the channel between Mindoro and Palawan and a weak return flow along the western coasts of the Sulu Sea. The situation in August at the height of the southwest monsoon season changes from a weak cyclonic to a more defined anticyclonic pattern. Water from the China Sea and the Pacific Ocean also appear to enhance this circulation through the deep Mindoro-Palawan channel and the Strait of Surigao, respectively.

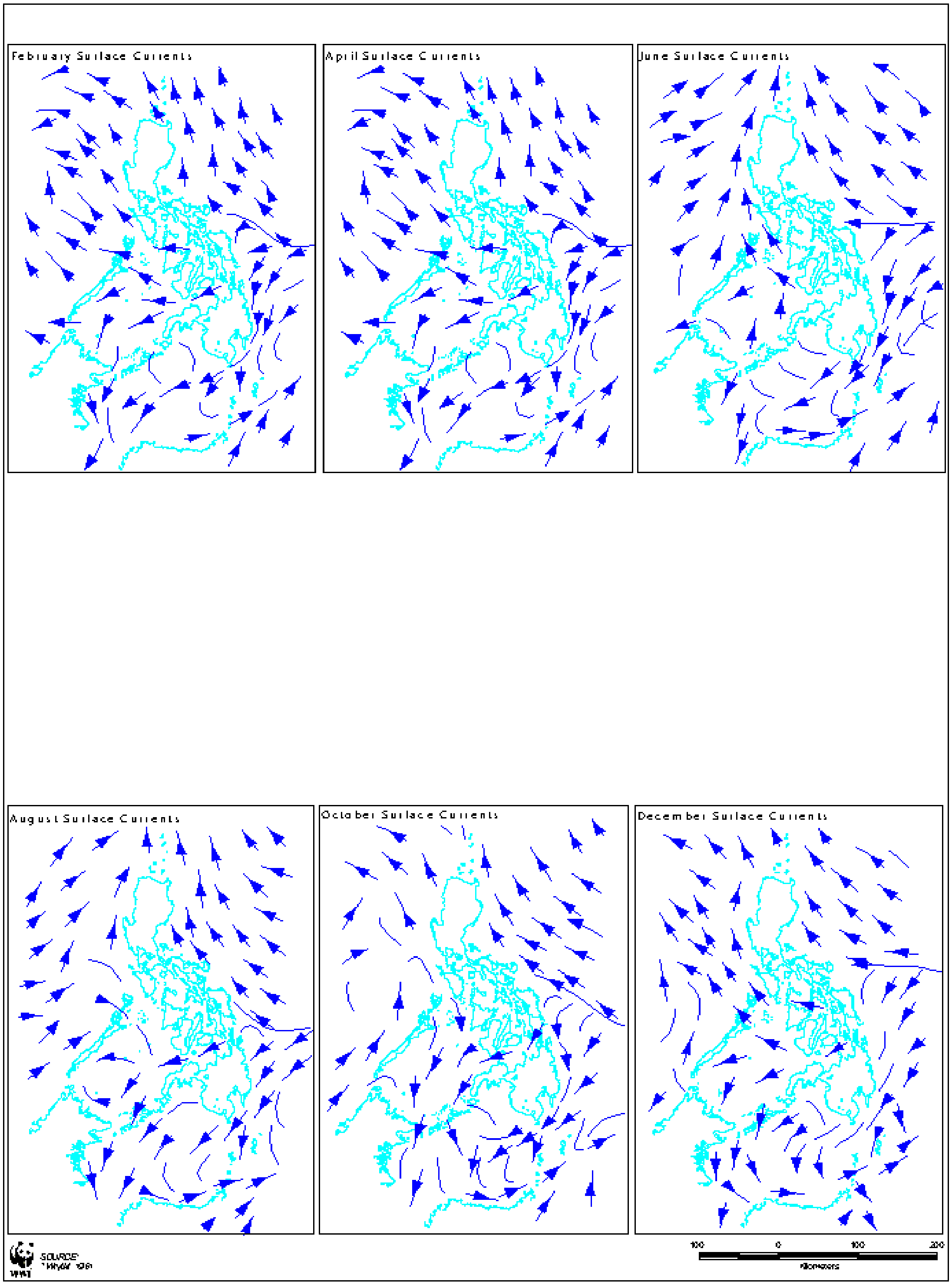


Figure 2.14 Surface currents in the Sulu-Sulawesi region and vicinity (Wyrtki, 1961)

The Sulawesi Sea is widely open to the Pacific Ocean so that its circulation invades this region (Wyrtki, 1961). The Mindanao Current, which is enhanced by the North Equatorial Current, is responsible for the strong southwest flow (see Figure 2.14). The North Equatorial Current is the most powerful branch of the circulation in the western Pacific Ocean and flows steadily during the whole year towards the Philippines (Wyrtki, 1961). This current feeds the Mindanao Current, which flows close to the coast of Mindanao to the south with velocities often exceeding 100 cm/s. Approximately in the latitude of the south point of Mindanao, the current splits, one branch continues in the direction of the main current to the south, the other weaker branch turns to the southwest and enters the Sulawesi Sea (Wyrtki, 1961). Because of these two current systems, the average current patterns in Sulawesi Sea show a predominant northeasterly flow throughout the year. As this current system is expected to accelerate with the northeasterly winds, the northeasterly flow can reach a magnitude of 100 cm/s northeast of Sulawesi Sea during the northeast monsoon. However, as they intrude the center of the basin, a deceleration is evident upon encountering the major land mass of Borneo and Sulawesi. Part of the southwest-directed flow exits in the Macassar Strait as a weak current that continues towards the south. The main part veers up in the northeast direction as a weak counterflow in the north coasts of Sulawesi.

The strong northeasterly flow in the Sulawesi Sea enhances water exchange with the Pacific Ocean. It is not surprising, therefore, that the water characteristics in the Sulawesi Basin is related to that of the Western Pacific Basin. Furthermore, water exchange through surface flows between the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas can occur between the Sulu Archipelago. From October to January, when north winds prevail over the Sulawesi Sea, the eddy in which the Mindanao Current turns back to the east, is displaced to the east, and water from the Sulu Sea flows through the western part of the Sulawesi Sea into the Macassar Strait. In the northern part of the Sulawesi Sea the water movements are normally weak and irregular, but movements into the Sulu Sea prevail from March to July and in the other months movements are towards the southwest (Wyrtki, 1961).

Wind-Generated Waves

Wind-generated surface waves were estimated using a hindcasting technique based on the Sverdrup-Munk-Bretschneider (SMB) modified relation for finite amplitude waves recommended by the US Army Coastal Engineering Research Center (CERC, 1989). This empirical method generates the amplitudes of wind-generated waves based on known wind speeds and depth of the basin. In particular, the procedure calculates the significant wave height, defined as the average height of the 1/3 highest waves. The method is based on the following equation:

$$H_s = \frac{0.283W^2}{g}\tanh\left[0.53\left(\frac{gh}{W^2}\right)^{0.75}\right]\tanh\left[\frac{0.0125\left(\frac{gF}{W^2}\right)^{0.42}}{\tanh\left[0.53\left(\frac{gh}{W^2}\right)^{0.75}\right]}\right]$$

where H_s is the significant wave height, W is the surface wind speed measured at anemometer level, F is the fetch or average distance the wind blows over the sea, g is the gravitational acceleration and h is the mean water depth. Table 2.6 shows the estimated significant wave heights at selected wind speeds and water depths in the ecoregion.

Table 2.6 Estimated significant wave heights (m) in SSME.

Depth (m)	Surface Wind Speed (m/s)				
	1-5	6-9	10-15	16-20	21-30
5	0.02-0.46	0.57-0.83	0.90-1.17	1.21-1.38	1-41-1.69
10	0.02-0.51	0.66-1.08	1.20-1.72	1.81-2.13	2.20-2.76
50	0.02-0.52	0.70-1.26	1.45-2.38	2.57-3.29	3.46-5.02
100	0.02-0.52	0.70-1.26	1.45-2.43	2.63-3.41	3.60-5.34
500	0.02-0.52	0.70-1.26	1.46-2.44	2.64-3.44	3.65-5.50
1000	0.02-0.52	0.70-1.26	1.46-2.44	2.64-3.44	3.65-5.50

During normal conditions with wind speeds ranging from 1-5 m/s and an assumed fetch of 50 km, significant wave heights around half a meter or less can be expected in the area of study. During stormy conditions with surface winds ranging from 21-30 m/s, the area may experience violent waves with significant wave heights exceeding 5 m in amplitude. It should be noted that the influence of the fetch on the wave height is asymptotic, i.e., higher fetches do not have a significant effect on the estimated values.

As noted earlier, these figures represent the average of the highest third of all wave heights. Actual waves could be significantly higher, particularly in concave coastal configurations that tend to concentrate wave energy.

Sea Surface Temperature (SST)

Sea surface temperatures in the area have been taken from the website of the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration/Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory (NOAA/PMEL). The surface water temperature measurements taken from 1946 to 1989 reflect the tropical character of the waters, with levels between 26 to 29°C. As shown in Figure 2.15, there is a 0.5-degree temperature decrease towards higher latitudes from the west-central part of the Sulawesi Sea to the southern coasts of Luzon. A similar latitudinal variation of surface temperatures during the northeast monsoon months of

November to April can be seen from the monthly interpolated SST's (Figures 2.16a-c). Lowest SSTs between 26.8°C to 28.2°C are generally observed in February.

During the southwest monsoon season, a different distribution pattern of SST can be seen. A temperature gradient from west to east becomes evident. The SST distribution in May shows a maximum of about 29.55°C in the western boundaries of the ecoregion (e.g. Palawan), decreasing to about 29.05°C in the east. This east-west gradient vanishes during the month of June, reappearing again in July as a north-south gradient with a minimum of about 28.8 °C in the deep portions of Sulawesi and Sulu Seas. In the northern coast of Sulawesi, a small area with a temperature above 29°C appears, as warm as the southern coasts of Luzon. An almost uniformly distributed SST picture can be observed during the month of August. This persists until the month of September. Most of the region under study has sea surface temperatures of 28.8-28.9°C during these months. The only recorded exception was in 1998 when SST went up to 33ºC in September through November, thus causing the coral "bleaching" event.

In locations with shallow waters, such as those with large fringing coral reefs in Southern Philippines, the seabed may be close enough to the surface to be heated directly by sunlight. Since the heat capacity of coral or other substrates are lower than that of water, a small greenhouse effect causes the overlying water to be heated as well. In such cases, variation in solar heating can cause the surface water to exhibit a temperature range exceeding 2°C within the day. Owing to the foregoing factor, short-term variations in cloudiness can also impart diurnal sea surface temperature changes larger than 2°C in shallow waters.

Cooler and drier atmospheric conditions (which enhance evaporation and latent heat release from the ocean) bring mean water temperatures to below 27 to 28°C during the northeast monsoon months of November to February. Water temperatures consistently within the upper end of the narrow range are then expected during the months marking the transition between the monsoons owing to the decrease in cloudiness. The Asian summer should also bring warmer ocean temperatures, but increased cloudiness tends to decrease surface water temperatures during periods with disturbances.

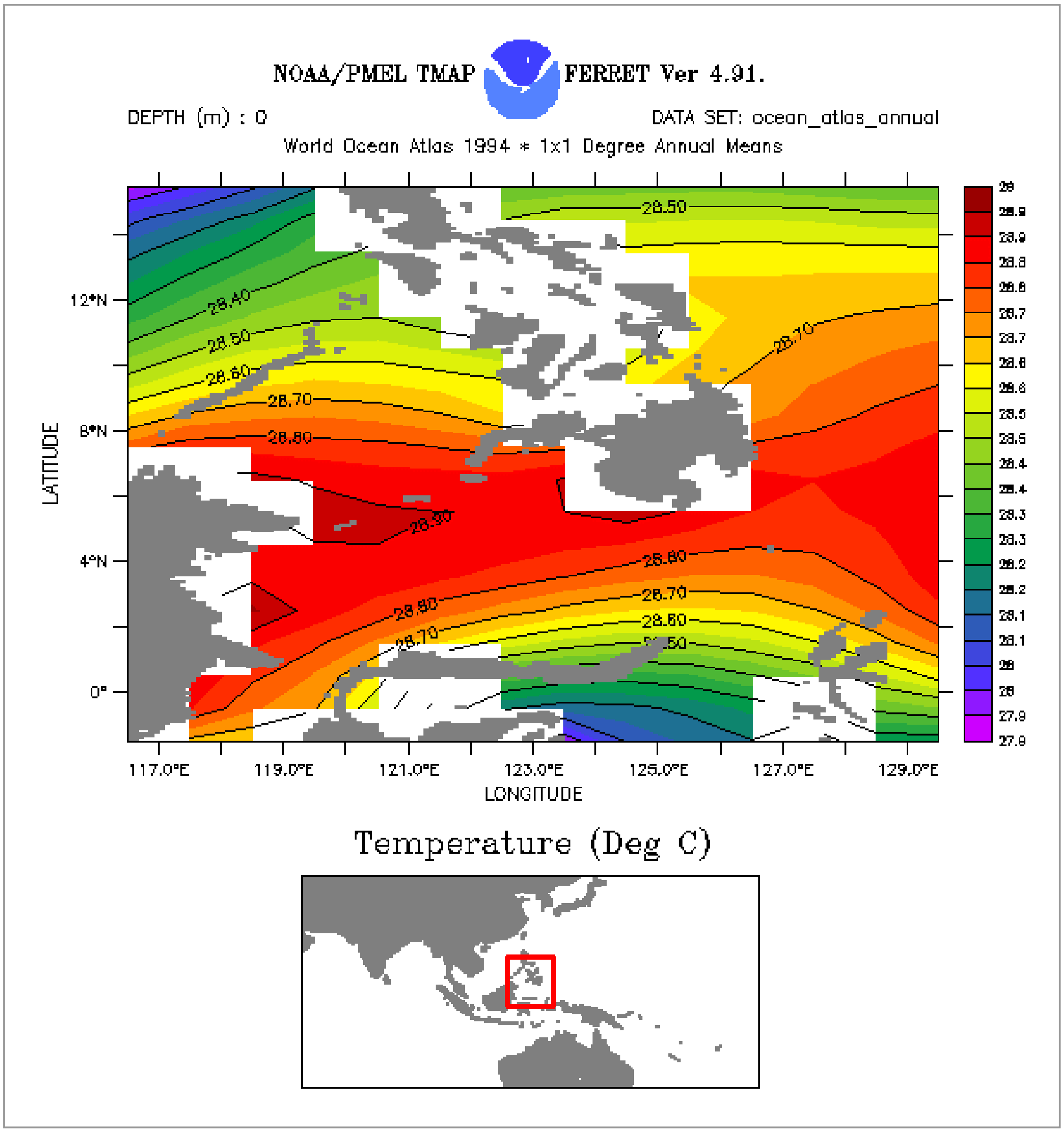
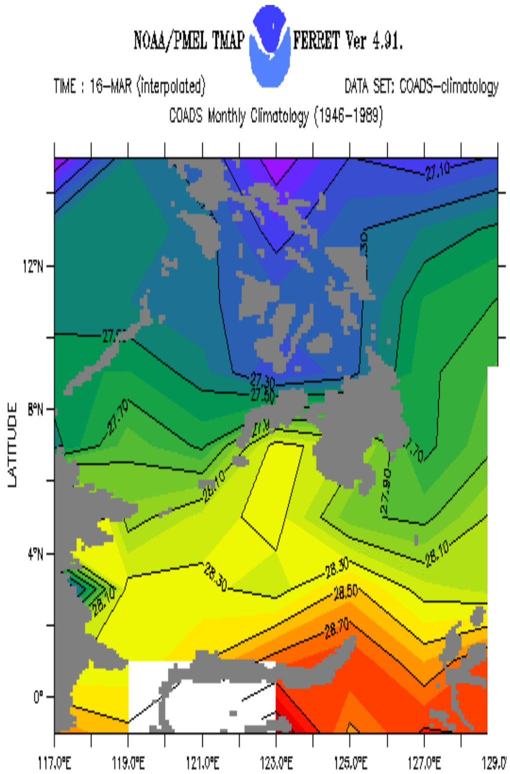
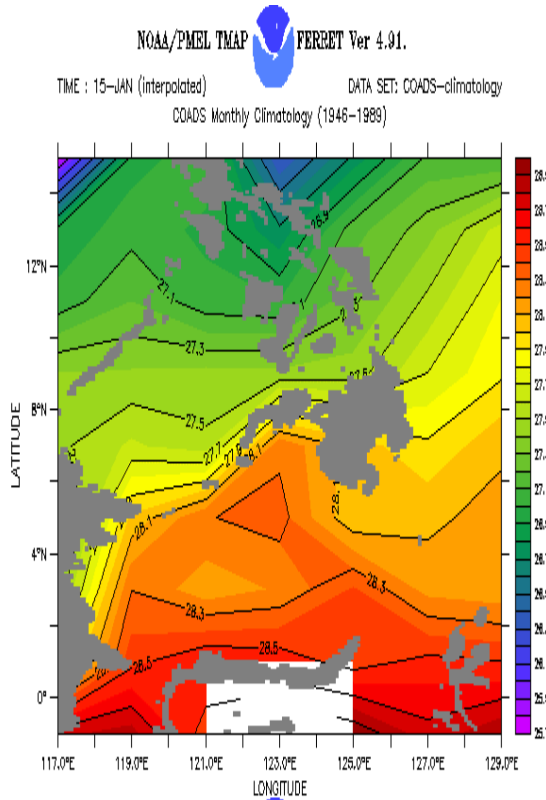
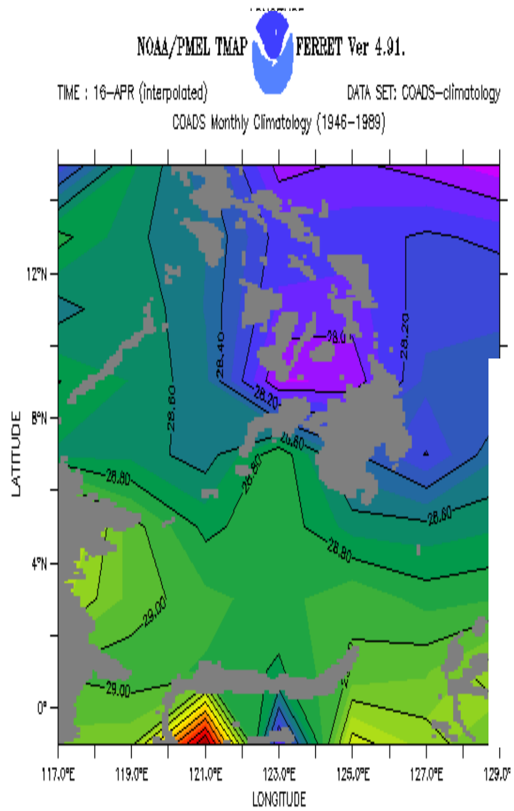


Figure 2.15 Mean annual sea surface temperature within SSME (NOAA/PMEL)


NOAA/PMEL TMAP FERRET Ver 4.91.
TIME : 16-MAR (interpolated)
DATA SET: COADS-climatology
COADS Monthly Climatology (1946-1989)
LATITUDE
12°N
8°N
4°N
0°
117.0°E
119.0°E
121.0°E
123.0°E
125.0°E
127.0°E


NOAA/PMEL TMAP FERRET Ver 4.91.
TIME : 15-JAN (interpolated)
DATA SET: COADS-climatology
COADS Monthly Climatology (1946-1989)
LATITUDE
12°N
8°N
4°N
0°
117.0°E
119.0°E
121.0°E
123.0°E
125.0°E
127.0°E
129.0°E
LONGITUDE


NOAA/PMEL TMAP FERRET Ver 4.91.
TIME : 16-APR (interpolated)
DATA SET: COADS-climatology
COADS Monthly Climatology (1946-1989)
LATITUDE
12°N
8°N
4°N
0°
117.0°E
119.0°E
121.0°E
123.0°E
125.0°E
127.0°E
LONGITUDE

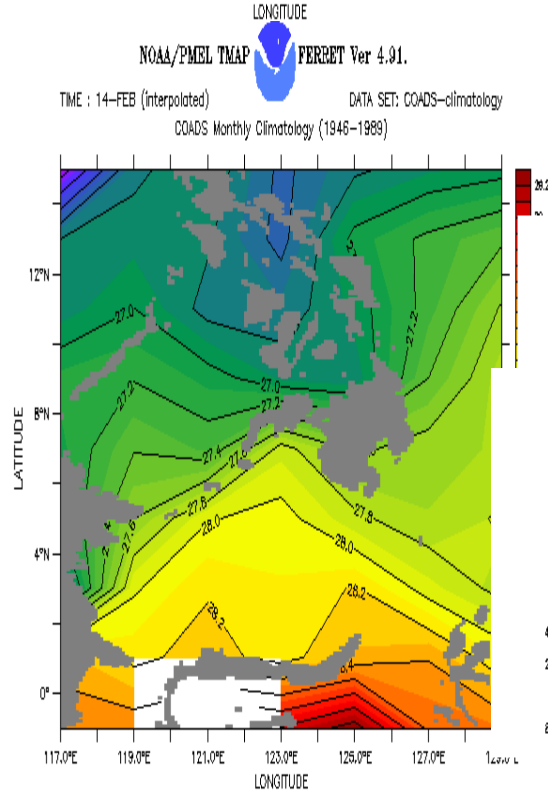

NOAA/PMEL TMAP FERRET Ver 4.91.
TIME : 14-FEB (interpolated)
DATA SET: COADS-climatology
COADS Monthly Climatology (1946-1989)
LATITUDE
12°N
8°N
4°N
0°
117.0°E
119.0°E
121.0°E
123.0°E
125.0°E
127.0°E
LONGITUDE

Figure 2.16a Mean monthly SST at SSME for January to April (NOAA/PMEL)

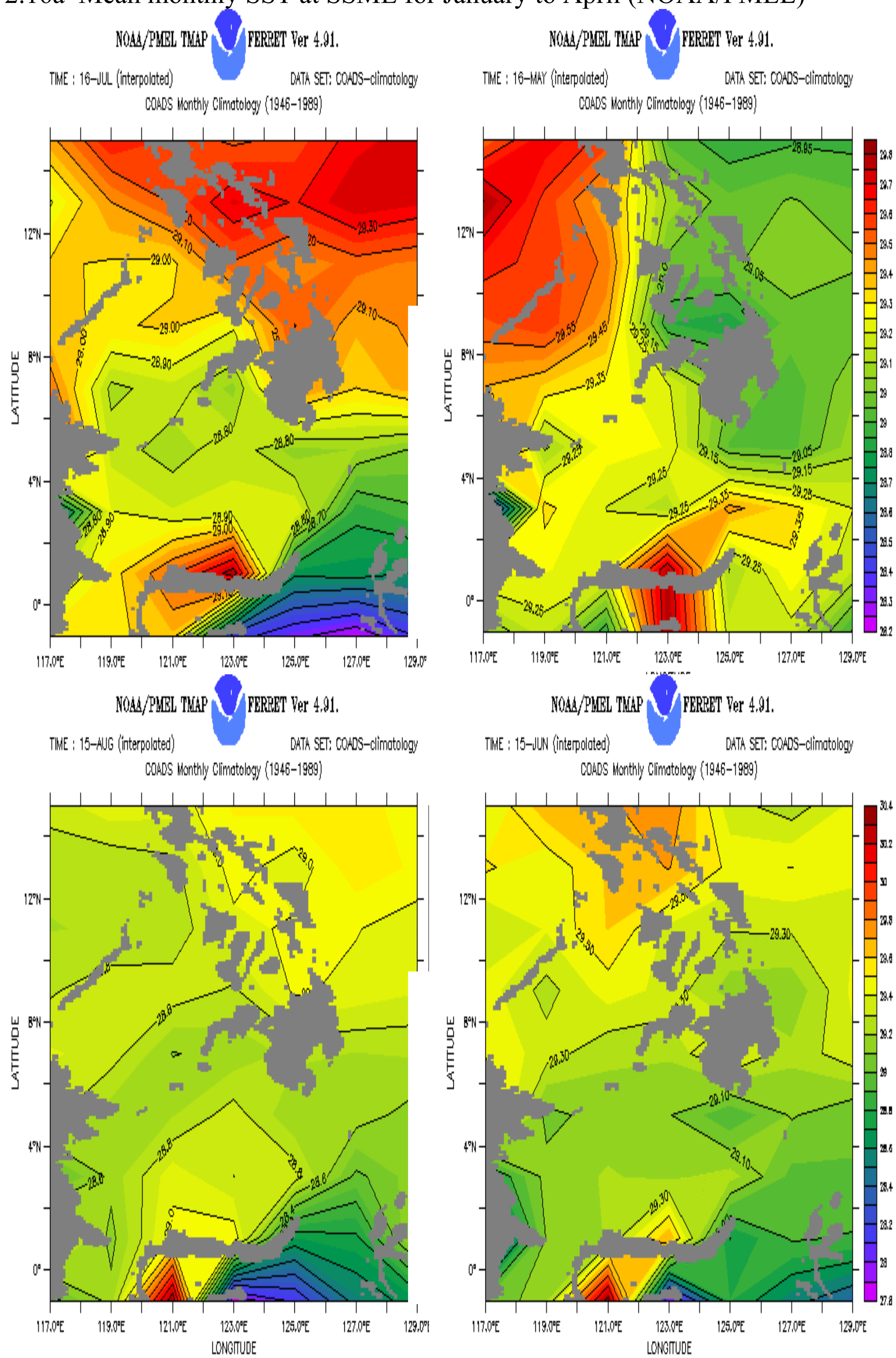


Figure 2.16b Mean monthly SST at SSME for May to August (NOAA/PMEL)

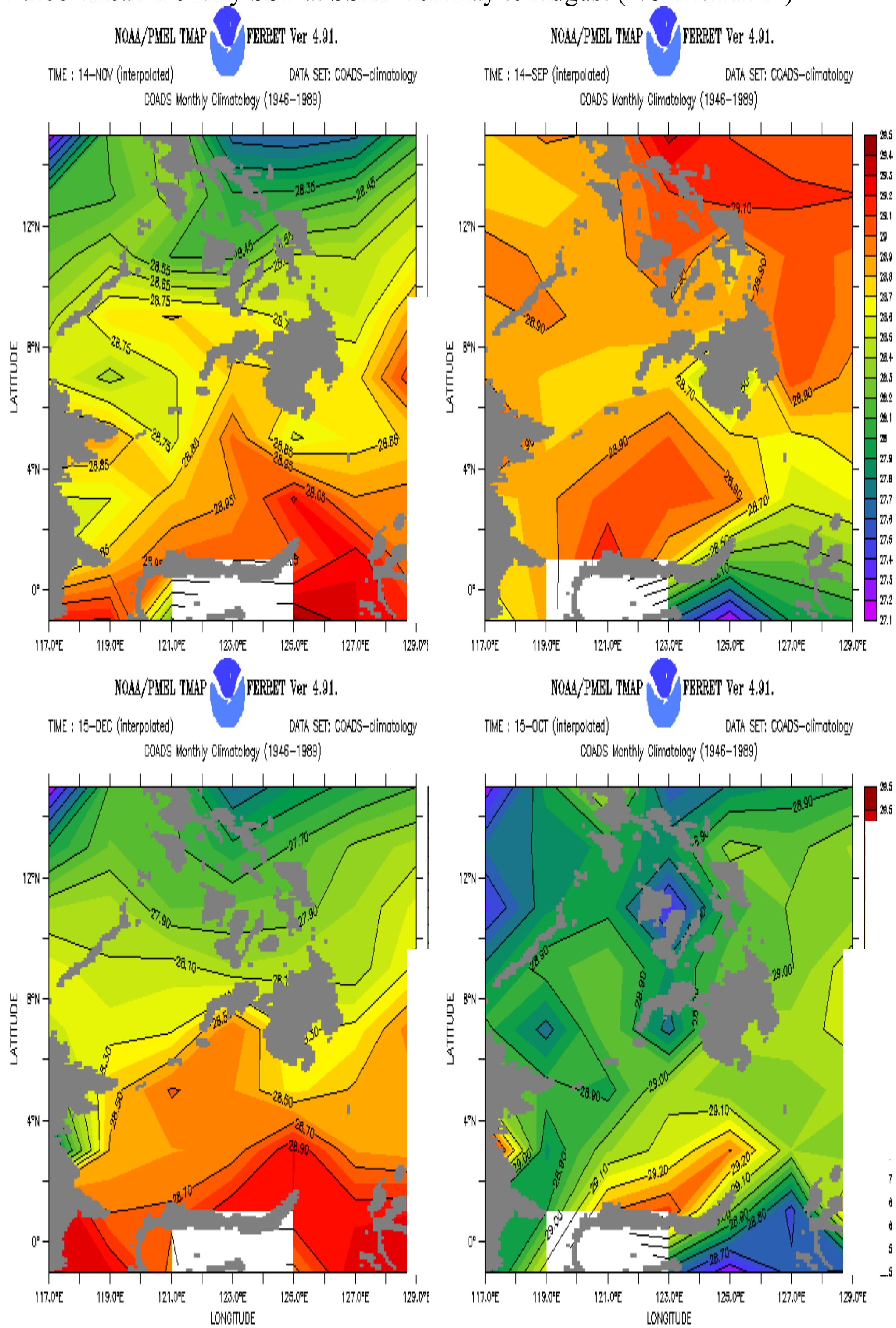


Figure 2.16c Mean monthly SST at SSME for September to December (NOAA/PMEL)

Salinity

Observations of salinity were taken from the World Ocean Atlas, which were interpolated and mapped by NOAA/PMEL from observations in 1994. The annual average values of surface salinity in the ecoregion is shown in Figure 2.17. In general, the salinity varies from 33.5 psu (practical salinity unit) in the western coasts of Sulu Sea to about 34.2 psu in the eastern boundaries of the Sulawesi Sea, a relatively large range within the area. This can be explained by the strong variability of rainfall and evaporation in the ecoregion. According to Wyrtki (1961) and as indicated elsewhere in this report, the rainy season from May to September in the Sulu Sea is clearly developed, while during the rest of the year rainfall and evaporation are almost balanced. During the rainy season, the excess rainfall is about 840 mm, dropping salinity by 1.2 psu. But with a homogenous layer of 30 m such an excess of rainfall gives a decrease of only 0.9 psu. The inflow of water from the South China Sea therefore contributes to the drop in salinity, and from July to October, water with salinities between 33.0 and 33.4 psu enters the Sulu Sea. The increase in salinity from November to April coincides with the maximum inflow of highly saline water from the Pacific.

In the Sulawesi Sea, Wyrtki (1961) noted that the phase of the annual variation of salinity is considerably displaced when compared to the Sulu Sea, but the amplitude is about the same. The salinity maximum occurs in September, and minimum in January. The Sulawesi Sea receives Pacific Ocean waters carried by the Mindanao Current throughout the year, causing slightly higher salinities in its eastern boundaries. However, during the northeast monsoon months, water masses from the Sulu Sea are transported into the Sulawesi Sea causing a salinity decline from October to January. It is evident that the salinity distribution in the region is dictated by the strength of the Mindanao Current and the waters of Sulu Sea particularly during the northeast monsoon months. The salinity variation over the months is also explained by the considerable rainfall that exceeds evaporation over Sulawesi. This causes a continuous decrease in salinity of the passing water masses. The homogeneous layer is normally less than 50 m and the salinity below it increases rapidly to more than 34.5 psu.

Storm Surges

The ecoregion rarely experiences storm surges. Historical records from the Philippine Atmospheric, Geophysical and Astronomical Services Administration (PAGASA) reveal that surge-generating tropical cyclones in most of the marine area covering Sulu and Sulawesi Seas are very rare. Very few cases have been documented (e.g. Surigao del Sur) east of the Philippine waters outside the ecoregion.

The absence of storm surges in the area is not only attributed to the rare passage of tropical cyclones in the low latitudes, but also due to the sharp increase in water depths off coastal areas, and the complex coastal configuration of the region which effectively shelters many coastal areas from typhoon influence. The abrupt bathymetric change and relatively deep waters in the area contributes to the damping of any propagating long gravity waves triggered by typhoons that pass over the northern portion of the ecoregion.

WATER QUALITY

Teresita Perez and Flordeliz Guarin

The SSME covers a vast track of terrestrial, aquatic and marine ecosystems, all linked together by flowing bodies of water. Since water, along with all that flows with it, eventually ends up in the ocean, processes occurring upland dictates the outcome of the marine environment.

Riparian Ecosystems

The continuity of the upland to the coast is provided by the river systems. Rivers serve as the major transporter of nutrients from the upland areas to the estuaries and coastal waters. The quantity of freshwater influences the salinity in estuaries and the nearshore areas. Thus, changes in the quality and volume of freshwater determine the quality of the estuaries and has profound effects on the composition of the biological community downstream. Primary production in coastal waters are influenced by inputs from the land and from the discharge of the rivers.

The quality of river water is determined by the land uses upstream of the river and the riverbanks. Land uses within SSME include agriculture; aquaculture; domestic use such as washing, cleaning, and fishing; and, in some parts, industrial uses such as discharge of effluents and as cooling water of industrial facilities. Some of the major rivers have been tapped for electricity generation either as dammed or running rivers.

RIVER BASINS

The Bicol River Basin is the only major river basin of the region with a total land area of 17,600 km^2. It is located in the southern part of Luzon with main topographic features such as the Eastern Bicol Cordillera in the northeast, the Ragay Hills in the southwest and the Bicol Plain in the central region. Its total catchment area is equivalent to about 21.4% of the total area of the region.

- Ragay Gulf (between the Bicol and Bondoc Peninsula, provinces of Quezon and Camarines Sur, Southeastern Luzon)
  A protected gulf area with an estuary in the northern part created by drainage from the mountains of the Northern Bicol Region (Mt. Labo). This coast is largely intact mangrove within intertidal mudflats, particularly in protected bays such as Peris Bay. Some areas have been converted to aquaculture ponds, and there are some coral reefs offshore. The gulf is saline with some dilution from the three main river sources to the north.

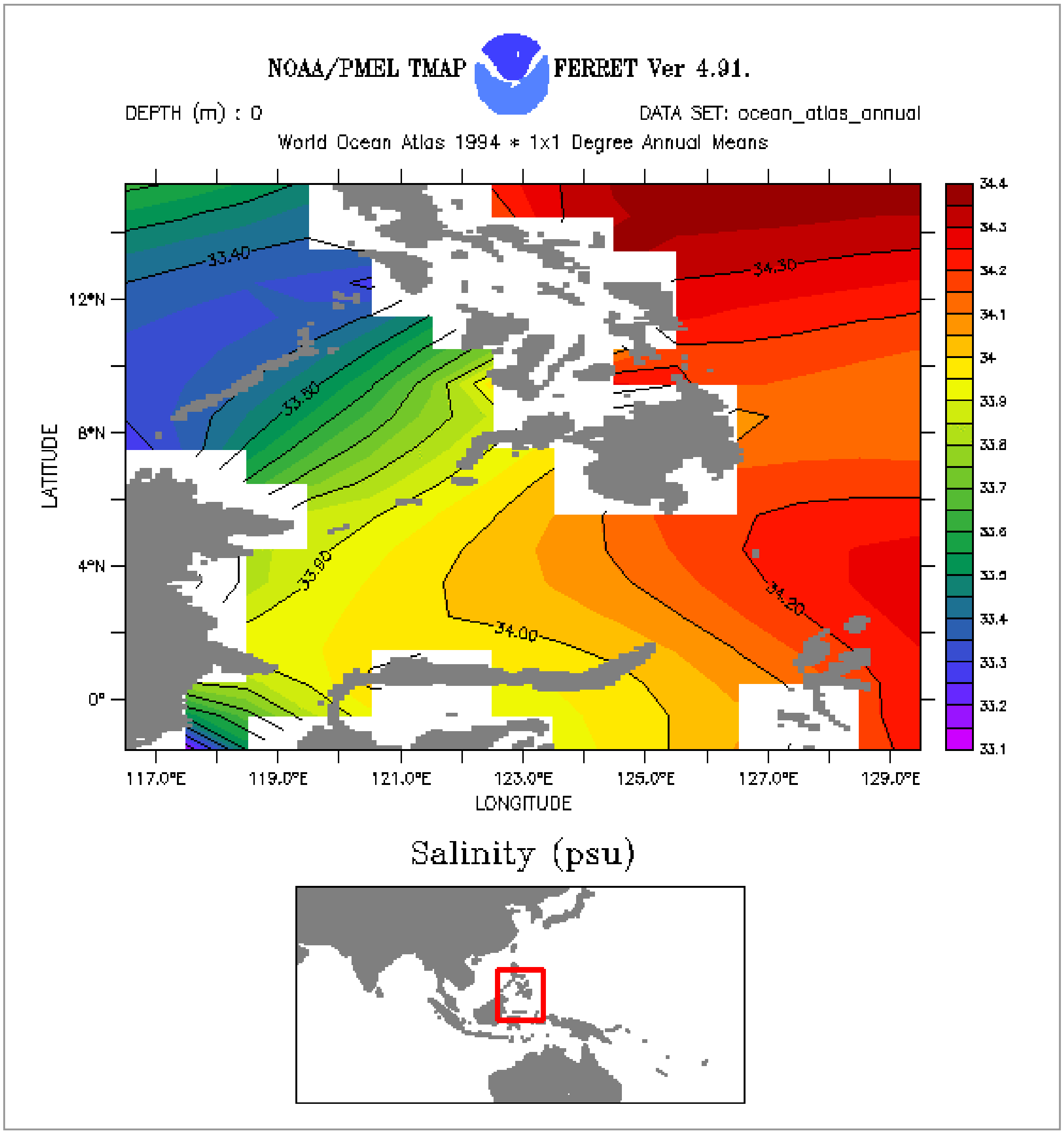


Figure 2.17 Mean annual salinity at SSME (NOAA/PMEL)

- Natunawan Cove (southeast of Tabaco, north of Albay Gulf, Albay Province, Southeastern Luzon)
  A narrow oblong cove with intertidal mudflats and mangrove swamps in its upper reaches. The cove receives freshwater input from several rivers and streams, and has an average depth of only 1 -2 m. The substrate is muddy in the inner part of the cove, and increasingly sandy towards the mouth.

The Mindoro Basin

- Naujan Lake (northeast of Mindoro Island, Oriental Mindoro)
  A large freshwater lake extending for about 14 km from north to south and seven km from east to west. The lake is fed by local run-off and there are no major effluents; the outlet is near the north end through the Lumangbayan River.

The Eastern Visayas Basins

- Catubig River and estuary (Northern Samar)
  The Catubig River is found in the highlands of northern Samar to the estuarine mangroves and intertidal mudflats at its mouth near the town of Laoang on the north coast of the island. The valley remains very much in its natural state, especially in the upper part of the watershed.

- Lake Danao (Imelda, northeast of Ormoc City, Leyte)
  This is a small fresh water lake with associated marshes on Mt. Danao in the highlands of North-central Leyte. The lake is fed by local run-off and is included in the Lake Danao National Park.

- Leyte Sab-a Basin (northeastern plains of Leyte)
  A vast area of marshy plains with numerous small lakes and ponds, peat bogs characteristic of "binag" marshes and rice paddies. The water supply comes from a number of springs, small rivers, aquifers at the edge of the basin and local rainfall. A large number of waterways traverse the basin, most of these draining east into the Leyte Gulf.

- Lake Bito (East-central Leyte)
  A small freshwater lake with associated marshes in low hills in East-central Leyte. The lake is fed by several small streams and local run-off.

- Layog and Higasaan Rivers (Abuyog, Leyte)
  The Layog River and its tributary, the Higasaan River, springs from about 1,000 m in elevation at the hills of Southern Leyte to the Layog Estuary in Leyte Gulf south of Abuyog.

- Hinunangan Rice Paddies (southeastern coast of Leyte)
  A large area of rice paddies on the coastal plain of Southeastern Leyte, surrounded by extensive coconut plantations. There are deforested mountains to the west and southwest, including Mt. Cabalian. The Das-ay River system flows through the paddy areas.

The Cebu River Basin comprises the central portion of the island including the isalnds of Mactan, Camotes and Bantayan. It is bounded on the north by the Masbate River Basin, on the west by the Negros Occidental and Negros Oriental River Basins, on the southeast by Siquijor Basin and on the east by the Bohol and Leyte Basins. The rivers of the Cebu Basin are relatively short and few but consist of numerous streams and brooks that dry up often during the summer months.

- Lake Danao (northern part of Pacijan, Camotes Island, Cebu)
  A fresh water lake about 5 km long with no definite outlet and the largest fresh water lake in Cebu. Most of the original vegetation has disappeared and even the small islet in the lake has been planted with coconut. The lake is fed with local run-off.

Bohol Basin is generally hilly and rolling. Rolling hills and broad open valleys are concentrated in the northeast and the central parts of the basin. Its level areas comprise about 35 percent while the southern half has comparatively rough terrain broken by deep gullies. Inabanga River is considered the longest, originating from Mt. Sadungan. It traverses northeasterly and is joined by Malitbog, Wahig and Isomas Rivers as it drains towards Cebu Strait. Loboc River is considered the principal drainage of the southern portion of the basin which traverses southward and is joined by Cantimoc, Sampalago and Labayog Rivers draining to the Bohol Sea.

- Cogtong Bay (east coast of Bohol)
  An estuarine system of three small rivers, the Cabidian, Matulid and Sagumay, with extensive mangrove swamps and some areas of fish ponds; and the adjacent small sea bay (Cogtong bay), with extensive intertidal mudflats, several mangrove covered islands and offshore coral reefs. The rivers arise from the hill ranges of Southern Bohol. Cabidian River enters the bay in the north and forms the boundary between the two municipalities; Matulid River lies in the middle, and Sagumay River, the smallest of the three, enters the bay in the south near Candijay.

- Lapinin Island and Cabulao Bay (northeastern coast of Bohol)
  There are mangrove swamps and intertidal mudflats around the offshore island (Lapinin), two nearby islets (Lapipin Chico and Banoon), the adjacent main coast, and the associated shallow sea bay (Cabulao). There are some areas of fish ponds on the mainland coast, and offshore coral reefs.

- Trinidad and Quinobatan Mangroves (north coast of Bohol)
  This is the estuarine system of the Ipil River, with mangrove swamps along the lower reaches of the river and associated creeks, and extensive intertidal mudflats at the mouth of the estuary.

- Jetafe Mangroves and Mahanay Island (north of Bohol)
  A large area of coastal mangrove swamps and intertidal mudflats on north coast of Bohol east of the Jetalfe Region to the Tulang point area.

The Bago Binalbagan basins are among the major basins in the Nergos Island. It consists of the Bago and Binalbagan Basin proper and independent watersheds at the northwest to northeastern portion of the island. Bago has about 798 km^2 while Binalbagan has 772 km^2 and the rest covers 2,956 km^2. Most of the rivers except Binalbagan such as Himocaan, Grandse, Sicaba, Malogo, and Imbang including the northern upstream of Bago River originate from Mt. Mandalagan. Bago River drains into the Guimaras Strait while Binalbagan drains towards the Panay Gulf.

The Negros Oriental Basins lie on the southeastern portion of the Negros Island with a total area of 5,694 km^2.

- Lake Balanan (southern tip of Negros Oriental)
  This is a freshwater lake in the forested mountains of Southern Negros with a shape resembling a "figure eight", the narrowest point between the two main portions of the lake being only 90 m wide. The lake is surrounded by mountain ranges, and is fed by three streams, two of which rise on Lamaraw Mountain and the third on Anupugan Mountain.

- Bais Bay (Negros Oriental)
  This is located on the eastern side of Negros Island of the Visayas Region, with an area of 54 km^2. The bay is divided into two: North Bais Bay where Panambalon River, Alangilanan and Luato Rivers drain and South Bais Bay where Panamangan River drains. The two bays each have a pier and a fishing port. The coastline is fringed with mangroves that constitute about 4.6% of the total bay area.

- Pagatban River and estuary (southwest coast of Negros Oriental)
  The reaches of Patbagan River, its estuary and the adjacent shallow, semi-circular bay is bounded by a sandy beach extending from the river mouth to Candumao point to the west. There are extensive intertidal mudflats in the estuary and bay, belts of mangrove swamps 100-200 m wide along the river banks, and rice paddies inland. The estuarine portion of the river extends upstream for about 500 meters.

- Ilog River and estuaries (southwestern coast of Negros Occidental)
  The estuarine and delta systems of the two main distributaries of the Ilog River has extensive intertidal mudflats, mangrove swamps, fishponds and adjacent rice paddies. The two estuaries are about nine km apart and both are prone to frequent floods which brings large volumes of sediment to the area.

- Southwestern Panay (Iloilo and Antique)
  The Sibalom-Guimbal Basin is located in the southwestern part of Panay covering almost the whole province of Antique and the southwestern part of Iloilo. The basin covers an approximate area of 2,800 km^2 composed of two principal basins. The

basin is generally mountainous with a fairly wide plain in Sibalom and a few adequately drained valleys in San Jose forming the San Jose-Sibalom Plains.

The watershed has a total land area of 1,260 km^2 with an annual runoff depth of about 1.847 mm or about 5,172 million cubic meters (mcm). Table 2.7 shows the annual water balance analysis of the Sibalom-Guimbal Basin, with Sibalom Basin having an area of 564 km^2 and Guimbal Basin with an area of 194 km^2. There is an addition of six minor basins and numerous independent watersheds. The drainage-ways of the basins are the Sibalom River which originates from Mt. Tigatay while Guimbal River originates from Mt. Napulac.

Table 2.7 Annual water balance analysis of the Sibalom-Guimbal Basins

Basin name	**Drainage area (km^2)**	**Mean annual rainfall (mm)**	**Mean annual run-off depth (mm)**	**Mean evapo-transpiration (mm)**	**Coefficient of run-off (%)**
Sibalom	564	3,104	1,670 (942)	1,434	54
Guimbal	194	2,734	1,650 (320)	1,084	60
Cairauan	51	3,400	2,134 (109)	1,266	63
Cagaranan	294	3,332	1,858 (546)	1,474	56
Dalanas	119	3,400	2,302 (274)	1,098	68
Ipayo	71	3,300	1,724 (122)	1,576	52
Paliuan	206	3,400	2,046 (421)	1,354	60
Tibiao	41	3,400	2,300 (094)	1,100	68
Aggregate	2,800	3,068	1,847 (5,172)	1,221	60

Source: National Water Resources Council, Framework Plan for the Western Visayas, August 1983.

- <u>Kalibo Wetlands</u> (Aklan)
  This compose the estuarine systems of the Alcan River near Kalibo, and the extensive tidal lagoon and creek system of Batan Bay and Banga Bay to the southeast. Mangrove swamps constitute 80% of the area and there are extensive intertidal mudflats at the mouth of Alcan River in Batan Bay.

The Palawan Basins

- <u>Lake Manguao</u> (Northern Palawan)
  This is a very deep freshwater lake set amongst low hills in Northern Palawan. The lake is fed by several rivers and local run-off, and retains water throughout the dry season.

- <u>Ulugan Bay</u> (Northern Palawan)
  A small sea bay between hilly headlands, with several small islands, offshore coral reefs, and extensive mangrove swamps along the southern and eastern shores. Seven rivers drain into the mangroves: Banaog, Kamanglet, Sia, Buruang, Egdasen, Baheli and Kayulo.

The Northern Mindanao Basins

- Lake Mainit (boundary between Surigao del Norte and Agusan del Norte)
  This is a large freshwater lake on a narrow plain between hill ranges near the northern tip of Mindanao. The lake is fed by fourteen small rivers and streams and one outlet, the Lalinawan River which flows south into Pagusi Lake and the Tubay River and eventually into Butuan Bay.

- Agusan Marsh (Northeastern Mindanao Island, Agusan del Sur)
  This is a vast complex of fresh water marshes and water courses with numerous small shallow lakes and ponds in the upper basin of the Agusan River and its tributaries. Some parts of the marsh have been converted into fishponds and rice paddies. The rivers arise from the hills of Eastern Mindanao and cause extensive flooding in the marshes from November to March. This drains in the northern portion via the Agusan River into the Butuan Bay.

Sulu Archipelago-Southern Zamboanga Peninsula

The Siocon, Quipit, Taguite and Tumaga Basins comprise the four major basins situated at the southern half of the Zamboanga Peninsula although independent watersheds also exist on the islands of Sulu Archipelago. The Siocon Watershed covers an area of 603 km^2, Quipit has 633 km^2, Taguite has 384 km^2 and Tumaga has 228 km^2 and drained by Vitali, Tumaga, Siocon and Quipit Rivers respectively.

Basilan Island has two river basins namely, the Grubun Rver Basin and Gumalarang River Basin drained by Grubuan River and Gumalarang Rivers respectively. The region covers an aggregate area of 9,540 km^2 with a general hilly to mountainous topography, with the plains and hills along the coasts.

The mean annual runoff depth of the region is approximately 1,802 mm or 9,668 mcm.

- Davao Gulf (Davao)
  Davao Gulf is located in the southeastern part of Mindanao bounded by Davao City and three provinces of Davao namely: Davao del Sur, Davao del Norte and Davao Oriental. The gulf is ringed by the high mountain range of Sarangani Province in the west and in the southwest direction by Mt. Apo.

  The total catchment area of the gulf is about 5,132 km^2 derived from the various watershed areas of the three Davao provinces. 33 major rivers and creeks drain into the gulf and among the bigger ones are: Tagum-Libuganon, Davao, Tuganay, Padda-Guihing and Lasang Rivers.

Eastern Zamboanga Region (Zamboanga)

The Sibuguey-Ingin Basins are the major basins located at the eastern portion of Zamboanga, and covers Zamboanga del Sur and a portion of Zamboanga del Norte. This is the smallest basin area in the central portion of the region with a drainage area of 4,414 km^2. The topography is generally hilly to mountainous with few scattered plains dissected by rivers and creeks.

The basin is drained by Sibuguey and Ingin Rivers. Annual runoff is approximately 1,833 mm or 8091 mcm.

Lanao Region

The Agus River Basins with six minor river basins and watersheds has a total drainage area of 4.041 km^2. It is bounded by the Misamis Oriental Basin at the northeast, Pulangi River Basin at the southwest, Iligay Bay at the north and Iliana Bay and Mindanao Allah Basin at the south. The Agus Basin covers an area of 5,686 km^2 whose topography is generally flat to hilly.

The basin includes Lake Lanao with a moderately sloping terrain by the presence of Mt. Iniaoan and Mt. Gurain at the western portion of the lake. It is a natural reservoir situated in the province of Lanao whose elevation is 703 m above sea level. It is fed by five major rivers and about 25 smaller ones. Its only outlet is Agus River that drains into Panguil and Iligan Bays. A series of hydropower stations are provided along the Agus River utilizing the abundant stream flow as well as steep slope.

There is a difference of 673 m elevation from the mouth of Agus River at Lake Lanao to the Maria Cristina Falls, hence this difference contributes to the swift flow of water along the river. With this situation, the river itself became very ideal for the construction of seven major hydroelectric plants.

South Cotabato River Basins

This basin includes Pulangi River Basin on the northwest, Mindanao Allah River on the southwest, Davao Gulf on the northeast and Sulawesi Sea to the south. The topography is level to mountainous while plains are found north of the basin.

The South Cotabato River Basins are drained by Padada, Mal, Buayan, Cinon and Siluay Rivers.

Davao Oriental Basin (Davao)

The Davao Oriental Basin is a narrow stretch on the eastern region of Minadanao composed of Surigao del Sur and Davao Oriental. The topography of the basin is mountainous while the central portion is relatively low.

The basin is composed of 17 sub-basins and watersheds with three major rivers namely: Boyaan, Carac-an and Tago.

Tagum Libuganon Basins

The Tagum Libuganon Basins are composed of four river systems namely: Hijo, Tagum, Matina and Sibulan. Table 2.8 shows the discharge of rivers within this basin.

Table 2.8 Discharge of rivers within the Tagum Libuganon Basins (discharge in cm)

Return period	**Hijo River**	**Tagum River**	**Matina River**	**Sibulan River**
5%	237.30	814.69	58.38	15.21
100 years	82.40	624.06	15.43	11.45
95%	28.61	478.03	4.08	8.61
5%	134.58	691.75	29.89	14.42
50 years	65.69	555.14	10.70	11.35
95%	31.97	445.51	3.83	8.93
5%	73.61	551.68	12.83	13.12
25 years	49.28	467.99	6.50	11.11
95%	32.99	396.99	3.29	9.41
5%	54.31	460.10	7.07	11.95
10 years	40.24	404.01	4.39	10.78
95%	29.81	354.75	2.72	9.72
5%	44.01	378.00	4.12	10.83
5 years	33.33	340.10	2.89	10.23
95%	25.24	306.00	2.02	9.66
5%	30.95	272.88	2.01	9.74
2 years	26.80	248.97	1.53	8.67
95%	23.31	227.14	1.16	7.72
Scale parameter, ALPHA	0.36	0.05	0.41	0.24
Characteristic drought, BETA	0.55	57.87	2.88	1.49
Lower limit, GAMMA	3.19	2.80	-0.63	1.72

Source: National Water Resources Council, Framework Plan for the Tagum Libuganon Basins, December 1983

Very little research and monitoring on the water quality of these rivers have been done. Documentation of water quality is generally done in relation to implementation of development projects. For instance, the water quality of the Cotabato River (Rio Grande de Mindanao) was determined in 1990 as part of the Environmental Impact I Assessment for the Mt. Apo Geothermal Power Plant by the Philippine National Oil Company (PNOC), while the water quality testing for Agus and Pulagui Rivers were conducted as part of the Environmental Impact Assessment for these rivers by the National Power Corporation (NAPOCOR). Generally, the water quality of these rivers meet Class C standards (best used for fishery, industry, and recreation such as boating; i.e., Davao Gulf and Carigara Bay data in Tables 2.9 and 2.10, respectively) but not for drinking purposes.

Table 2.9 Summary of the water quality data from rivers associated with Davao Gulf

Parameters	**Range**	**Mean**	**DENR Standards**
pH	7.16 - 9.45	3.25	Range: 6.5-8.5 for Class C
Temperature (^{o}C)	26.00 - 34.50	30.51	3 deg. maximum rise for Class C
Dissolved Oxygen (mg/L)	1.56 - 6.60	5.14	5.0 (min.) for Class C
Salinity (ppt)	0.01 - 22.50	4.78	
Turbidity (NTU)	155.88 - 17,058	3,733.00	
Suspended Solids (mg/L)	49.00 - 3,100	718.95	Not more than 30 mg/L increase
Depth (m)	0.35 - 4.00	1.60	

Table 2.10 Summary of the water quality data from rivers associated with Carigara Bay

Parameters	**Range**	**DENR Standards**
pH	8.30 - 8.75	6.5 - 8.5 for Class C
Temperature (^{o}C)	26.50 - 30.30	3 deg max. rise for Class C
Dissolved Oxygen (mg/L)	5.10 - 6.60	5.0 min for Class C
Salinity (ppt)	29.00 - 30.30	
Alkalinity (meq/L)	62.30 - 129.20	
Biological Oxygen Demand (mg/L)	0.30 - 1.70	7(10)

THREATS

Because of the various purposes that terrestrial environments serve, its accompanying riverine system is prone to numerous threats, most of which are anthropogenic in nature.

- Sedimentation

    Based on geologic records the Sulu-Sulawesi has a long history of sedimentation. Major sources of sediment during the geological times are Borneo, northern part of Sulawesi and the various islands of the Philippine Arc (Geology section of this report).

    The present day sedimentation is mainly due to massive forest denudation in the uplands. Suspended materials are carried by rivers into the nearshore waters. The distance traveled by sediments depend on size, as these are carried off by currents. The smaller sized ones can be transported several kilometers offshore while the coarser grains are deposited along the river and into the estuaries and the nearshore areas.

- Contamination from Domestic Wastes

    The rivers receive contamination from household wastes, which is similarly being experienced by coastal waters. Households located along the rivers utilize these bodies of water for household purposes such as washing clothes, bathing, and for sewage and domestic waste disposal. Coastal communities, in turn, dispose of their domestic wastes directly into the coastal waters. Majority of the household do not have sanitary toilets, evidenced by the presence of raw sewage in the waters. Thus, a large bulk of wastes obviously come from houses along the river banks.

- Agricultural effluents

    Fertilizers and pesticides come from nonpoint sources with the river serving as one of the transport route.

- Major development projects

    The construction of large dams for electricity generation or water and irrigation supply, change the salinity regime of the estuaries. The reduction in the volume of freshwater that flows in the estuaries result in the changes in the composition of the biological communities. Species that are tolerant of high salinity will thrive under such conditions replacing those that have low salinity tolerance.

    Examples of dam construction include Agus River Projects and Pulanga River serving as hydroelectric generators.

Estuarine and Associated Ecosystems

ESTUARIES

Estuaries are dynamic systems characterized by fluctuating salinity regime. The ecosystems in the estuaries are transitory due to salinity flux in this area which is mainly determined by the freshwater inflow from the uplands that mixes with seawater. The volume and seasonality of the freshwater inputs significantly influence the biological communities found within the estuaries.

Water quality in some of the major rivers within the ecoregion can still be described as good except for some selected parameters. The mouth of the Rio Grande de Mindanao shows high total suspended solids ranging from 1,200 to 2,800 ppm . This is indicative of the high rate of erosion in the upper reaches of the river and along the banks of its tributaries. At the mouth of Iligan Bay, conductivity values range from 14,000 to 44,000 µmhos/cm and total solids range from 160 to 56,4000 mg/l (Table 2.11).

Commercial activities occur in the estuaries. Many are utilized as transportation routes by the local residents as an alternative to land travel. Aquaculture activities are carried out in the mouth of rivers such as oyster and mussel farming due to the brackish character of the water that is suitable for raising these bivalves.

Ecologically, juveniles of selected species of finfish and shellfish can be found with the planktonic communities.

Table 2.11 Water quality analyses in Iligan Bay

Parametrs	**Units**	**DENR Standards**			
		Class SC	**1M**	**2M**	**4M**
Turbidity	NTU		2.00	20.00	5.50
pH		6.5 to 8.5	7.18	7.50	7.11
Temperature	^{o}C rise	3	21.30	22.00	21.60
Salinity	ppt	-	18.00	32.00	32.00
Conductivity	µmhos/cm		28,000.00	44,000.00	48,000.00
DO	mg/ (min)L	70	10.30	8.00	6.00
TSS	mg/L	Not more than 30mg/l increase	310.00	480.00	280.00
TS	mg/L	-	27,300.00	40,000.00	56,400.00
Mg	mg/L	-	680.00	1,100.00	1,100.00
Ca	mg/L	-	300.00	420.00	490.00
NO3+	mg/L	-	ND	ND	ND
Silica	mg/L	-	20.00	5.00	2.00

Suspended solids	mg/L	-	610.00	1900.00	2400.00
Total hardness	mg/L	-	3550.00	5580.00	5750.00

(Sampling Date: March 1989)

Station Location

1M - Near beach resort at Timuga (depth + 1.5 m)
2M - Near MCCI wharf (depth = 3.0 m)
4M - Near NSC pier (depth = 6.5 m)

Legend: the symbol (-) means no DENR standard has been set

ASSOCIATED ECOSYSTEMS

Marshlands and swamps serve many ecological functions. They provide habitats to many marine invertebrates; serve as resting, nesting and feeding places for migratory and resident marine birds; and provide a good source of food and livelihood for people residing along these marshlands.

Major marshlands in the SSME are the Liguasan and Agusan Marshes and the delta of prominent bays and gulfs (e.g. Davao Gulf). Agusan Marsh spans almost 90,000 hectares of freshwater marshes and watercourses with a maximum depth of 4 m. Its upper basin, the Agusan River, has shallow lakes and ponds. Some portions of the marsh have been converted to rice paddies and fish ponds.

Liguasan Marsh, which is the delta of Rio Grande de Mindanao, serves as feeding grounds for several species of marine birds and as stopovers for migratory birds. Wintering birds restock on freshwater and feed upon the fish and invertebrates found within. Liguasan Marsh also serves as a repository of organically rich topsoil coming from the nutrient rich watershed of Cotabato Province.

THREATS

The main sources of threats to the estuaries and marshlands are development projects such as the increasing urbanization of provinces. Construction of major highways, farm to market roads, energy and power projects, and commercial buildings are being planned and carried out in many rural areas as part of the government's program to spur economic development and also to decongest the urban centers.

Coastal and Marine Ecosystems

Coastal and marine ecosystems harbor diverse species of marine fish and mammals providing coastal dwellers with a primary source of livelihood in fishing. In the Philippines and in the archipelagos of the SSME, these waters sustain the nations' primary source of protein.

As such, the significance of these ecosystems should not be undermined. Water quality characteristics of selected bays and gulfs in the ecoregion are presented in Tables 2.11-2.15. The standards of maximum permissible levels of the water quality parameters in determining the classification of a coastal water body are defined by the regulatory agency, the Department of Environment and Natural Resources (DENR), through various department administrative orders.

DENR standards for Class SC category have been applied to all the bays since Class SC is defined as bodies of water whose best usage are for the following: Recreational Water Class II (for boating, etc); Fishery Water Class II (Commercial and sustenance fishing); Marsh and/or mangrove areas declared as fish and wildlife sanctuaries.

Table 2.12 Summary of the general water quality parameters in Davao Gulf

Parameter	**Range**	**DENR Standards for Class SC**
PH	6.36 - 8.79	Range: 6.0-8.5 for
Temperature (ºC)	26.80 - 32.00	3 degrees maximum rise
DO (mg/L)	4.09 - 7.24	5.0 (min)
Salinity (ppt)	14.90 - 38.00	No standard has been set/defined
Turbidity (NTU)	3.24 - 27,058.00	No standard has been set/defined
Suspended solids (mg/L)	13.00 - 5,193.00	Not more than 30 mg/l increase
Depth (m)	1.50 - 68.00	

THREATS

Contamination of the coastal waters come from point and nonpoint sources. Point sources are normally contributed by the rivers which carry pollutants from the upstream section. Industrial facilities located in the uplands which discharge their contaminated effluents into the rivers constitute the major sources of pollution. In addition, industries normally find the coastal areas ideal sites for their facilities since the coastal waters provide an unlimited source of coolants and at the same time serve as recipient of thermally heated cooling water. Mining companies either directly discharge their tailings into the coastal waters or use a nearby freshwater as recipient of their wastes. Heavy metal contamination and silt have been traced to mining companies such as Marcopper in Marinduque, and Atlas Mining in Toledo City. Farmlands contribute fertilizers and pesticides into the rivers while contaminants from agricultural lands located along the coasts find their way into the nearshore areas through runoffs during heavy rains or periods of continuous rains. An example is the extensive banana plantation in Davao which in early 2000, resulted in fish kills along Davao Gulf. In the past decade, the fish and prawn ponds along the coasts in General Santos City and nearby Sarangani Province were also suspected of contributing to the fish kill in rivers.

Table 2.13 Concentration of trace elements in the waters of Davao Gulf

		Concentration (ppm)					
		Cadmium	**Copper**	**Iron**	**Lead**	**Manganese**	**Mercury**
DENR Standard	**Class C**	0.050			0.050		0.002
	Class SC	0.010			0.050		0.002
Station							
1. Sasa (wharf)		BDC					
2. Tibungko (coastal water)		BDC	0.008	0.026	BDC	0.002	BDC
3. Kaputian (coastal water)		BDC	0.006	0.004	BDC	0.001	BDC

NOTE: BDC = Below detectable concentration

Table 2.14 General water quality parameters in Carigara Bay (FSP, 1994)

Parameter	**Range**	**DENR Standards for Class SC**
pH	8.20 - 8.68	6.0 - 8.5
Temperature (ºC)	25.80 - 30.10	3 degrees maximum rise
DO (mg/L)	5.10 - 6.60	5.0 (min)
Salinity (ppt)	34.00 - 35.00	No standard has been set/defined
Alkalinity (meq/L)	100.30 - 117.60	No standard has been set/defined
BOD (mg/L)	No data	7(10)

Table 2.15 General water quality parameters in Panguil Bay (FSP, undated b)

Parameter	Range	DENR Standards for Class SC
pH	7.19 - 8.41	6.0 - 8.5
Temperature (ºC)		3 degrees maximum rise
DO (mg/L)	5.63 - 8.75	5.0 (min)

Among the most pressing threats to coastal and marine ecosystems are:

- Oil pollution

  There are three major sources of oil pollutants in the Philippines: refineries and oil depots; oil exploration and production; and oil tankers, barges, and cargo vessels.

  Three major companies are engaged in the refining and distribution of oil products in the Philippines namely: Caltex (Philippines) Inc., Pilipinas Shell Petroleum Corporation, and Petron. Each oil company has several depots located in various parts of the country. The refineries of the three companies are located in Batangas Bay and it is estimated that on the average 200 vessels enter the bay every month of which about 50 are oil tankers. The Shell refinery has the capacity to receive tankers of up to 320,000 dwt. Offshore oil exploration is ongoing for potential new sources of oil. These offshore activities are located northwest of Palawan.

  Tankers and barges carrying imported oil to the Philippines enter the different bays in the country. Potential sources of oil pollution include cases of grounding, collision and sinking where large quantities of oil may be dumped into the sea. Oily discharges of vessels also contribute to the oil in coastal waters.

  Since 1975, Naval Operations Center for Oil Pollution (NOCOP) has recorded oil spills of more than 400 liters in Philippine waters. Forty-seven of the total number represent spills between 50 and 5000 barrels (bbls) and only 6% from more than 6000 bbls. Seventy one percent of the total number of spills was caused by collision, sinking and grounding while 29% occurred during cargo handling operations.

  A recent spill from a tanker in April 2000 occurred in Bolinao, Lingayen Gulf spilling many barrels of oil into a shallow coral reef area. Other more common spills occur in Manila due to its busy transportation route of tanker and passenger ships.

  Within the SSME, passenger and cargo vessels use the Sulu-Sulawesi as a transportation route. Occasional major spills have occurred within the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas.

Although of a lesser magnitude, chronic oil contamination from bilge waters of motorized boats is evident in many coastal waters. By virtue of its habitual occurrence, these contaminations pose grave threats as they accumulate.

- <u>Industrial Effluents</u>

  Discharges coming from industrial facilities are the documented major contributors of water contamination either due to the volume of the discharge or the level of contaminants in the effluent. The contaminants range from inorganic nutrients to toxic heavy metals. One example is the electric power plants situated along the coasts. They discharge heated effluents in addition to the heavy metals which can cause fish kills, especially during the summer months.

  A case in point is the geothermal plant in Tiwi, Albay along Lagonoy Gulf. Heated geothermal effluents containing heavy metals have historically been discharged into Lagonoy Gulf which eventually deposited in the marine sediments. The finer silt particulates were carried further offshore and incorporated into the food chain.

  Concentrations of industrial facilities such as the fish canneries in General Santos City cause odor and effluent discharges in nearby coastal waters. High BOD (biochemical oxygen demand) due to insufficient wastewater treatment has caused contamination of nearly all adjacent waters of coastal communities.

- <u>Agricultural runoff</u>

  Large areas along the SSME are utilized for agricultural purposes. As such, fertilizers and pesticides constitute the principal contaminants from agricultural runoff. These cause eutrophication of nearshore areas and can trigger algal blooms when water movement is low.

  The fish kill in Davao in 1999, was attributed to pesticide runoff from an agricultural plantation. Some pesticides may persist for long periods of time and may ultimately be incorporated into the food chain.

- <u>Solid Wastes</u>

  Associated with the increase in population in the coastal municipalities, solid and domestic wastes have likewise increased. Majority of the households in coastal municipalities do not have adequate toilet facilities nor do they practice proper waste management. Both solid and raw human wastes are observed floating in water, with some ending up in beaches while some are found submerged within the substrate. The movement of wastes in the water depend on the prevailing wind velocity which drives the surface current.

  Death of some marine organisms are caused by floating plastics. Marine turtles, along with some fish and mammals, are victims where they either engulf the plastics or are asphyxiated by these non-biodegrable materials.

LEGISLATION

In the hope of eradicating or at least minimizing these threats the Department of Environment and Natural Resources (DENR) issues regulations through various Department Administrative Orders (DAO). Relevant to the coastal and marine waters are DAO 34 and 35.

DAO 34 Series of 1990 provides the criteria for coastal and marine waters determined by the present quality and usage. Coastal and marine waters are classified from Class SA to Class SD. Class SA, the most stringent, has uses for shellfish production for commercial volume, tourist zones and national marine and coral reef parks and reserves; and Class SD, the least stringent, are waters utilized for industrial supply.

DAO 35 is the Revised Effluent Standards of 1990 and provides for the effluents generated by industries. New industries have to comply with more stringent rules than existing or operating facilities. It defines the limits and maximum permissible levels of many parameters that could potentially contaminate coastal waters through the operations of industrial facilities.

The Pollution Control Decree of 1976 (Presidential Decree No. 984) has been revised under the title "Revised Industrial and Commercial Wastewater Permitting Rules and Regulations of 1999 amending the Permit Regulations of 1978." It requires industrial facilities to secure the wastewater discharge permit and the payment of corresponding fees associated with effluent discharge volume.

Effects on Primary Production

Collectively, the state of freshwater and marine ecosystems will dictate the productivity of the SSME. Primary production in the ecoregion largely depends on the supply of nutrients and on the availability of photosynthetically active radiation (PAR) as temperature is not a very crucial factor in low latitudes. Observations from the expeditions presented in Wyrtki (1961) show that the Sulawesi basin has a mean of about 0.37 g carbon per square meter per day ($gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$), slightly lower than that for the Sulu Sea at 0.43 $gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$. These observations were shown to correlate well with the abundance of nutrients in the region. More recent values obtained by San Diego-McGlone *et al.* (1999a and b), yielded values of $0.53 gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$ for the Sulu Sea and $0.40 gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$ for the South China Sea. The authors attribute the higher productivity in the Sulu Sea to the nutrients upwelled by shoaling internal waves generated along the channel off the southern coast of Mindoro, a phenomenon investigated by Liu *et al.* (1985).

The different biological communities generate a wide range of primary production as follows (values converted from estimates made by Whittaker, 1975):

Coral reefs	:	4.93 to 12 $gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$
Estuaries	:	0.55 to 11 $gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$
Continental shelf waters	:	0.27 to 1.64 $gCm^{-2}day^{-1}$

Comparing the above worldwide values of continental shelf waters with those obtained from both Sulu and Sulawesi Seas, the primary production in the SSME fall in the lower range.

Chapter III

The Watersheds and their Linkages to the Ecoregion

Daniel A. Lagunzad

THE WATERSHED DEFINED

A watershed *is a discrete geographical area of land from which rainwater can drain as surface runoff, via a specific stream or river system to a common outlet point which may be a dam, irrigation system or municipal/urban water supply off take point, or where the stream/river discharges into a larger river lake or sea* (FMB-DENR).

Watersheds consist of intricately interacting biotic and abiotic components and oftentimes link several ecosystems. Varying in size and coverage, watersheds often extend over boundaries of one or more political administrative units.

The Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion has adopted the watershed approach. Its interest stems from the recognition that river systems and their tributaries empty into the coastal waters and serve as the primary agents in transporting pollutants. This results in the degradation of the marine environment, changing the quality of nearshore waters and impacting the organisms living within. Inputs from the major rivers affect the salinity gradient in nearshore areas. Thus, during periods of floods excessive soil erosion occurs and high sediment and silt load are brought down. The quality of coastal waters vary in accordance with the changes in the upper reaches of the streams and the watershed, and in turn, the organisms in the nearshore areas respond to these changes.

From the watersheds come our main source of water (for drinking, for domestic use, and for industrial and agricultural purposes) disregarding direct utilization of rainwater which is done in smaller islands as in Cagayancillo. Major rivers have been tapped for electrical power generation.

LOCATION, OCCURRENCE AND DISTRIBUTION

The SSME is characterized by the presence of land masses surrounded by large bodies of water. The reciprocal influences between these two major components (the terrestrial and aquatic environments) generate profound impacts on each other. In an attempt to produce a conservation management plan and development program for the ecoregion, it is essential to incorporate an inventory and assessment of the watersheds associated with the site. Any management plan is decidedly dependent on a thorough evaluation of the available biophysical and socio-economic information.

The watershed reserves having major impacts on the ecoregion are shown in Figure 3.1. These islands include the following:

- <u>Watersheds of large islands facing the marine waters around Sulu Sea</u>
    - Luzon
        - Southern Batangas
        - Southern Lucena
        - Western Bicol
    - Visayas
        - Western Samar
        - Western Leyte
    - Mindanao
        - Surigao
        - Zamboanga
        - Cotabato
        - Davao
        - Basilan
        - Sulu Archipelago

- <u>Islands within the confines of Sulu Sea (whole islands as watersheds)</u>
    - Mindoro
    - Marinduque
    - Burias Island
    - Romblon Group of Islands (Tablas, Romblon, Sibuyan)
    - Masbate
    - Negros
    - Panay Island
    - Cebu
    - Bohol
    - Siquijor

Of the 30 million hectares of the Philippine total land area, about 44 % or 13.29 million hectares is timberland and forest reserves (Baconguis *et al.*, 1990). However, only about 6.5 million hectares of these are intact. An estimate of less than a million hectares is classified as primary or virgin forests. Practically 70% of the country is located within watersheds. Jurisdiction over Philippine watersheds falls primarily under the DENR. Substantial portions are under disposition of NIA (National Irrigation Authority), NAPOCOR and PNOC.

As of 1997, the Philippines has 121 watershed forest reserves, distributed among 15 regions and covering an expanse of 1.38 million ha (Baconguis *et al.*, 1990). It is from these that headwaters of rivers feed the dams, and irrigation systems originate. From the biodiversity perspective, 10 of the 15 Biogeographic Zones of the Philippines (Figure 3.2) namely: Southern Luzon, Mindoro, Western Visayas, Calamian, Palawan, Sulu, Zamboanga, and Mindanao, are represented in the SSME.

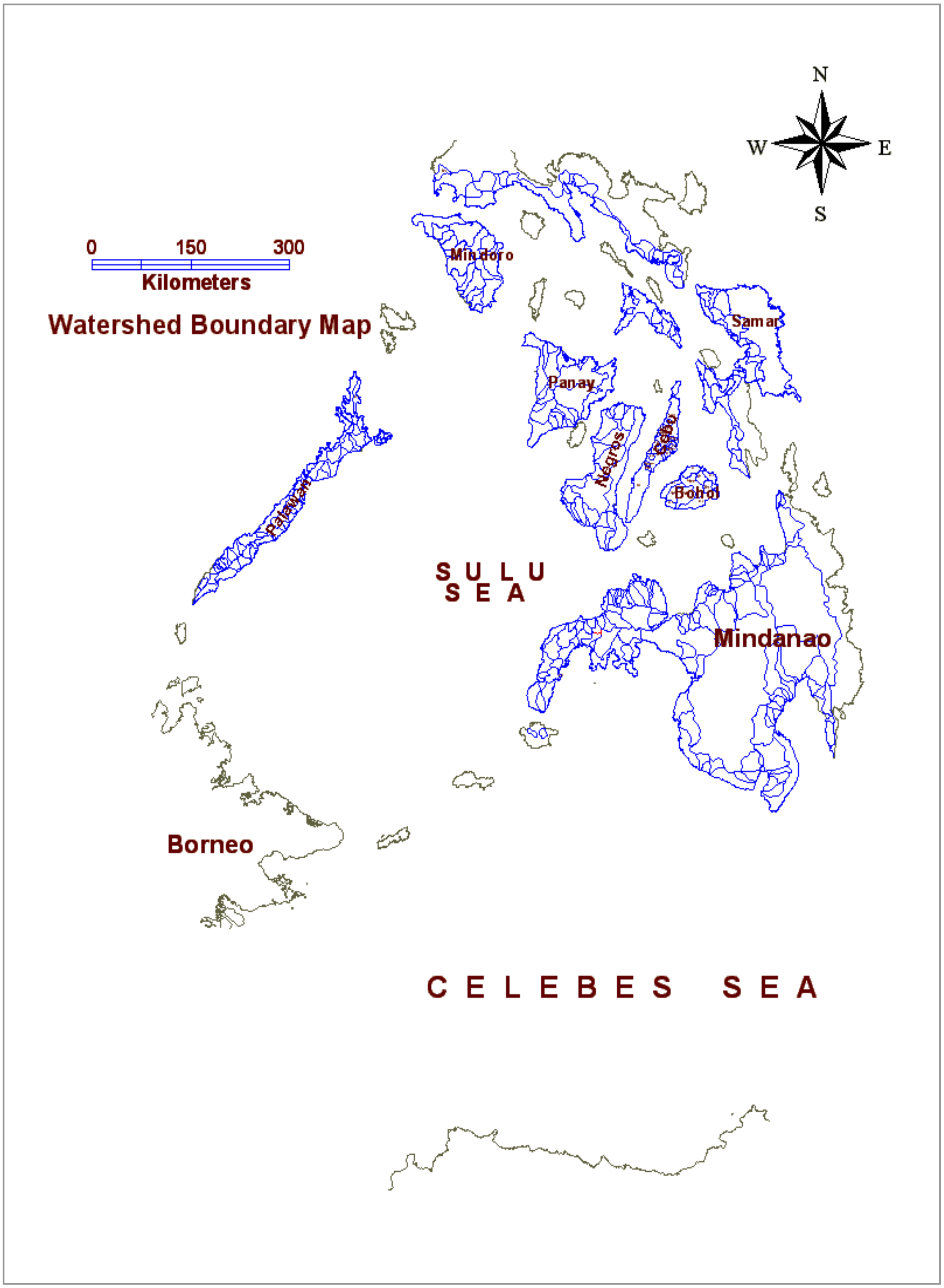


Figure 3.1 Watersheds within the Philippine portion of the SSME

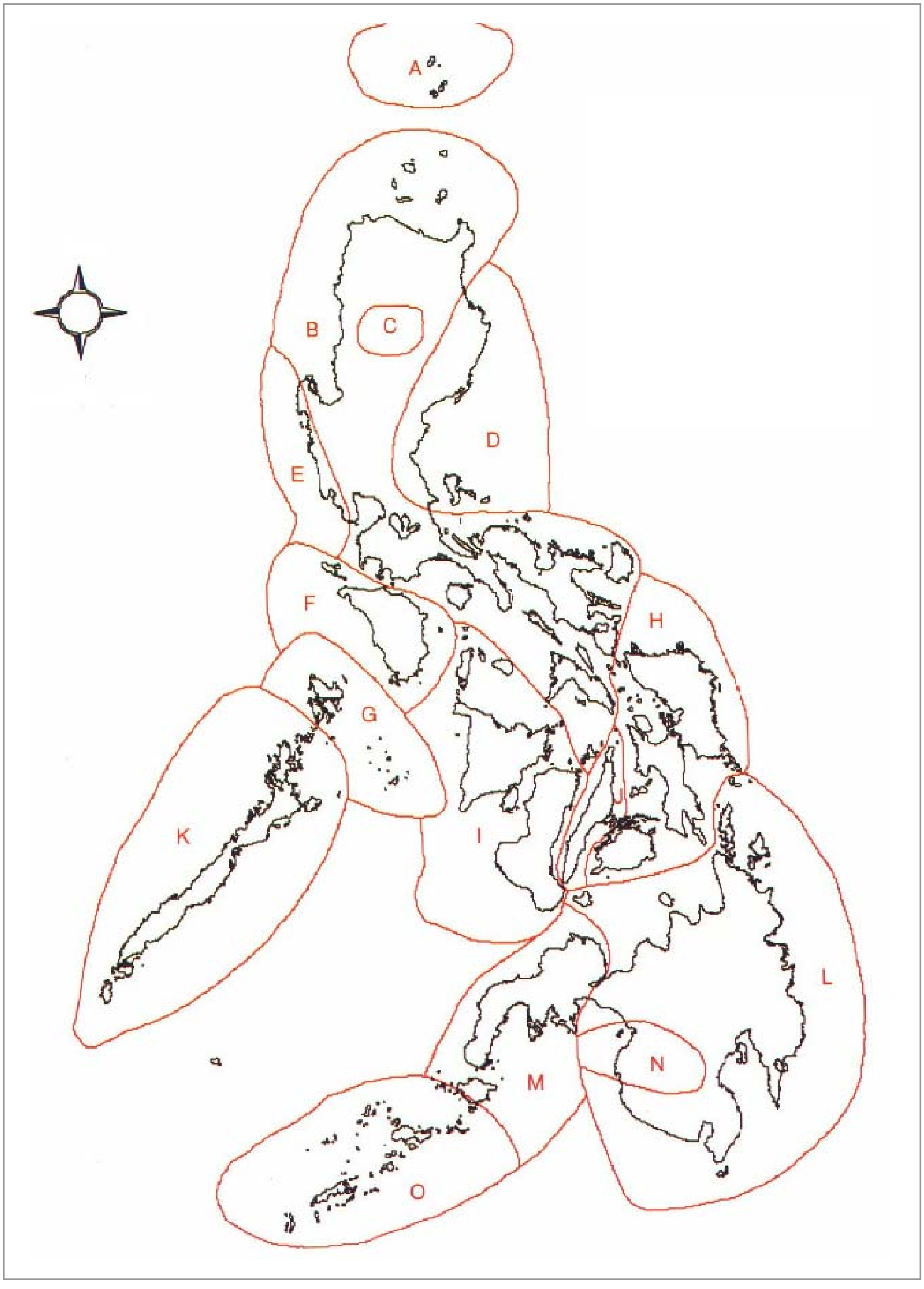


Figure 3.2 Biogeographic zones of the Philippines (DENR, 1997)

Biodiversity-rich centers are distributed throughout these biogeographic zones. Oftentimes, these sites are, themselves, part of the Watershed Forest Reserve (WFR) system. The Forest Development Center's latest estimate for the number of WFRs and corresponding hectarage on a per region basis indicates that Regions 3, 6 and ARMM have the highest total hectarage of watershed forests reserves. In terms of forest cover however, Regions 3, 4 and 13 registered the highest values. Sixty-one (61) of the proclaimed 124 WFR are within SSME. This corresponds to 49.2% of the total number with an aggregate area of 784,061.6 ha (or 56.7% of the total WFR area). It is thus clear that a major proportion of the watershed forest reserve system of the country (number and hectarage) may have to be characterized in order to achieve a more ecologically sound conservation strategy of the SSME

THREATS TO WATERSHED AREAS

Watersheds are important life support systems. They play a very vital role in sustaining a nation. It is thus, of utmost importance to maintain the integrity of the watersheds. However, the degradation of our watershed reserves poses an alarming threat.

The most important cause of watershed and mangrove forest reduction is the intensive conversion of the secondary and perhaps primary growth forests to urbanization and industrialization, coupled with agriculture and aquaculture.

Urbanization and Industrialization

Baconguis *et al.* (1990) recognized at least 4 regional industrial growth centers namely: Davao City, General Santos City, Zamboanga City, and Tacloban. In all of these centers, the associated watersheds have been defined. The activities in these growth centers are expected to impact the watershed and may affect freshwater and coastal ecosystems. These are the areas which would predictably cause major changes in the landscape and may contribute to the pollution and siltation of the adjacent coastal areas.

In terms of the proposed/planned infrastructure development nationwide, Eastern Visayas has the largest (34,579 ha) followed by Northern and Southern Luzon. Central Visayas ranks third with an estimated 4,768 ha to be subjected to development. Based on NEDA (National Economic Development Authority) data high-level threat from planned infrastructure development is absent in Palawan and Liguasan. Six hundred seventy-six (676) ha of Sulu is expected to be under high level of threat. Both mainland Mindanao and Zamboanga are predicted to have a large hectarage to be subjected to high-level threat due to potential infrastructure development (3,070 and 2,247 ha respectively). It would, thus, be prudent to direct conservation efforts of the SSME in areas were there are likely more negative impacts on the environment.

Cebu Port, an industrial island, contributes to the pollution of the Bays of Cebu. Likewise, the mine tailings from the Atlas Consolidated Mining and Development

Corporation may have negative impacts on the aquatic habitats. The latter has been reported to cause some contamination in the Pinangunahan mangrove and fishponds.

The construction of additional spillways in Lake Lanao for the hydroelectric power station involves more dredging of riverbanks and destruction of riparian habitats. Several towns and many villages, which contribute to the changes in the water quality, also surround the lake.

Davao Gulf is very well known to have achieved an economic status that is driven by industrialization and urbanization. Mining with their attendant processing, as well as quarrying have also contributed to the decline in water quality of the Davao Gulf. Increased production in agricultural areas is often associated with increased inputs such as pesticides, herbicides, fertilizers, and petroproducts. These substances eventually reach the marine ecosystems.

Agriculture and aquaculture

The extensive mangrove swamps provide excellent protection to molluscs, crustaceans and fishes of economic importance. They are also important breeding places of migratory aquatic organisms. Watersheds, on the other hand, are very important in averting erosion and siltation in streams and rivers. Destruction of watersheds result in erosion of the topsoil because of the absence of water-absorbing root systems.

The proposed irrigation schemes to service additional hectares of agricultural land in the water catchment area of most watersheds are likely to have an impact downstream. Erosion from agricultural and aquacultural areas carries inorganic substances from fertilizer, pesticides and feeds that cause eutrophication and siltation of bodies of water, endangering the life of organisms thriving within. Such is illustrated by the infrastructure development in Bais City watershed, which was converted into sugar lands. The original watershed occupied an area of approximately 13,500 ha. The present watershed protected area is reported to be a much reduced area of 1,129 ha. In other areas such as in Catubig River estuary, the main source of livelihood of the inhabitants is based on forest products as well as agriculture. Logging licenses have been issued and these may be translated into increased run-off. Unless mitigating measures are made immediately, sediment load in water bodies is expected to increase. The indiscriminate cutting of most mangrove forests for aquaculture and plantations in Cogtong Bay, Inabangan Coast, Ulugan Bay, Davao Gulf and other areas have contributed to the pollution (agro-chemicals) of the rivers and bays. This may eventually find its way to the marine ecosystems.

Land use that pose threats to biodiversity include infrastructure development, both existing and proposed, such as the major industries, road networks, irrigation systems, water resources, power and energy projects, ports and harbors, and others. Infrastructure affects biodiversity both directly and indirectly. Direct effects are when their operations may disturb, pollute or encroach upon biodiversity rich ecosystems. Indirectly they may attract satellite development of settlements that can cause habitat fragmentation. Roads provide easy access to rich ecosystems like old growth forests. Industries threaten the quality of surrounding water bodies that support a variety of aquatic resources including endemic species of plants and animals. In several instances, industrial wastewater treatment plants and air pollution control devices are absent or minimal. Altogether these pose as threats to the integrity of the watershed.

Legislation and Resource Management

A more quantitative assessment may be done to predict the possible trends in watershed development. Scenarios have to be projected given existing status as well as conservation measures. The watershed viewed as both a physical and a social unit, then, becomes an effective building block in planning.

LEGISLATION

Jurisdiction over Philippine watersheds falls primarily under the DENR and local government units. Watershed areas that serve as sources for irrigation have been placed under the jurisdiction of the NIA, while areas tapped for electricity generation such as hydropower and geothermal projects are placed under the NAPOCOR and PNOC.

In addition to the existing 121 watershed forest reserves covering a total of 1,381,453 ha (Baconguis *et al.*, 1990), proclamations in 1998-99 added over 1,000 hectares more. Furthermore, the distribution of the Philippines into Biogeographic Zones has stepped up biodiversity awareness. As previously mentioned, 10 of the 15 zones are included within the SSME.

RESOURCE MANAGEMENT

The National Parks System of the Philippines are mostly found in watersheds. Appendix 1a lists all the National Parks. Data on the biogeographic zone, region, location, establishment of the area, areal coverage, special features and examples of flora and fauna are included.

Appendix 1b enumerates the projected areas delcared through various administrative orders and Memorandum orders.

Appendix 1c is a listing of all the Islands within SSME proclaimed as tourist zone and marine reserves under Proclamation No.1810.S.1978.

Chapter IV

Coastal and Marine Ecosystems and their Associated Species

I. THE MANGROVE ECOSYSTEM

Prescillano M. Zamora

The mangrove ecosystem is very productive. Its ecological and economic value has long been recognized. However, it is also one of the most critical "at risk" ecosystems due to its continued intensive exploitation and conversion for various purposes.

Coverage, Occurrence and Distribution

Mangroves cover an estimated area of 180,000 km^2 around the world, 75,172 km^2 in Southeast Asia and less than 1,205 km^2 in the Philippines (EMB, 1996).

In the Sulu Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion the mangal (as an ecological or habitat diversity type) occurs in protected coves and quiet embayments (a) along the coastal areas of islands facing the marine waters around Sulu Sea, i.e., Batangas, Lucena and Bicol in Luzon; Samar and Leyte in the Visayas; Surigao, Zamboanga, Cotabato, Davao Gulf, Basilan Island, Sulu Archipelago, Tawi-Tawi Island, Turtle Islands and Sibutu Island in Mindanao and the Palawan mainland; and (b) protected coastal areas of large and small islands within the Sulu Sea such as Mindoro, Marinduque, Burias, Romblon Group of Islands, Masbate, Panay, Negros, Cebu, Bohol, and Siquijor.

There are no recent inventories to determine the actual areal extent of the mangroves of the Philippines. What is available is the last nationwide inventory of the mangrove forest of the Philippines which was done 11 years ago for the DENR by the Remote Sensing Division of the Swedish Space Corporation. Thus, the areal extent of the mangroves in the ecoregion can only be indicated in rather rough, raw and general terms (Table 4.1).

The estimated areas of existing mangrove forests in the Philippines is presented in Figures 4.1 and 4.2.

Species diversity

The mangrove hosts a diverse assemblage of organisms, from the vascular plants which form the foundation of the ecosystem, to the animals and lower plants that thrive within.

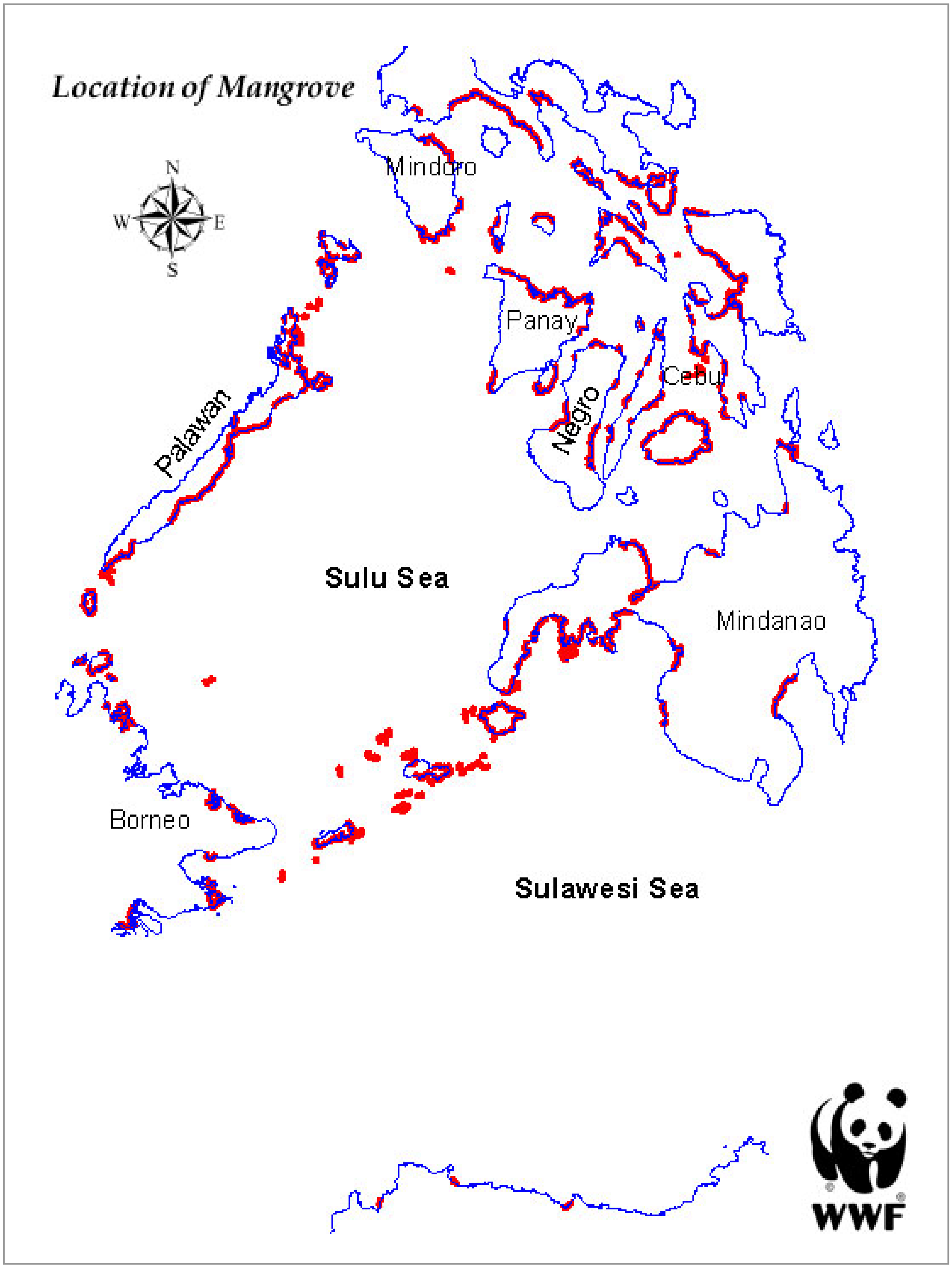


Figure 4.1 Distribution of mangrove areas in the Philippines

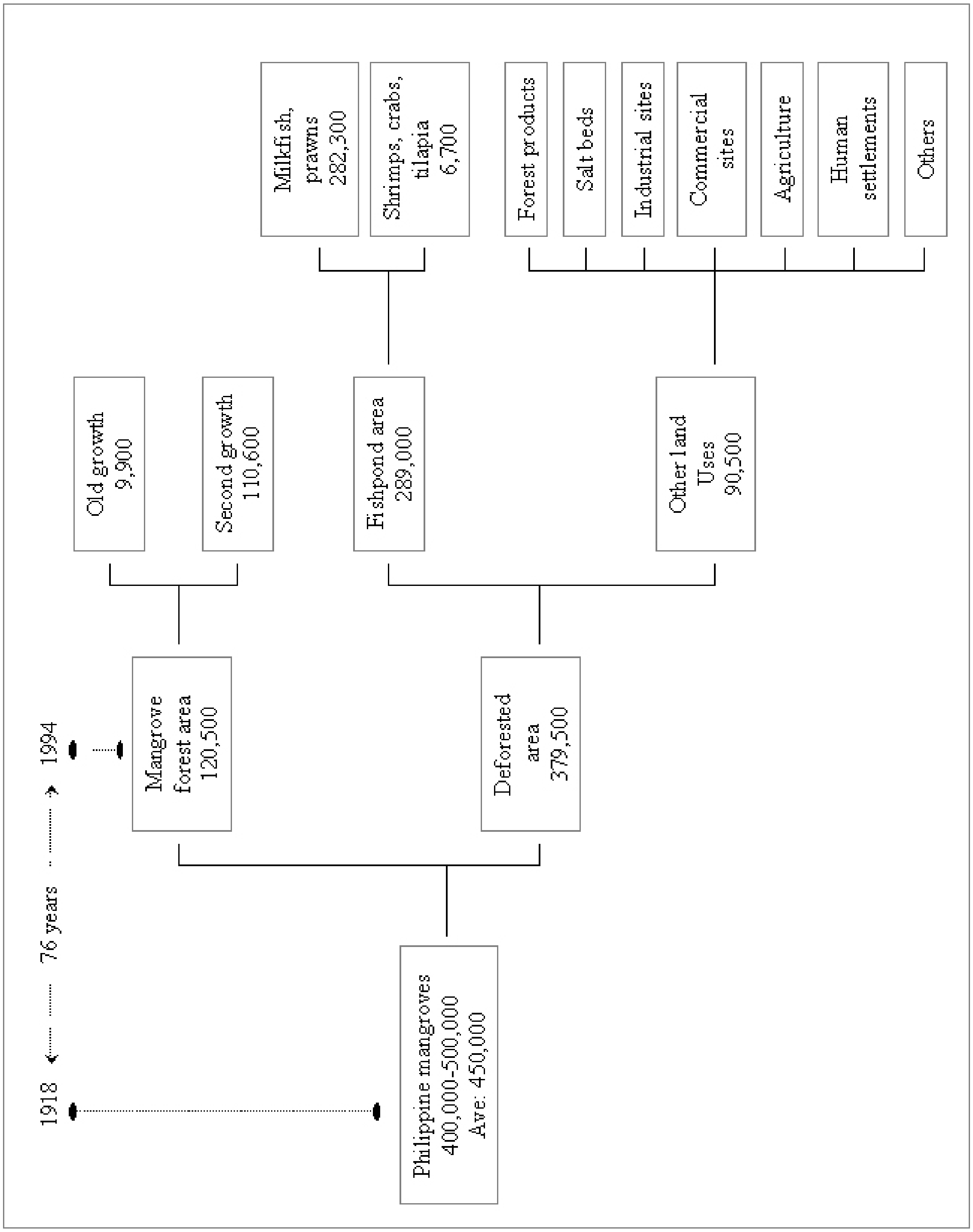


Figure 4.2 Estimated area (has) of existing mangrove forests in the Philippines and their uses

Table 4.1 Estimated mangrove areas in the Philippines

Coastal areas facing the Sulu Sea	Estimated Area (km^2)	Remarks
Batangas (southern side)	-	All
Lucena (southern side)	-	All
Bicol (western side)	-	All
Samar (western side)	226	Part
Leyte (western side)	37	Part
Surigao, Zamboanga, Cotabato, Davao Gulf	-	Part
Basilan Island	62	All
Bongao Island	-	All
Sulu Archipelago	-	All
Palawan (main island, eastern side)	-	All
Palawan (islands north of main island)	-	All
Palawan (islands north of main island)	-	All
Islands Within Sulu Sea		
Mindoro Island	27	All
Marinduque	31	All
Burias Island	-	All
Romblon Group of Islands	7	All
Masbate	17	All
Cebu	4	All
Negros Island	10	All
Bohol Island	85	All
Siquijor	-	All

VASCULAR PLANTS

Thirty five taxa (Table 4.2) of mangrove vascular plants have been reported within Sulu Sea, consisting of 33 species, 1 variety (*Avicennia marina* var. *rumphianna)* and 1 hybrid (*Rhizopora x lamarckii*) making the Philippines and SSME one of the richest in terms of vascular plant diversity along with Japan, Ryukyus Islands, Sulawesi and the Northern Territories of Australia.

Among these, *Kandelia candel* was recently (1998) collected and the voucher specimen is housed in the Herbarium of the Institute of Biology, College of Science, University of the Philippines at Diliman Quezon City.

Table 4.2 Major (1-23) and minor (24-35) mangrove vascular plants reported to occur in the Philippines

Botanical Name	**Local Name**	**Family Name**	**Habit**
1. Avicennia alba	Bungalon-puti	Verbenaceae	s-t
2. Avicennia eucalyptifolia	Bungalon-sahing	Verbenaceae	s-t
3. Avicennia lanata	Piapi	Verbenaceae	s-t
4. Avicennia marina	Piapi	Verbenaceae	s-t
5. Avicennia marina var rumphiana	Piapi	Verbenaceae	s-t
6. Avicennia officinalis	Api-api	Verbenaceae	m-t
7. Bruguiera cylindrica	Pototan-lalake	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
8. Bruguiera gymnorrhiza	Busain	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
9. Bruguiera parviflora	Langarai	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
10. Buguiera sexangula	Pototan	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
11. Ceriops decandra	Malatangal	Rhizophoraceae	s-t
12. Ceriops tagal	Tangal	Rhizophoraceae	s-t
13. Kandelia candel	-	Rhizophoraceae	s-t
14. Lumnitzera littorea	Sagasa	Combretaceae	s-t
15. Lumnitzera racemosa	Kulasi	Combretaceae	s-t
16. Nypa fruticans	Nipa	Arecaceae	Palm
17. Rhizophora apiculata	Bakauan-lalake	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
18. Rhizophora mucronata	Bakauan-babae	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
19. Rhizophora stylosa	Bakauan tigkihon	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
20. Rhizophora x lamarckii	Bakauan (hybrid)	Rhizophoraceae	m-t
21. Sonneratia alba	Pedada	Sonneratiaceae	l-t
22. Sonneratia caseolaris	Pagatpat	Sonneratiaceae	m-t
23. Sonneratia ovata	Pagatpat baye	Sonneratiaceae	m-t
24. Acrostichum aureum	Lagolo	Pteridaceae	Fern
25. Acrostichum speciosum	Lagolo	Pteridaceae	Fern
26. Aegiceras corniculatum	Saging-saging	Myrsinaceae	s-t
27. Aegiceras floridum	Tinduk-tindukan	Myrsinaceae	s-t
28. Camptostemon philippinense	Gapas-gapas	Bombacaceae	s-t
29. Excoecaria agallocha	Buta-buta	Euphorbiaceae	s-t
30. Heritiera littoralis	Dungon-late	Sterculiaceae	m-t
31. Osbornia octodonta	Taualis	Myrtaceae	s-t
32. Pemphis acidula	Bantigi	Lythraceae	s-t
33. Scyphiphora hydrophyllacea	Nilad	Rubiaceae	s-t
34. Xylocarus granatum	Tabigi	Meliaceae	m-t
35. Xylocarpus moluccensis	Piagau	Meliaceae	s-t

Definition of elements by size: s-t = shrub to small tree or one story tree with a diameter of 3-30 centimeters and a height of 2-5 meters; m-t = medium-sized tree or two story tree with a diameter of 30-40 centimeters and a height of 5-15 meters; and l-t = large tree or three story tree with a diameter of over 40 centimeters and a height of over 15 meters.

NON-VASCULAR PLANT ASSOCIATES

Banaag (1972) recorded the occurrence of thallophytes associated with the arborescent forms in the mangal of Likot cove and Mahabang Parang Cove in Muelle Bay, Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro (Table 4.3). Later, Fortes (1975), CDS (1979) and Fortes and Trono (1979) added nine species of blue-green, five species of green, and 10 species of red algae found in the mangrove areas of Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro; Palsabangon in Pagbilao, Quezon; Ulugan Bay in Palawan and Babatngon, Leyte (Table 4.4).

Table 4.3 Mangrove-associated thallophytes in Likot and Mahabang Parang Coves, Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro (Banaag, 1972)

Species	**Plant Group**	**Habitat**
Scytonema myochrous	1	Trunks, branches, stilt toots of bakauan and tangal
Oscillatoria tenuis	1	Muddy pools in exposed areas
Lyngbya sordida	1	Stilt roots of bakauan
Cladophora sp.	2	Trunks of trees
Dichotomosiphon tuberosus	2	Pneumatophores of api-api
Rhizoclonium crassipellitum	2	Trunks of api-api
Rhizoclonium hookeri	2	Trunks of api-api
Lophosiphonia sp.	3	Stilt roots of bakauan
Myriogramme sp.	3	Stilt roots of bakauan
Bostrychia sp.	3	Stilt roots of bakauan
Herposiphonia secunda	3	Trunks of bakauan
Ascodesmis sp.	4	Decaying trunks and branches
Polyporus hirsutus	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Polyporus sanguineus	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Daedalia ambigua	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Trametes aspera	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Hydnum sp.	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Hexagona sp.	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Fomes ribis	5	Decaying trunks and branches
Merasius sp.	5	Muddy substratum
Schizophyllum commune	5	Decaying branches
Collybia platyphylla	5	Clayish substratun
Pleurotus ostreatus	5	Clayish substratum
Hypocrea sp.	6	Trunk of api-api
Pyxine sp.	6	Trunk of api-api
Ohrolechia pallescens	6	Trunk of Bakauan

Plant groups: 1 = blue green algae; 2 = green algae; 3 = red algae; 4 = ascomycete fungus; 5 = basidiomycete fungi; 6 = lichen.

Table 4.4 Mangrove-associated algal microphytes in Muelle Bay and Paniquian (Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro), Palsabangon (Pagbilao, Quezon), Ulugan Bay (Palawan), and Babatngon (Leyte). (Fortes, 1975; Cordero, 1978; Fortes and Trono, 1979)

Species	**Plant Group**	**Habitat**
Oscillatoria curviceps	1	Pneumatophores of api-api
Oscillatoria nigto-viridis	1	Pneumatophores of api-api
Oscillatoria sancta	1	Stilt roots of bakauan
Lyngbya lutea	1	Pneumatophores of api-api
Lyngbya mesotricha	1	Pneumatophores of api-api
Microcoleus acutissimus	1	Pneumatophores of api-api
Calothrix aeruginea	1	Pneumatophores of api-api
Calothrix scopulorum	1	Stilt roots of bakauan
Rivularia nitida	1	Stilt roots of bakauan
Enteromorpha chaetomorphoides	2	Roots of tinduk-tindukan
Cladophora liebetruthii	2	Stilt roots of bakauan
Rhizoclonium granda	2	Pneumatophores of api-api
Boodleopsis pusilla	2	Pneumatophores of api-api
Boodleopsis verticillata	2	Pneumatophores of api-api
Gelidiella adnata	3	Stilt roots of bakauan
Catenella opuntia	3	Pneumatophores of api-api
Ceramium leutzelburgii	3	Pneumatophores of api-api
Ceramium zacae	3	Pneumatophores of pedada
Caloglossa adnata	3	Pneumatophores of api-api
Caloglossa leprieurii	3	Stilt roots of bakauan
Caloglossa ogasawaraensis	3	Pneumatophores of api-api
Bostrychia radicans	3	Pneumatophores of api-api
Laurencia surculigera	3	Pneumatophores of api-api
Murrayella periclados	3	Pneumatophores of api-api

FAUNAL ASSEMBLAGE

Alcala (unpub.) listed the following animals associated with mangroves:

- the frog *Rana cancrivora*;
- two Gecknoid lizards, *Gehyra mutilata* and *Lepidodactylus lugubris*;
- the Scincid lizard, *Emoia atrocostata*;
- the varanid lizard, *Varanus salvator*;
- the acrochordid snake, *Acrochordus granulatus*;
- two colubrid snakes, *Boiga dendrophila* and *Hurria runchops*;
- the primate *Macaca fascicularis*;
- the Palawan flying fox, *Acerodon leucotis*; and
- the golden crowned flying fox, *Acerodon jubatus*

Additionally, the swamps harbor 54 species of crustaceans, 63 species of shellfishes (molluscs), 110 species of finfishes, and 10 species of birds (Dickinson *et al*., 1991; Appendix 2a-b).

Importance

PRODUCTIVITY AND ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

Mangroves have been utilized by coastal communities in a variety of ways:

- As a source of forest products

  Poles for house construction; firewood (fuel) for cooking; charcoal as domestic energy source and source of income; tanbark for coloring tuba (fermented nipa juice); nipa sap for tuba, vinegar, alcohol and sugar; nipa shingles (roofs and walling) for domestic use and source of income.

- As a source of fishery products

  Adult finfishes, shellfishes, shrimps and mangrove crabs found within are harvested for domestic consumption and source of income. The juveniles are caught for food and for stocking fishponds in grow out ponds. Healthy mangrove forests produce an average of 1.08 t of fish per hectare per year.

- As site for human activities

  Residential, commercial and industrial developments are expanding to mangrove areas, hence, domestic and industrial wastes are reported to be disposed of in the area as well. Areas which have been cleared of mangroves are converted to housing units, fishponds, and commercial and industrial establishments. Table 4.5 is a summary of the average valuation of the mangrove ecosystem from around the world. Given the differenct levels of management, Table 4.6 gives the estimated annual net economic value (US$) of Philippine mangroves.

Table 4.5 Average mangrove ecosystem valuation worldwide (adopted from White and Cruz-Trinidad, 1998)

Benefits of ecosystem services	**Value (US$•ha•year)**
Disturbance regulation	*1839
Waste treatment	*6696
Habitat /refugia	169
Food production	466
Raw materials	162
Recreation	658
Total benefits	3,294

*White and Cruz-Trinidad notes that disturbance regulation, waste treatment and recreation are generally not economically quantified in the Philippine context because they are indirect services which are difficult to quantify.

Table 4.6 Estimated annual net economic value (US$) of Philippine mangroves based on different management levels (White and de Leon, 1996; de Leon and White, 1997)

Level of Management	**Wood products (US$/hectare)**	**Fish products (US$/hectare)**	**Total (US$/hectare)**
Mangrove plantation	156	538	694
Managed, naturally vegetated	90	538	628
Unmanaged, unstocked	42	538	580

ECOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE

Many species are associated with mangrove areas indicating their usefulness in serving as habitat for wildlife. Detritus and nutrients from mangrove areas support the nearshore fishery in the coastal waters. These are exported to form the food base of a host of marine organisms such as finfishes, shellfishes and crustaceans (Reyes, 1983; Zamora, 1987b,1990c). Coastal areas which serve as feeding, spawning and nursery grounds are also enriched by the nutrients derived from the decomposition of mangal detritus (Motoh and Solis, 1978; NATMANCOM, 1982; Pinto, 1987).

Coastal areas which are exposed to storm surges and high winds associated with tropical typhoons are protected by mangroves. Places where mangroves have been completely removed suffered the effects of storm surges and now require concrete walls to protect them. In estuaries and deltas, mangroves serve to reduce the effect of floods and erosion of river and narrow coastlines.

Threats

Because of the multifarious benefits derived from mangrove areas, they are subject to intense stresses, most of which are human-induced.

ANTHROPOGENIC SOURCES

Figure 4.3 shows the decline of mangroves from 1918 at 450,000 hectares to 289,000 hectares in 1997. If the current rate of exploitation is maintained, it is projected that by year 2030, only a little more than 18,000 hectares will be left in the entire Philippines.

Habitat loss or destruction of mangroves has been attributed to such human-induced threats as conversion to residential areas, farmlands, commercial and industrial establishments and fishponds. The conversion of large areas of mangrove to brackishwater fishpond (*fishpondification*) for the cultivation of economically important marine organisms such as milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) and prawn (*Penaeus monodon*) is one of the major causes of the disappearance of mangrove areas (Zamora, 1989a; Zamora, 1995). In fishpondification, the disturbance of the mangal is maximal in that all standing biomass is completely remove, the soil profile is seriously disturbed resulting in the loss of diverse organisms living within. This conversion has involved to date: 289,000 hectares (White and de Leon, 1996; de Leon and White, 1997) out of a total of 450,000 hectares in 1918 (Brown and Fischer, 1920).

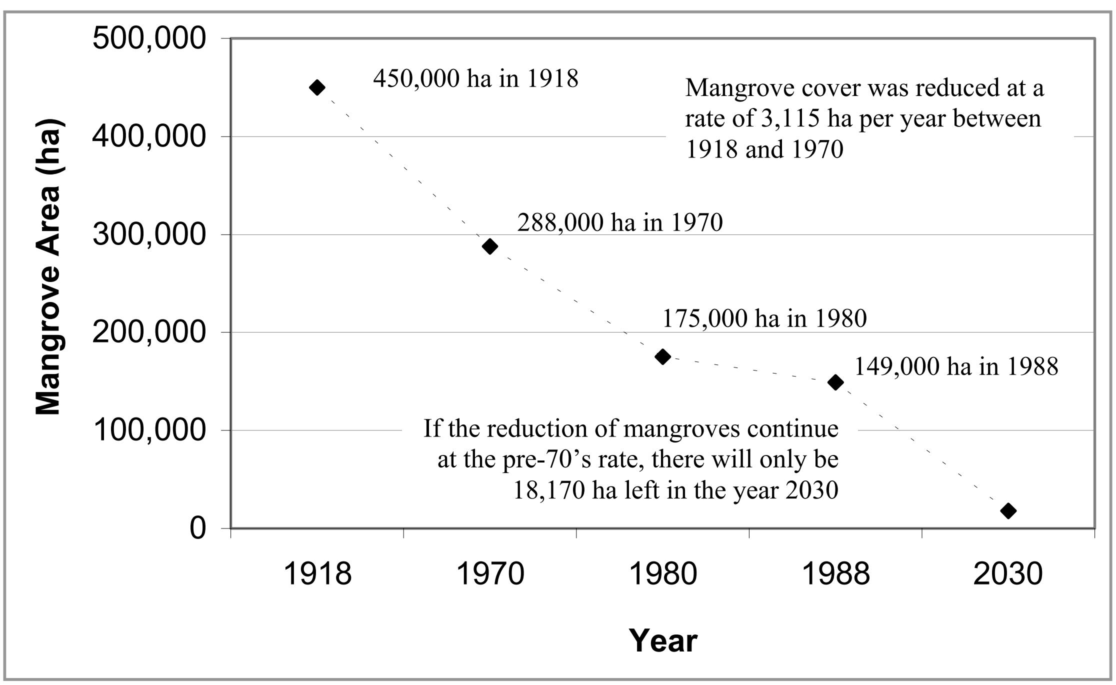


Figure 4.3 Mangrove resource decline in the Philippines

Overexploitation of mangroves is another problem that has persisted over the decades. Felling of trees for fuel, charcoal-making and construction materials is probably the second most pervasive intrusion on the mangal. The demand for the various products leads to over harvesting of large areas. The complete destruction of even young plants has decimated many areas resulting not only in the loss of biodiversity but a complete conversion of the ecosystem.

NATURAL SOURCES

Infestation of mangrove plants, especially newly planted individuals by barnacles, borers and tussock moths pose another threat to the mangroves. Heavy infestation of these pests can lead to the death of the mangrove.

Resource Management

LEGISLATIONS

The Philippine government has long recognized the necessity of passing laws to regulate the excessive destruction and utilization of mangroves. The policies, rules and regulations governing mangrove forest development in the country are embodied in various acts, administrative orders, letters of instruction, memoranda, presidential decrees, presidential proclamations and special orders.

- DENR Administrative Order (DAO) No.15 Series of 1990 (dated February 1,1990) aims to:

    - conserve, protect, rehabilitate and develop the remaining mangrove resources;
    - give preference to organizations, associations or cooperatives over individual users in the utilization of the mangrove resources;
    - stop the wanton exploitation of the mangroves; and
    - enhance the replenishment of denuded mangrove areas through natural or artificial means

    - Section 4 of DAO No.15 prohibits the conversion of mangrove areas into fishponds. Fishponds that have been abandoned for over 5 years shall revert to the category of forest lands.

    - Section 6 stipulates provisions for the *Certificate of Stewardship* contract which is granted only for sustainable activities in mangrove areas. By Presidential Proclamations 2151 and 2152, 74,628 hectares were set aside as mangrove forest reserves and 4,327 hectares were set aside as wilderness areas, respectively.

- DENR Special Order 309 (December 13,1976) Creation of the National Mangrove Committee

- DENR Special Order 728 (1987) Reconstitution of the National Mangrove Committee.

  Under the Mangrove Management plan, the following activities are prohibited:

  - conversion of thickly vegetated mangrove areas into fishponds;
  - fishpondification within the mangrove forest reserves and mangrove wilderness areas;
  - conversion of mangroves into fishponds (also saltworks, paddy cultivation) under the Certificate of Stewardship contract;
  - deposition for fishpondification of estuarine mangrove which are predominantly, if not totally vegetated with shrubs.

REFORESTATION EFFORTS

Reforestation and plantation establishment in degraded mangrove areas have been started in Bohol (1968), Sulu (1981), Cebu (1984) and Basilan (1985). Recent efforts on mangrove replanting in the Visayas include that of Baldevarona (Institute of Aquaculture, College of Fisheries, University of the Philippines in the Visayas, Iloilo, 1988-89) in Taklong Island, Guimaras, Iloilo. Private individuals, coastal communities and the government are involved in the establishment and management of these plantations. Plantations managed by an individual or a family average about 500 to 2,000 square meters. When managed by a community, the average size of the plantation may be between 20-30 hectares.

Government programs include (1) The Mangrove Program (FMB in Region 7) and (2) the Central Visayas Regional Project Office, a World Bank Assisted Project (CVRPO).

In some of the sites in Negros Oriental and Bohol, these plantations were first established on a small scale (backyard) by an individual or a coastal community with the original objective of protecting infrastructures (houses, roads) against the impact of strong winds and waves during inclement weather conditions but later expanded for wood production (fuelwood or firewood) and construction materials like poles.

The current RP policies on mangrove rehabilitation and management are summarized by Melana *et al*. (2000) in the "Mangrove Management Handbook."

II. THE SEAWEED AND SEAGRASS ECOSYSTEMS

Gavino C. Trono, Jr.

Occurrence, Distribution and Data Gaps

During the last three decades, research efforts to document the basic studies on seaweeds and seagrasses had been constrained by the limited funds and expertise on the subject. Funding was focused on the potential economic uses of these marine plants. Thus, there is limited information on the distribution and cover of the various species.

Documentation is mostly based on a one time spot collection. Because of the interest to inventory known seaweed-producing areas that sell seaweeds in local markets or exported them for chemical extracts, collection sites in Mindanao were limited to farming areas and project field sites in Sulu, Tawi-Tawi, Misamis, Zamboanga and Davao. Some recent collections came from Lopez-Jaena, Misamis Occidental. Seagrass and seaweed information on the inland seas were obtained from the Resource and Ecological Assessment of the Priority Bays under the Fisheries Sector Program (FSP) from 1991 to 1996. Their distributions are shown in Figures 4.4 and 4.5, respectively.

SEAWEED DISTRIBUTION

Of the more than 800 species of marine benthic algae reported in the Philippines, only 353 species have been recorded in the SSME. These consist of the three species of Cyanophyta (blue-green algae), 114 Chlorophyta, (green) 65 Phaeophyta (brown) and 174 Rhodophyta (Red). Many of these species are common in the collecting sites in the Philippines. The low number of species reflects a lack of information and detailed studies on algae in the SSME.

Of the sites sampled, Leyte has 148 species; Batangas 141 species; Palawan 129 species, Sorsogon, 124 species and Panay Island 100 species. Based on the data, these sites can be described as relatively diverse in terms of flora.

Even with such incomplete information, the SSME is still richer than other areas in the world. Most rocky intertidal areas in temperate countries harbor less than a hundred species due to the adverse conditions affecting the region. In the Mediterranean, there are roughly 210 species of seaweeds growing along its northern, southern and eastern coasts (Lipkin and Friedlander, 1998). These flora are relatively less diverse compared to those found within the territorial waters of the Philippines.

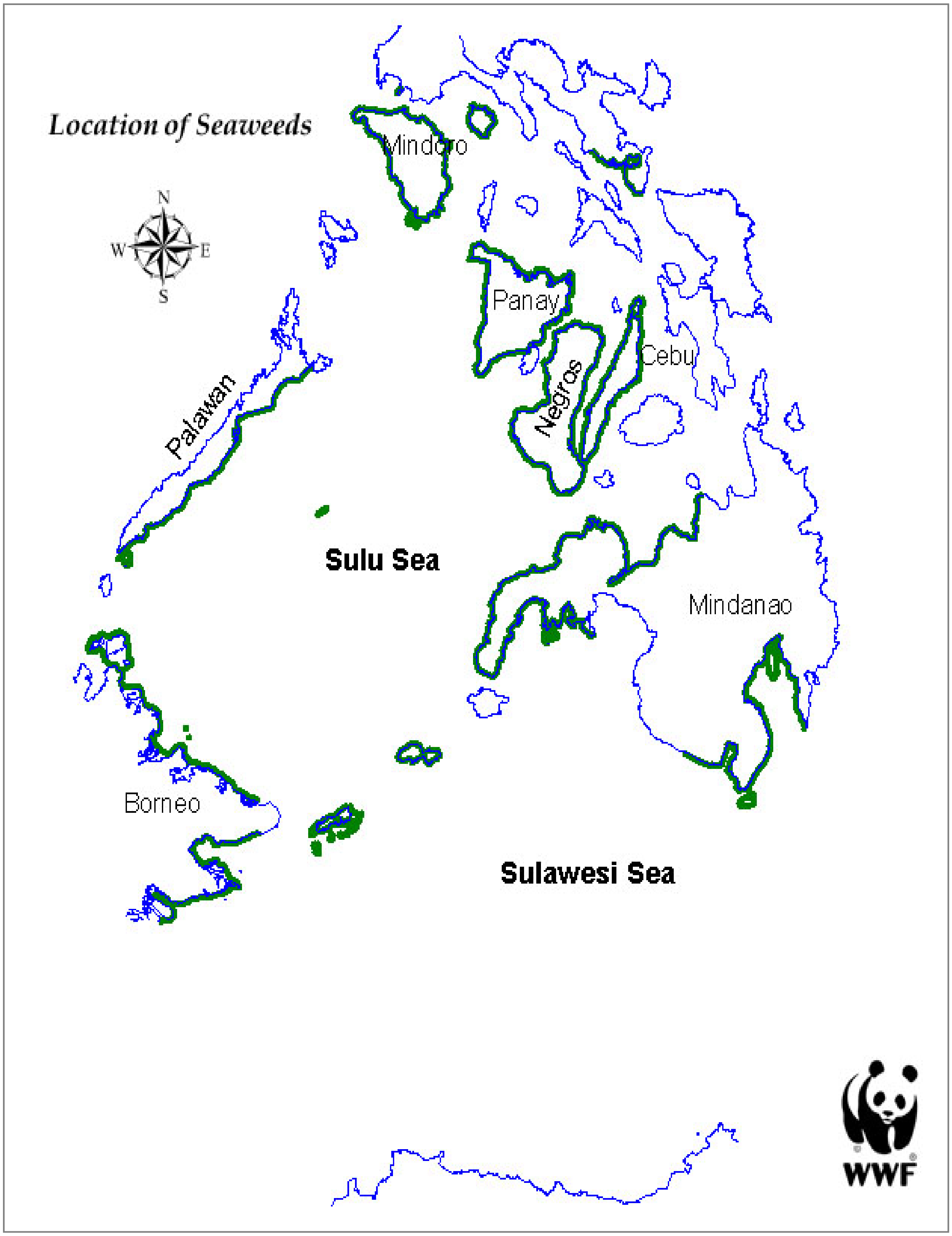


Figure 4.4 Geographic distribution of seaweeds

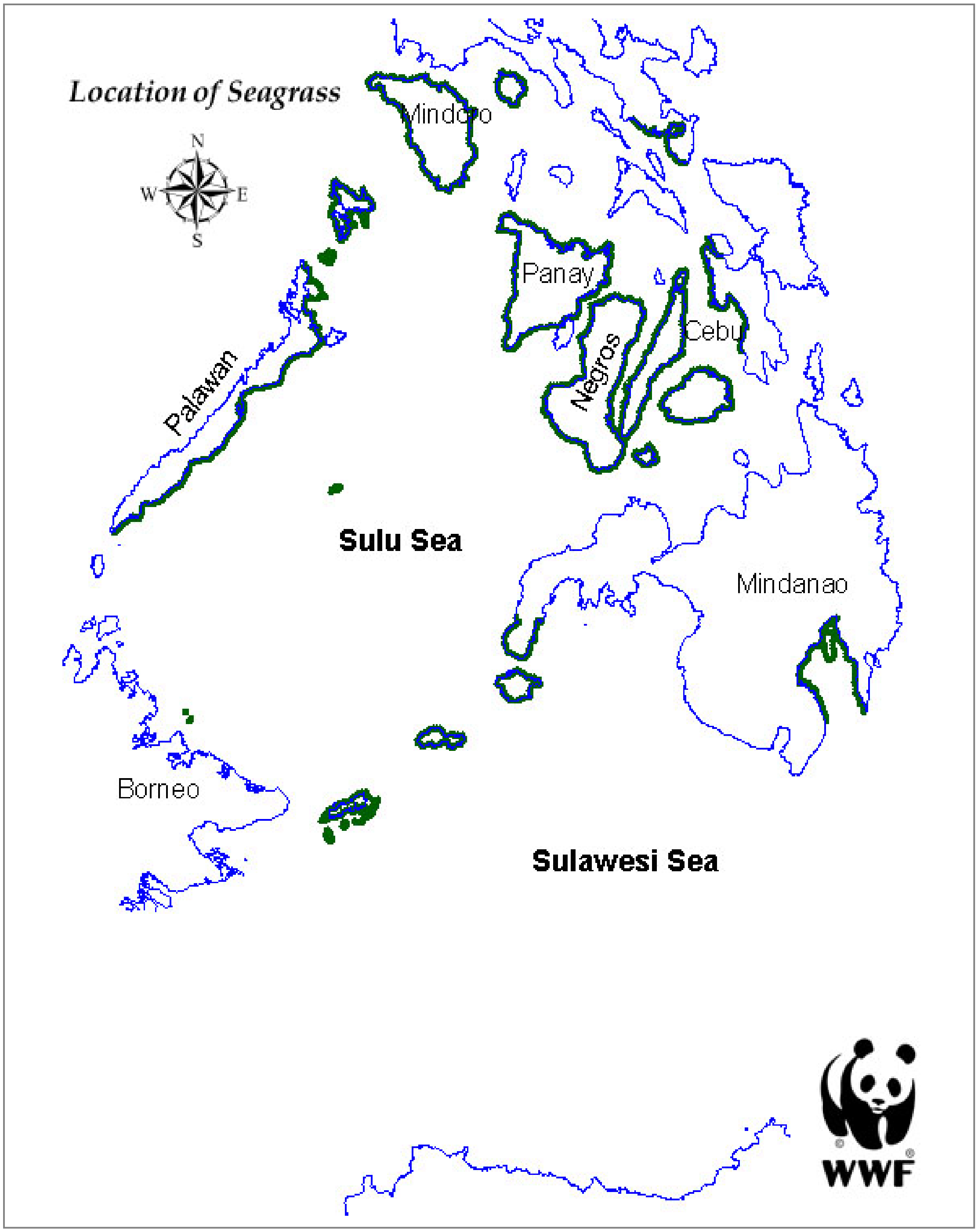


Figure 4.5 Geographic distribution of seagrasses

SEAGRASS DISTRIBUTION

In the Philippines, a total of 14 species of seagrass, 7 of which come from Family Hydrocharitaceae, 6 from Cymodoceae and one still unclassified, have been reported. These are distributed as follows: 11 species are found in Mindoro and Negros, 10 in Batangas, and 9 in Cebu. Davao, Marinduque, Siquijor, Tubbataha Reef and Zamboanga are each represented by 8 species.

When compared with other areas in the world, Japan for instance has reportedly only 6 species at most in a single area, showing that the Philippines still has a more diverse seagrass species composition.

Importance

Seaweeds and seagrasses comprise two major groups of primary producers in the shallow coastal waters. They form large and dominant communities, providing the sources of organic matter and energy which support other marine ecosystems.

Seagrass beds and areas with diverse seaweed species serve as nursery, feeding grounds and habitat for many associated groups of animals such as mollusks, crustaceans, echinoderms, fishes, reptiles, birds and mammals, many of which are of economic importance while some are endangered species such as dugongs and turtles. In addition to its contribution to the food chain, seagrass beds stabilize the substrata, thus controlling erosion of the reef flats.

In the Philippines, the major seaweed export at the moment is *Eucheuma* and *Kappaphycus* as sources of carrageenan. The agarophytes *Gracilaria* and *Gelidiella acerosa* are also being harvested for agar manufacture. *Caulerpa lentillifera* is also exported to Japan for seaweed salad. Nevertheless, the development of the industry is constrained by losses due to diseases and low quality of extracted natural products. *Sargassum* is a major source of alginate and phenolic compounds but its industrial potential has not been maximized. Many seaweeds contain compounds with medicinal properties aside from being a major source of iodine. *Caulerpa* possess anaesthetic chemicals while *Sargassum, Enteromorpha, Caulerpa, Turbinaria, Hypnea* and a host of other species contain antimicrobial compounds. Seaweeds also serve as fodder for many animals.

Among the potential species presently being looked into is *Halymenia durvillaei* as an export item to Japan. Japan is currently importing tons of red seaweeds from Africa and some parts of Southeast Asia to support the growing demand for these food species. Farming of *Caulerpa* is being done here in the Philippines but production is short of the demand for export.

Threats and Resource Management Issues

One of the major threats to the seagrass and seaweed communities is the uncontrolled development along the coastal areas. The proliferation of industries and other commercial activities change the quality of water and bring pollutants and sediments to the shallow marine areas. Pollutants brought by the rivers from the uplands such as mine tailings, large sediments from eroded farmlands and watersheds, effluents from industries located in the coastal waters and thermal discharges from industrial facilities utilizing the coastal waters for their cooling systems.

Another problem is the intense gathering of economically important seaweed species leading to the loss of species and the lower production capacity of the seaweed beds. Although seaweed species that are exported are often cultivated, there are still areas that suffer from intensive harvesting. Two of the seaweed genera that are heavily gathered are *Gracilaria* and *Gelidiella* for agar manufacture. *Caulerpa lentillifera* is another species that is a target species for export to Japan for seaweed salad.

Natural threats to the biological diversity include storms and typhoons, storm surges that shift the substratum on reef flats causing the destruction of seaweed and seagrass beds.

Among the recommended strategies for rehabilitation and ecosystem protection are proper harvesting methods, i.e., leaving the holdfast (root-like organ) intact for the thallus to regenerate. Repopulation techniques such as laying down of artificial substrates are already being done in denuded areas where seaweeds once proliferated.

III. THE CORAL REEF ECOSYSTEM

Naniel Aragones, Emmanuel S. Bate, Ramon I. Miclat, A. Rex F. Montebon, and Johanna Pe-Montebon

Distribution of Noteworthy Reef Areas and Species Diversity

THE CORAL REEFS

Coral reefs are among the most biologically diverse ecosystems and have been considered as the rain forest of the ocean. In Southeast Asia, these reefs are at the center of marine biodiversity, particularly Indonesia and the Philippines (Wilkinson *et al.*, 1993). Alcala (1993) has stated four characteristics of the Sulu Sea which warrant their protection and management, namely:

- Reefs in the Sulu Sea are the last remaining good reefs in the Philippines;
- The reefs have unique formations;
- They play a significant role in sustaining fisheries; and
- They have a significant role in maintaining biological diversity.

Some of the more prominent reef areas in the Philippines (Figure 4.6; UNEP/IUCN, 1988) within the boundaries of the SSME include:

- Apo Reef Marine Nature Park

  A small island and adjoining reef make up this 11,677 ha marine reserve located 35 km southwest of Mindoro Island in the Mindoro Strait, ~12°N latitude and 120°E longitude. The reef rises abruptly from water depths of greater than 1,000 m and has steep slopes to the north, west, and south. The declivity to the east is more gentle.

  The complex consists of subtriangular northern and southern reefs, partially separated by a large channel. The leeward sides of the reef complex are not closed but support discontinuous mound of coral growth. Lagoon depths range from 2-25 m.

  The reef flat is characterized by low species diversity and the dominance of ramose species, apparently well adapted to strong abiotic and biotic stress. Corals from the reef crest are considered to be tolerant of moderate wave action. The outer reef slope is characterized by high species diversity and the predominance of plate and encrusting forms (Ross and Hodgson, 1981). Species diversity reaches a reef maximum by 15 m. Below 25 m, a 45° scree slope and low irradiance levels restrict coral colonization. The leeward reef community appears to be one of the most diverse in the world (Hodgson and Ross, 1981).

- Apo Island Municipal Reserve

  Apo Island is a small island off the southeastern coast of Negros Oriental at 9°05'N latitude and 123°16'E longitude. It is 7 km east of Bgy. Malatapay, Zamboanguita (25 km south of Dumaguete City) and west of Siquijor Island. It is under the jurisdiction of the Municipality of Dauin, Negros Oriental. Apo Island is a 74 ha volcanic island lying in the middle of Mindanao Sea. A narrow but diverse fringing coral reef surrounds the island with an area of 54 ha to a 20 m isobath or 106 ha to a 60 m isobath. The island is surrounded by a standard fringing reef which is in good to very good condition. Topographically, it is surrounded by steep drop-offs and gradually sloping drops of 20-40° decline. Live corals are found to be most extensive in the eastern and southeastern portions of the reef, with much of its growth supported by volcanic rock boulders (MCDP, 1985).

  A total of 48 hard coral and 11 soft coral genera were recorded around Apo Island in 1983 (MCDP, 1985). In 1995, only 31 genera of hard corals were observed while the number of soft coral remained the same. Among the hard corals, *Galaxea* is the most dominant, especially in the reserve, followed by *Acropora* and *Porites*. The dominance of massive corals to other hard coral growth forms indicate a high topographic index.

- Cagayan Islands

  The Cagayan Group of Islands is located in the northeastern Sulu Sea, some 60-75 km southwest of Panay Island, within the Province of Palawan, 9°35'-9°50'N latitude and 121°11'-121°20'E longitude.

Dodonay and Cagayan Islands rise to 100 ft (30 m) above sea-level; the other islands are flat. The total area of the pseudo-atoll formation is about 50-60 km^2. A few kilometers west of the formation, the waters reach 1000 fathoms (1828 m) depth.

Live coral cover in most parts of the reef northwest of Manucan Island does not exceed 40%, and is probably usually 20-30%. Good cover (70-80%) is found on the southern rim of the island ring, near the junction of the two main islands. The reef on the northern rim, near the coral islet of Boombong, has coral cover of about 50%, and many dead corals, some not yet reduced to rubble, can be seen. A drop-off on the western side of Cagayan Island has good to excellent cover, estimated at 50-60% and 80-95% on the steeper parts, for a length of about 1.5-2.0 km along the shore (UNEP/IUCN, 1988)

- Carbin Reef Municipal Park
  Situated in the Visayasn Sea, about 0.5 (5?) km northeast of Old Sagay on Negros Island, and 9.5 km west of Molocaboc Island, to the north of Negros Island, 10°59'N latitude and 123°27'-123°28'E longitude.

  The approximate area is 2 km^2 (reef is 2 x 1.4 km); greatest depth 12-15 m; a part (0.5 x 0.1 km) of the sand cay is exposed at low tide; area of Municipal Park is 154 ha. The cay is surrounded by a somewhat oval shaped reef flat, elongated in the north-south direction and which slopes gradually from 3-10 m depth. The reef is surrounded by water 12-15 m deep.

  Data from a 1983 survey by Silliman University Marine Laboratory showed the following live and dead coral cover: live soft corals 0.0-6.25; live hard corals 14.3-75.0; dead corals 10.0-54.3; coral rubble 4.3-29.3; rock 1.25-35.0; and sand 0.6-12.5. The following corals were found on the southern reef: *Porites, Favia, Acropora, Pocillopora, Favites* and *Heliopora*; on the west side, *Acropora, Porites, Fungia, Heliopora, Millepora* and *Pocilliopora* were recorded; on the north *Porites, Acropora, Pocillopora, Favia, Favites*, and *Millepora* were recorded. In general, coral diversity was fairly high (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).

- Danajon Bank
  The Danajon Bank Double Barrier Reef is a unique coastal environment within the jurisdiction of 17 municipalities covering 4 provinces. It lies in the Camotes Sea, Central Philippines, along the northern coast of Bohol, 10°16'N latitude and 124°37'E longitude. The inner barrier of the double barrier reef is some 3 miles (5.5 km) north of the municipality of Jetafe, on the northern tip of Bohol.

  The outer slope of the outer barrier generally has a gentle upper slope about 500-800 m wide down to a 15 m depth and a lower, vertical slope down to 50 m. The upper slope has about 50% coral cover with *Pavona cactus* and *Anacropora* dominating. Fungiids are particularly abundant onhard and soft bottoms and include species such as *Halomitra philippinensis*. The lower drop-off is composed of horizontal overhangs where *Leptoseris* dominates. Ahermatypic forms, like *Tubastrea* and *Dendrophyllia,* occur under the overhangs.

The reef flats of both inner and outer barriers are similar. The external part of the reef flat on the outer barrier is covered mainly with corals of various growth forms (massive, digitate, or branching). The seagrass beds of both barriers are often interrupted by sandy areas where acroporids, pocilloporids, faviids, and *Millepora* grow. The back-reefs of both barriers are composed of sandy slopes colonized by large coral heads. The back-reef of the outer barrier has indented coral-built margins, sometimes descending by a series of steps toward the lagoon floor and colonized mostly by *Anacropora, Porites, Echinopora, Pachyseris*, and *Pectinia* (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).

- Dos Hermanas Islands

  Dos Hermanas Islands is situated 12-15 nautical miles (22-28 km) south of Gasan, Marinduque Island; under the municipal jurisdiction of Corcuera (Jones), Romblon, located at the southeast, $13^{o}1$'N latitude and $121^{o}54$'E longitude. The total area encompasses 54 ha with a maximum altitude of 70 m (Isabel Island); and maximum depth of fringing reefs 30+ meters.

  Dos Hermanas is a pair of islands two nautical miles (3.7 km) apart, oriented southwest. The larger westernmost island is Carlota; the other is Isabel. Both islands are flat-topped with coastal limestone cliffs approximately 30-40 feet (9-12 m) high.

  Carlota Island is bordered by a fringing reef which is steeply sloping except on the north side, where the island has a rocky beach and the reef slopes gently down to 20 fathoms (36 m). Isabel Island is ringed by a narrow fringing reef on all sides. At a distance of 1-2 km on the south and southwest of both islands are reef patches and white sand that slope gradually.

  Coral cover is good, ranging from 40-80%, with branching forms of *Acropora* sp. predominant. The reef slopes on the eastern side of both islands have abundant colonies of alcyonarians; off Carlota, there is an extensive community of stinging hydroids. On the western side of Carlota, where the coral cover is best, the reef slopes down to 2-33 m where encrusting and massive coral species predominate (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).

- El Nido

  El Nido is located in Bacuit Bay, on the northwest corner of Palawan Island, between Malampaya Sound to the south, and norhtern tip of Palawan, about 30 km to the north, $11^{o}00$'-$11^{o}15$'N latitude and $119^{o}15$'-$119^{o}20$'E longitude.

  Bacuit Bay covers approximately 150 km^2; depths within the bay gradually increase seaward to 40 m near the entrance; islands in the bay reach a maximum elevation of about 400 m while the mountains surrounding the bay reach to above 500 m.

The islands are surrounded by fringing reefs, and there are many reef patches. Reef flats in this area are generally exposed during extreme low tides, and have very low coral cover with silt and sand predominating. The reef edges have highest coral cover (which can approach 100% for sediment-resistant species) and this gradually decreased as the depth increases. In some areas, coral cover rapidly approaches zero at depths as shallow as 6 m. The bottom is composed of several meters of deep silt.

In the cleaner water of the central bay, patch reefs and reef flats are dominated by many species of *Montipora, Porites, Coeloceris, Favia, Echinopora* and *Goniastrea*. Coral diversity increases over the reef edge and down the slope to a point where sedimentation effects are again apparent and coral cover gradually declines to zero at 15 m depth.

Many of the reefs around the islands at the mouth of the bay have reef flats with 90% coral cover and sheer drop-offs to 50 m depth. Shallow reefs here have a very high diversity of *Acropora* with large table forms. On the reef slopes and walls, coral and fish diversities equal or surpass those found at more distant pristine sites such as Apo Reef or Tubbataha Reef. The fringing reefs along the outer islands generally have a narrow shelf-like reef flat and then a steep to sheer slope down to 30 m. In some areas, a second drop-off begins after a second shelf and drops to 70 m depth. In these areas large pelagic fish are common as well as large reef fish such as Napoleon Wrasse *Cheilinus undulatus* and groupers *Epinephelus* spp. Transects of wide reef areas have shown overall coral cover of approximately 30% (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).

- <u>Honda Bay</u>
  Honda Bay is a broad embayment (28,000 ha) off the Sulu Sea, dotted with 12 coral islands and lined with mangroves, located about 10 km north of Puerto Princesa, Palawan, 9°50'-10°N latitude and 118°44'-119°E longitude. Honda Bay has a complex basin geometry, and is shallower than 20 m all throughout.

  The fringing reefs have very wide and often shallow reef flats, frequently many times larger in area than the islands they surround. The exposed parts of these flats consist mostly of sand and coral rubble but the more enclosed areas may have mangroves. The submerged areas of the platforms may be barren or may be inhabited by corals such as *Porites, Acropora* and *Millepora*. On most flats, algal mats and seagrass beds are found in patches. The reef flats may reach 6 m depth but are usually around 1-3 m.

  Seaward of the flats are slopes and sometimes vertical but short drop-offs, as in Bush Island, Arrecife Island and Fondeado Island. The reef slopes are often gradual, reching 6-19 m depth or undetermined depth. Most of the slopes are sandy or rocky and overgrown by *Porites, Montipora, Acropora, Turbinaria* and *Fungia*, the soft corals *Sarcophyton, Lobophyton, Xenia, Anthelia* and *Dendronephthya,* gorgonians, whip corals, and sponges. Foliate forms of *Turbinaria, Pachyseris* and *Montipora* predominate in deeper areas. Coral cover was estimated at 40-63%. Soft coral cover is greater than hard coral cover. *Sarcophyton* and *Lobophyton* are the commonest soft corals, and *Porites, Acropora, Millepora, Turbinaria, Pachyseris* and *Montipora* are the commonest hard corals (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).

- Mactan Island
  Mactan Island is located on the eastern side of Cebu at 10°20'N latitude and 124°E longitude. The fringing reef consists of a reef flat, coral crest, and steep drop-off. The reef flat is composed of seagrasses and brown algae interrupted by low diversity patches of coral dominated by *Pavona*. The upper reef crest is dominated by *Montipora* colonies and exhibits a moderate diversity at its upward edge which increases in slightly deeper waters. The lower reef crest is dominated by *Porites* and some *Montipora* species. The reef wall supports a highly diverse fauna dominated by *Pavona*. The coral assemblage produces high evenness values and includes a broad variety of colony shapes and sizes (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- Moalboal/Pescador Island
  Moalboal sits in the midwest coast of Cebu Island along the Tañon Strait at 9°44'-10°N latitude and 123°20'-123°25'E longitude. It has a narrow fringing reef approximately 200 m wide. The reef flat extends 70-90 m from the shoreline to the crest with a slope of 70-90° at depths of 5-10 m. It is largely covered by rocks, rubble, sand and mostly by soft corals (*Lobophyton* and *Sarcophyton*) with few patches of hard coral colonies. The most common hard coral are the branching *Acropora* and non-*Acropora* such as *Seriatopora* and *Porites*. The crest is characterized by boulders, rock, rubble and colonies of live hard corals. Branching (*Porites*), massive and encrusting corals are dominant.

  Pescador Island is a coralline island situated in the Tañon Strait about 3 km off the coats of Moalboal. The reef surrounding the island is an oval-shaped fringing reef composed of a gradually sloping reef flat with an area of less than one ha to a depth of five meters and a steep slope deeper tha five meters. Pescador Reef is a mixture of hard and soft corals and inhabited by a wide variety of invertebrates and reef fishes (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- Puerto Galera Biosphere Reserve
  Puerto Galera is located in the extreme northern part of Mindoro Is., between 12°23'-13°32'N latitude and 120°50'-121°00'E longitude. The almost land-locked Puerto Galera Bay has three considerable coral communities referred to as the First, Second, and Third Plateaus. The coral condition on the reef flat appears to be poor although the sloping portions, with depths ranging from 7-15 m, are rich with reef-building corals. The massive and encrusting type of corals are found on these platforms called "plateaus."

  Of the three sites surveyed, the Third Plateau has the highest mean percentage of live coral cover at 33%. The other two have mean hard coral cover of 15% (First Plateau) and 18% (Escarceo Pt.). Out of the 32 coral genera observed in Puerto Galera, *Acropora*, and *Porites* are dominant. The deeper part of Escarceo Pt. (outside the

Bay) has the number of genera at 18 while the rest of the locations have around <13 coral genera based on line transect surveys.

It is also in Puerto Galera Bay where the first record of *Acropora puertogalerae* was first identified and described by Nemenzo in 1964. This species of *Acropora* thrives in unconsolidated substrates, such as silty sand, which characterizes the deeper portions of the First and Second Plateaus. *Acropora puertogalerae* are still prevalent in these areas (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- <u>Panglao Island</u>
  Panglao Island is located southwest of Tagbilaran City, the capital of Bohol, at 9 ^{o}35'N latitutde and 123 ^{o}34'E longitude. Panglao is a flat coralline island. The reef around the island is of fringing type, narrower in the northern and southeastern sides and spans several hundred meters at its widest southwest of the Panglao municipality. On the southwest is a wide reef that drops off adjacent to a navigational lane. The southeastern side is characterized by a long white sand beach and a gently sloping seabed with patches of corals interspersed with white sandy substrate.

  The reef flat extends 200 m from the shore and slopes at an angle of 40-85^{o} at 12-17 m depths. Tabulate *Acropora,* the fire coral *Millepora*, branching *Porites* and massive corals together with soft corals mostly *Lemnalia*) are common at Poblacion (southwest). The branching *Tubastrea* is the dominant coral growth at the drop-off in Bolod (southeast). Danao (south) hard corals are represented mostly by *Acropora*; branching, foliate, and massive *Porites*; foliate forms of *Echinopora* and *Montipora;* branching *Hydnophora* and massive *Millepora*. Branching *Acropora* and *Anacropora* and foliate and mushroom corals are dominant in Doljo (western tip; Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- <u>Sicogon Island</u>
  Located in the Visayan Sea about 10 km east of Estancia on mainland Panay, 53 km northwest of Carbin Reef, and 86 km northeast of Banago, Bacolod and Negros Occidental, 11^{o}25'-11^{o}28'N latitude and 123^{o}13'-123^{o}16'E longitude.

  Sicogon has an approximate land area of 6.0 km^2; c. 8.0 km^2 reef around the island. Depths immediately beyond the reef crest range from 22-31 m. From the study made by Silliman University Marine Laboratory, a fairly high coral species diversity was observed. Southeast of Tumaguin Islet, the dominant live corals are *Platygyra, Porites, Favia, Favites, Coeloseris, Symphyllia, Lobophyllia, Goniopora, Pocillopora, Acropora, Seriatopora* and *Millepora*. East of Siocogon, the coral community includes: *Porites, Platygyra, Heliopora, Favia, Favites, Symphyllia, Goniopora, Galaxea, Lobophylla, Acropora, Millepora* and *Hydnophora*. To the south at Gasang, soft corals, *Porites, Favia, Favites, Goniopora, Acropora, Montipora, Pavona, Millepora* and *Galaxea*, are dominant. Coral relief in all three areas ranges from a few centimeters to one meter from the bottom (UNEP/IUCN, 1988).

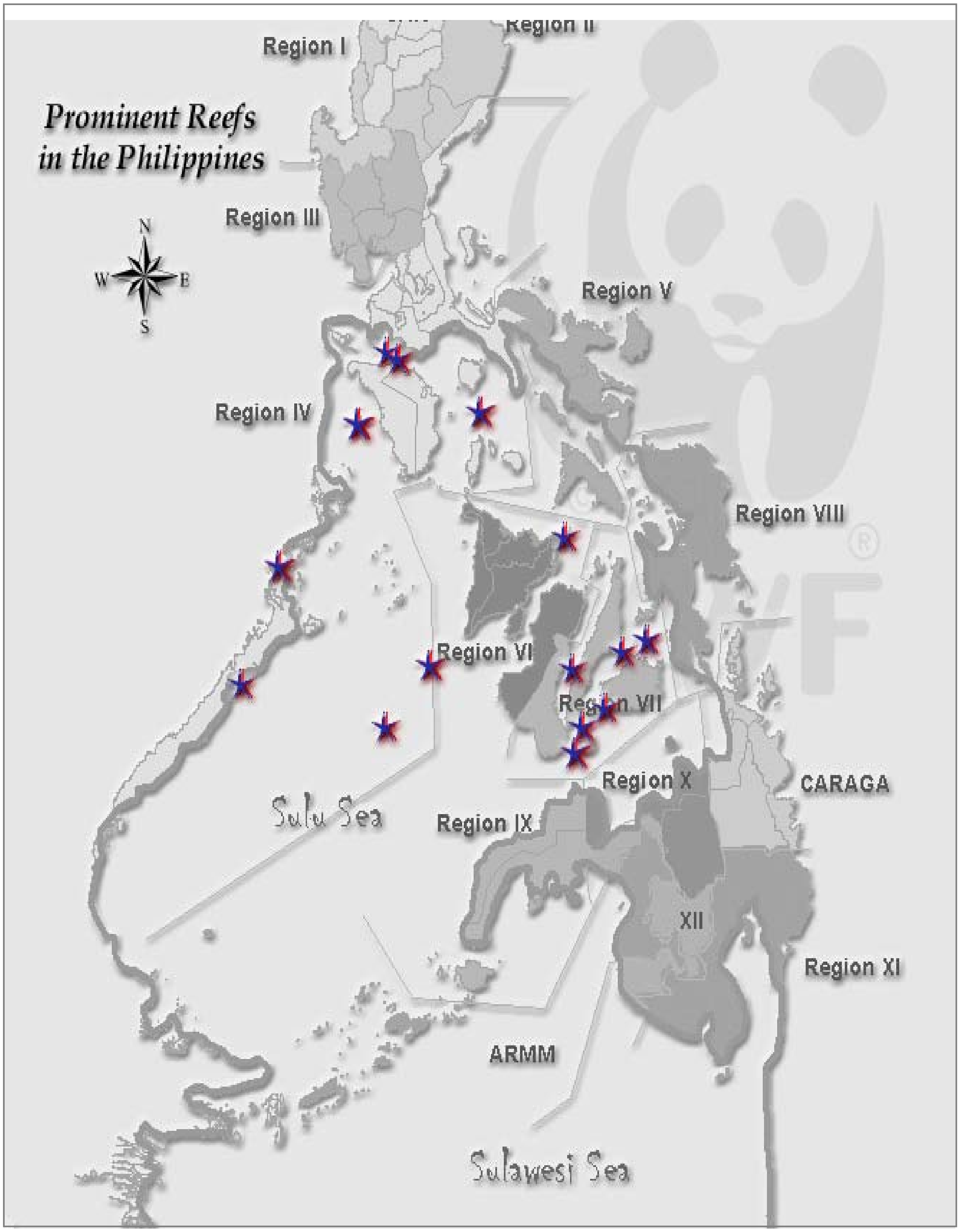


Figure 4.6 Prominent reef areas in the Philippines

- Sumilon Island

  Sumilon Island lies within the southern portion of Cebu Strait in between 9°25.80' and 9°26.17'N latitude and in between 123°23.13' and 123°23.43'E longitude. The total reef area of Sumilon, i.e., up to a depth of 40 m, is around 0.5 km^2. The reef crest of the island is separated from the shore by a reef flat of about 50 m wide in the western part and ~100-125 m wide in the eastern portion.

  A total are of 49 ha in the western part of the island is delineated as fish sanctuary. The reef slope in the sanctuary drops at an angle of 40-45°. Based on the 1996 survey conducted by DENR, live coral is estimated at 50% and considered to be in good condition as adopted from Gomez *et al*. (1994). Hard corals dominate the lower reef slope and soft corals are abundant in the upper portion of the reef.

  In the eastern portion of the island is the non-reserve zone, where fishers frequently fish. The reed in this area gradually slopes from 30-45°. Live coral cover is still in good condition. Highest cover of sand and rubble are observed in this area (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- Sombrero Island

  Sombrero Island is a small high island approximately 0.2 km along its north-south axis. It lies at the northeastern point of Maricaban Island, at 13°41.98'N latitude and 120°49.55'E longitude. On the north and south portions, the platform rounds downward into a gradual slope. On the west side, a platform approximately 0.2 km drops off shraply into a steep wall from approximately12-30 m. Much of the east side consists of a steep sand slope reaching from shore to over 30 m deep. The southeastern portion, however, supports a coral covered platform of 50-100 m in width prior to a steep drop-off with a diminishing coral cover to over 30 m in depth.

  Coral reef communities abound making the area among the best dive sites in the Batangas area although benthic cover is quite low at 7.8% within depths of 6-10 m. The corals belong to 45 genera dominated by *Acropora*. Above 10 m depth, corals include arborescent, corymbose, and caespitose *Acropora*, *Pocillopora,* and massive *Porites*. Below this depth corals include corymbose *Acropora*, encrusting *Montipora*, *Porites* and *Pachyseris* (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- Tubbataha Reefs

  Tubbatha Reef is 192 km southeast of Puerto Princesa City, Palawan. It is located within 8°43'-8 °57'N latitude and 119°48'-120 °3'E longitude almost at the center of the Sulu Sea, Philippines. The north atoll is approximately 10 nautical miles long and 3 nautical miles wide. Its reef flat is a continuous platform 200-500 m wide completely enclosing a sandy substrate 8-24 m deep. The reef flat terminates to a wall on the seaward side. On the other hand, the south atoll is 5 nautical miles long and 3 nautical miles wide. The drop-off reaches a depth of 40-60 m found at the seaward side.

> The coral community in the reefs includes 46 genera exhibiting diverse morphology. *Acropora, Porites, Millepora,* and *Pocillopora* have the highest percentage cover. Zonation is evident along the transition from the drop-off to the backreef. *Pachyseris, Leptoseris*, and *Montipora* commonly inhabit the deeper stretches of the drop-off while the *Porites* micro-atolls characterize the backreef. This distribution can be attributed to the different morphological types of each genus with its adaptation to the environment it inhabits (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

Based on surveys of reefs and coral communities in over 600 site-time combinations, information show that in the late 1970s, 5.3% of the reefs had excellent cover (at least 75% live coral cover). Licuanan and Gomez (2000) analyzed secondary data obtained from surveys conducted in the 1990s showing reefs with excellent coral cover is down slightly to 4.3%. It showed that 20% of the 245 sites had at least half of the corals already dead. Figures 4.7 to 4.10 show percent coral cover in various reef areas in the Philippines.

Databases on coral reefs show that the Visayas is the most "at risk," with the number of "excellent reefs" reduced to half its original number and the number of "good" reefs reduced to one third of the 1991 inventory (Licuanan and Gomez, 2000). Within the ecoregion, hermatypic corals predominate particularly the genera *Acropora, Porites, Pocillopora, Millepora, Montipora, Favia, Goniastrea,* and *Pavona*.

In addition to the corals within the reefs, a multitude of species are found inhabiting these highly productive areas. Numerous birds, fish species, marine mammals, and reptiles, all of which are of special concern, are found associated with the reefs. These will be further discussed in the subsequent chapter.

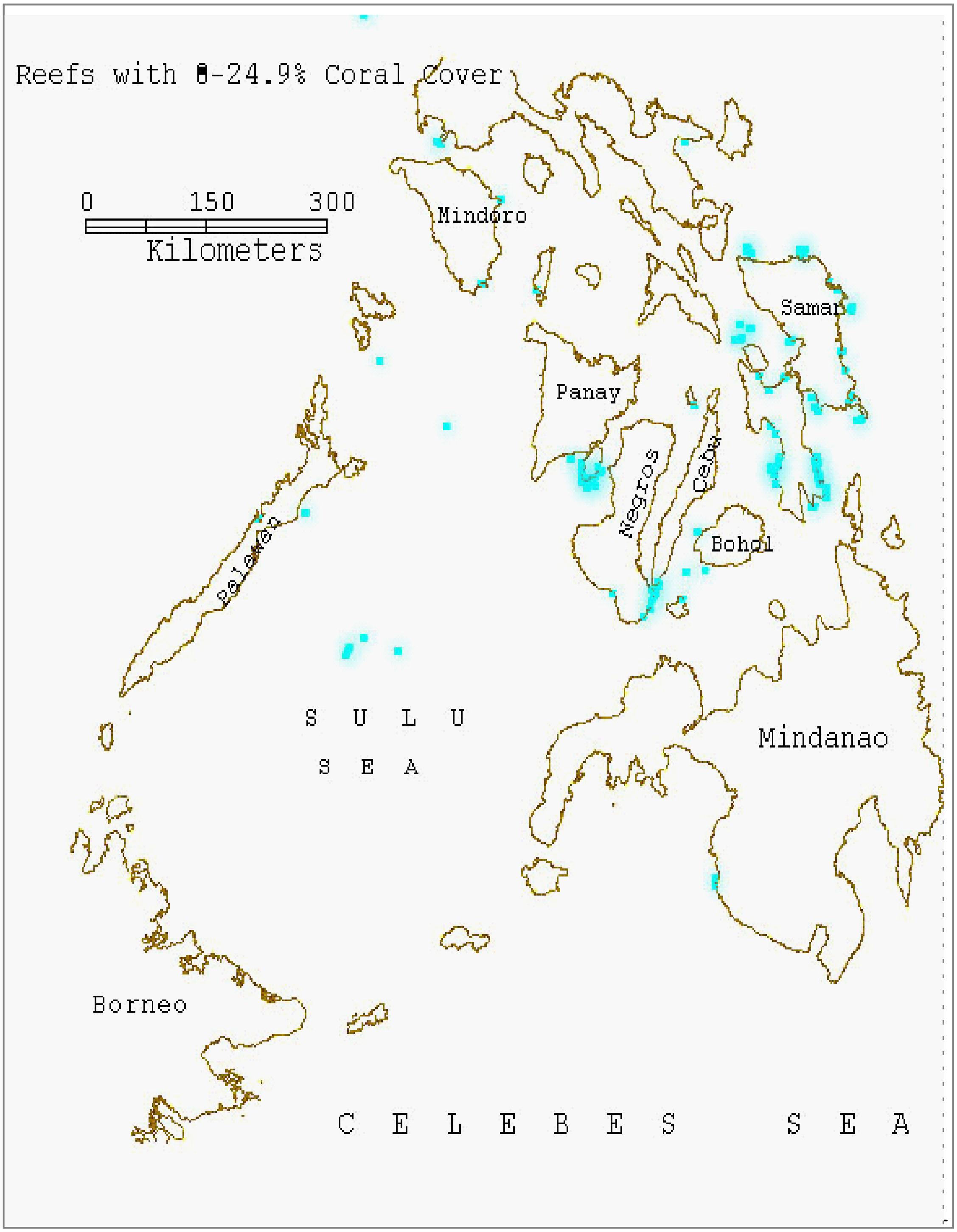


Figure 4.7 Reefs with 0-25% coral cover

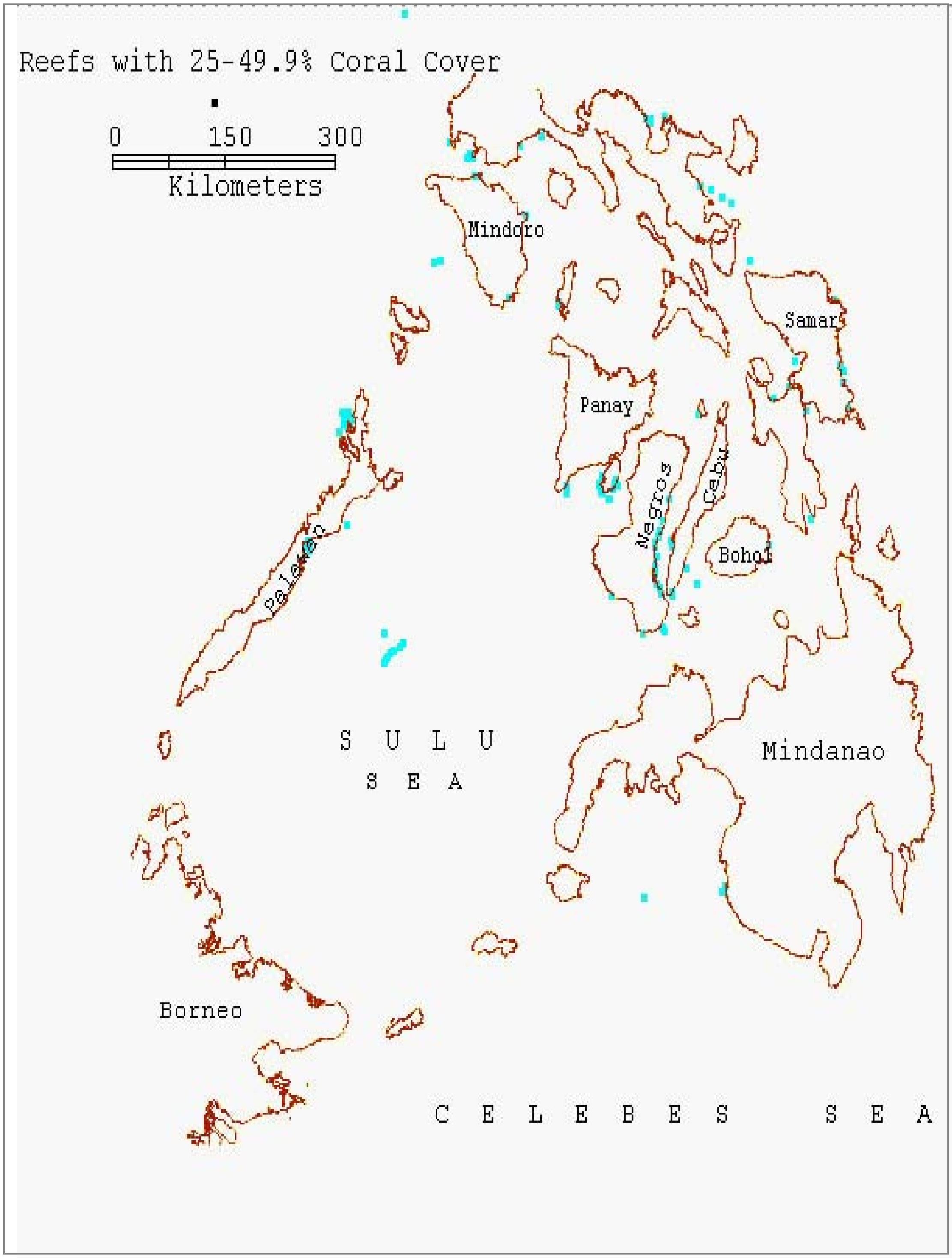


Figure 4.8 Reefs with 25-50% coral cover

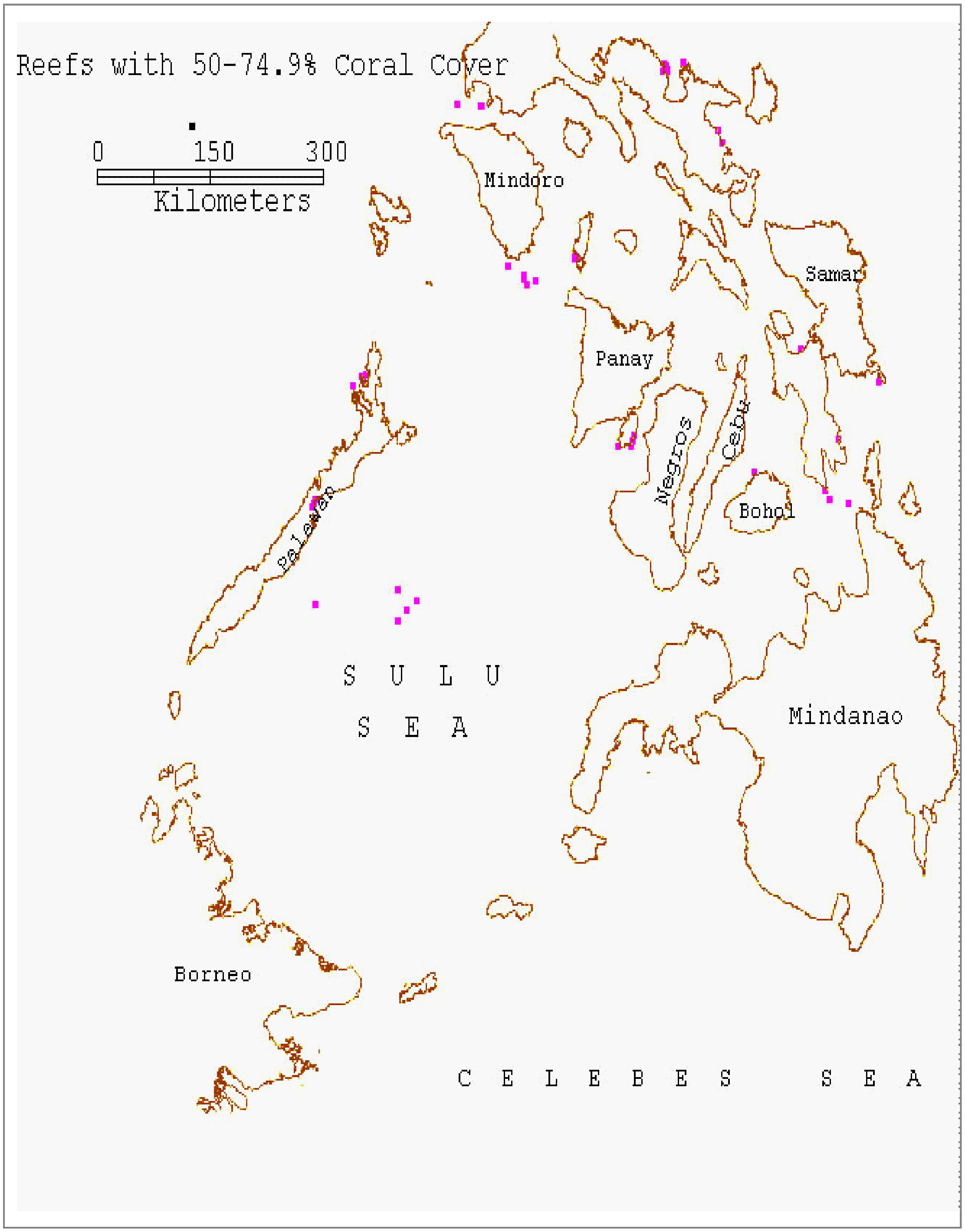


Figure 4.9 Reefs with 50-75% coral cover

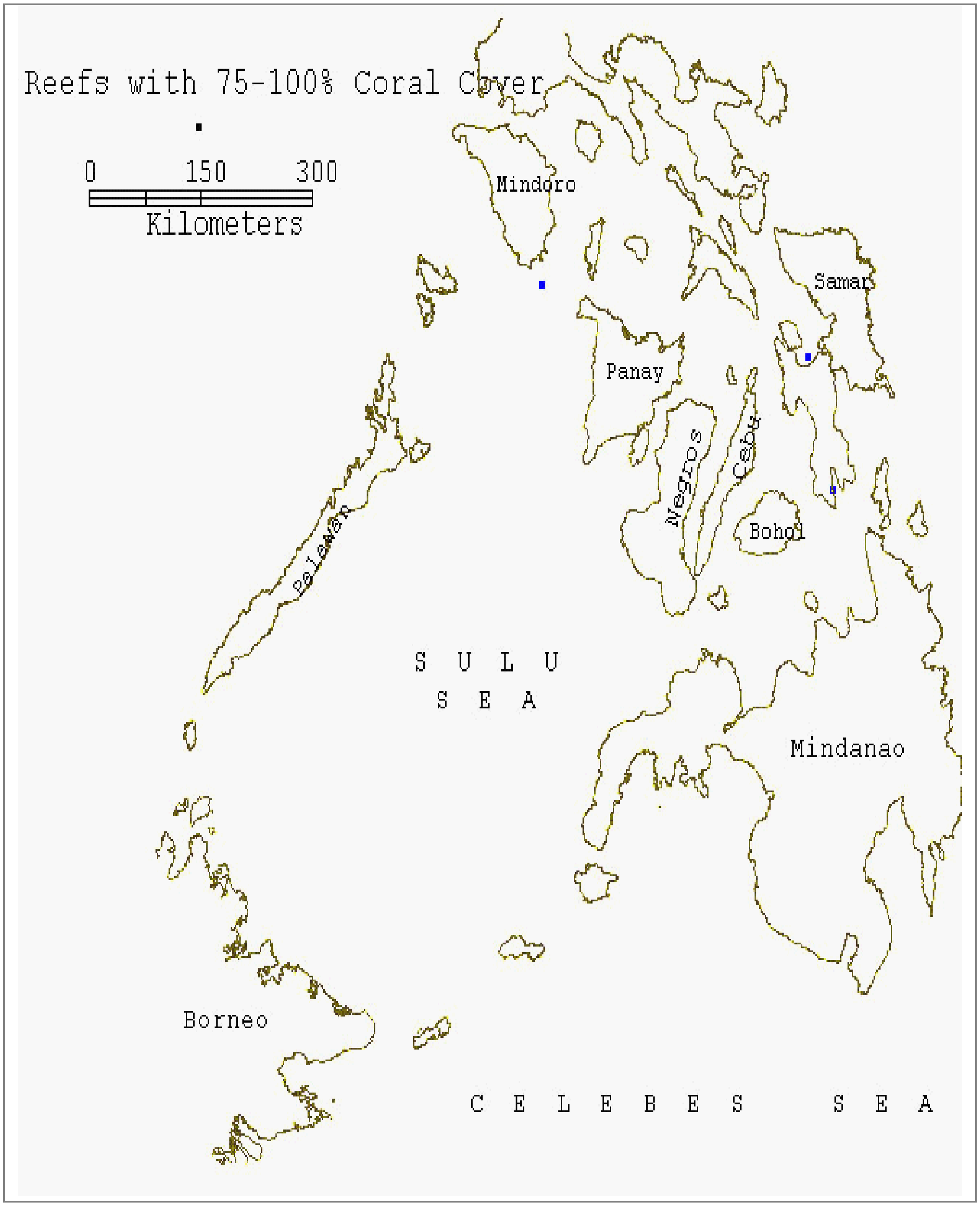


Figure 4.10 Reefs with 75-100% coral cover

ASSOCIATED REEF FISH COMMUNITIES

The Philippines, Indonesia and New Guinea have been recognized to harbor the greatest number of species of marine plants and animals in the world (Randall *et al.*, 1990). The Great Barrier Reef of Australia and the adjoining reefs of the Coral Sea registered the highest number of reef-associated fishes with 1,111 species and the Philippines come in second with approximately 1,030 species. Both areas are part of the Indo-Pacific region which constitute approximately 4,000 species (18%) of all living reef-associated fishes.

Aliño *et al.* (in prep.) listed 736 species of coral reef fish observed through underwater visual census in 19 sites in the Philippines. The area covered included 4 within the SSME, namely: Southern Luzon (402 species), the Visayan seas (271 species), Northern Mindanao (226 species), Sulu Sea (577) and Sulawesi Sea (214).

- <u>Southern Luzon</u>

  - Balayan Bay, Batangas
    Initial fish surveys in the early 80's using extensive underwater visual surveys and collection with rotenone reported 240 species, while visual census confined within line transects done in 1980 around the island resulted to 4,167 individuals identified to 168 species (McManus *et al.,* 1981). With the continued monitoring effort by the Marine Parks/Recerve Development Inter-Agency Task Force technical working group, a record of some 329 reef fish species were reported within the bay area (MPDITF-NRMC, 1982).

  - Apo Reef, Sablayan, Mindoro Occidental
    The survey conducted by the BFAR Coral Reef Research Team in 1982 reported some 385 fish species in 85 families (BFAR-CRRP, 1983). Transect surveys and reconnaissance dives were done on several portions of this semi-atoll, which was being proposed as a marine park under the MPDITF.

  - Calancan Bay and vicinities, Sta. Cruz, northern Marinduque
    Fish species recording was done through underwater visual census in four different artificial reef sites and in some nearby reefs already affected by mine tailings within and outside the bay). A total of 108 species were observed underwater. Fish catch composition were obtained from records of catch by different local fishing gear (fish corral, gill net, bottom lines, spear, and handline) and showed that 24.8% of the sample catch are reef fishes while 66.6% are mostly pelagic species (ITF-CBRP, 1991).

  - Ragay Gulf in Quezon and Camarines Sur
    Two fish sanctuaries are located within the Bay namely: Alibijaban and Acha Reef. Fish visual census resulted to 296 species under 18 families. Most dominant species are the labrids (wrasses), caesionids (fusiliers), pomacentrids (damselfishes), and chaetodontids (butterflyfishes). On the other hand, the pelagic and soft bottom species are among the dominant commercially caught fish

in the gulf. The pelagics include the sardines, anchovies, herrings, scads, mackerels and tuna-like species while the soft bottom species are the leiognathids (slipmouths), gerrids (mojarras), theraponids (tigerfish), synodontids (lizardfishes), mullids (goatfishes) and nemipterids (threadfin-bream). Whale sharks are commonly seen in the area during the northeast monsoon.

- Masbate
  Reef areas in the northwestern, northern, and northeastern portions of Masbate were surveyed by the UP-MSI through the UNEP-CITES project which were described to be mostly reef patches. A total of 112 fish species in 34 families were observed through underwater fish visual census. Wrasses were the most abundant in terms of biomass representing 23% of the total fish biomass in the area.

- Puerto Galera, Mindoro Oriental
  In the 1987-88 reef survey of Puerto Galera, Mindoro under the ASEAN-Australia Coastal Living Resources Project (CLRP), some 234 reef-fish species were recorded (Hilomen and Yap, 1991). Dominant species were those of the pomacentrids and labrids representing 50% of the total fish composition.

- <u>The Visayan Seas</u>

  - Sumilon Island Reserve, Cebu
    The upper reef zone of the reserve is haven for 142 fish species in 25 families while the lower reef zone is home for some 170 spp. in 28 families. Seven families are considered commercially important in the area, namely: caesionids, carangids, holocentrids, lutjanids, scombrids, serranids, and siganids. The white-tip reef shark is often sighted in the area with previous sightings of whale sharks, manta rays, and barracudas.

  - Olango and adjacent islands, Cebu
    This area is located east of Mactan Island, Cebu. The other adjacent smaller islands are Sulpa, Caohagan, Panganan and Camungi. Olango Island is a Wildlife Sanctuary. Fish visual census done by Silliman University Marine Laboratory recorded some 107 reef fish species under 23 families. Dominant species belong to the families Pomacentridae and Labridae. The commercially important food fish noted are surgeonfishes, fusiliers, emperor breams, snappers, goatfishes, parrotfishes and groupers. Some of the earliest collections of two species of the rare flashlight fish (*Photoblepharon* sp. and *Anomalops kaloptron*) were taken around this area by the BFAR Coral Reef Research Project (CRRP) in 1977 particularly in the drop-offs of Mactan Island (BFAR-CRRP pers. comm.).

  - Panglao Island, Bohol
    Recent fish census around the island reported some 109 fish species in 24 families with damselfishes and groupers as the most abundant. Local fishers often sight sharks and manta rays around Panglao. The nearby Cervera shoal is noted for its sea snakes while an adjacent island called Balicasag offers variety of reef fishes in

the drop-off portions which include some rare species of angelfishes and butterflyfishes.

- Sagay Marine Reserve, northern Negros Occidental
  This marine reserve started off as the first "municipal coral reef Park" in the Philippines (Castaneda and Miclat, 1981). It was officially declared as a fish sanctuary through Municipal Ordinance No. 59 series of 1983 and several years later as a marine reserve through Presidential Proclamation No. 592. Recent surveys of the two reef areas in Sagay, namely Macahulom and Carbin reefs, recorded 58 species of reef fishes (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.) which is not an impressive record for a marine reserve area.

- Danjugan Island Marine Reserve
  According to the survey conducted in 1995 by the Coral Cay Conservation Ltd. (CCC) and Philippine Reef and Rainforest Conservation Foundation, Inc. (PRRCFI), 450 species of fishes were recorded in the area (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

  In the nearby barangay Caliling, Cauayan is a CITES Project site called Hulao-Hulao Reef which was officially declared a marine sanctuary on June 1996. The survey recorded 22 families of finfish broken down to 115 species. Dominant species recorded are those of the damselfishes and wrasses. Around 33 target species belonging to the families of snappers, groupers jacks, emperor breams were observed in the area. Sightings of sharks and stingrays were also noted.

- Apo Island
  This small island in the southeastern coast of Negros Oriental was declared a municipal reserve through a municipal ordinance, and later a marine reserve and tourist zone by a proclamation and presently a protected landscape and seascape with another proclamation through the DENR. The 1991 survey in the area showed a record of 126 fishes (80% reef fishes and 20% non-reef fishes).

  Other sites with fish survey records with less significant fish species count include the areas of Bantayan Island, northern Cebu (73spp in 19 families); southwestern Cebu near Moalboal (55 spp in 15 families); Tulapos, Enrique Villanueva, Siquijor (76 spp in 19 families); Cang-alwang, Siquijor (117 spp in 26 families); Maribojoc Bay, southwestern Bohol (49 spp in 10 families); Bongalonan Marine Reserve, Basay, Negros Occidental (150 spp in 26 families); Dumaguete City waters, Negros Oriental (112 spp in 23 families); Bais Bay, Negros Oriental (62 spp in 18 families); Guimaras Island (129 spp in 24 families).

- Antique province
  During the fisheries resource assessment of coastal and marine waters of Antique province conducted in 1991-1992 by the Pacific Rim Innovation and Management Exponents (PRIMEX) team for the Antique Integrated Area Development (ANIAD) Foundation, some 196 fish species were recorded from catches by different gear (PRIMEX, 1993). On the other hand, the reef fish survey

conducted through underwater visual census accounted for a total of 171 species belonging to 32 families of which 70% represents the major species (pomacentrids, labrids, acanthurids and others), 19% target species (serranids, lutjanids, haemulids, carangids, caesionids); and 11% indicator species (chaetodontids).

SEAFDEC-AQD in Tigbauan conducted a more detailed study of one of the islands called Malalison, which was recommended for a marine sanctuary site for Antique under the ANIAD Program. Species recorded through underwater visual census from seven permanent transect stations established around the island numbered to 238 species in 34 families during the period 1994-1995 (Aliño *et al.*, in prep.).

- Northern Mindanao

  - Baliangao Marine Sanctuary
    Located in Danao Bay in the northern part of Misamis Occidental. An initial survey in 1993 by the DENR, some 48 fish spp were recorded and the re-survey of the area after one year showed an increase in species count to 75.

  - Iligan Bay
    Iligan Bay covers three provinces, namely: Misamis Occidental, Lanao del Norte and Misamis Oriental. For the seven sites surveyed by the Mindanao State University (MSU) Naawan in the southern and eastern portion, some 175 fish species in 29 families were recorded. The study showed damselfishes dominant in the area followed by serranids, wrasses, cardinalfishes, and sea catfishes. On the other hand, the western portion including Murcielagos Bay recorded about 175 spp in 28 families. Within the Bay is the Initao Marine Park that is managed under the DENR-PAWB protected landscape and seascape (PLS) program. A survey conducted in 1994 indicated some 106 spp of reef fishes under 33 families.

  - Misamis Oriental
    Other areas in Misamis Oriental with reef fish inventories are Jasaan in Macajalar Bay with 132 species in 26 families; Agutayan Island, located north of Jasaan with 192 species in 31 families; and Camiguin Island, north of Macajalar Bay with 153 species in 31 families. Surveys were also conducted in the northern coastal waters between Macajalar and Gingoog bays, which yielded a total of 149 species in 26 families.

- Sulu Sea

  - Palawan (Northwestern and Northeastern, Tubbataha Reefs and outlying areas)
    The three-year work on marine fishes of Schroeder (1980) in the Western Sulu Sea, recorded 525 species representing 105 families. The study and collection of fish specimens were carried out in the inshore waters of Puerto Princesa, Roxas,

Balabac Island (the far western Sulu Sea) and at the Cagayan Islands (north central Sulu Sea).

In the Central Sulu Sea, the Tubbataha National Marine Park has been extensively studied through scientific expeditions since the early 1980s. A month-long survey conducted by the marine park inter-agency task force technical working group (NRMC, BFAR, and UP-MSC) under the auspices of the then Ministry of Natural Resources (MNR) now the Department of Environment and Natural Resources (DENR), resulted to a record of some 379 fish species under 40 families. These fishes were mostly coral reef-related species including the larger species of sharks, barracudas, manta rays, jacks, Spanish mackerel, and tunas thriving in and around the two atolls comprising the Tubbataha Reefs (NRMC *et al.*, 1983).

The 1992 studies conducted in Tubbataha Reefs by Earthwatch Expedition accounted for 226 fish species in Tubbataha, the list of which is published in Arquiza and White (1994). A more recent fish survey by the same group acounted for more than 400 spp. Alcala (1993) reported that Tubbataha Reefs is an important site for the study of larval dispersal in the Sulu Sea. The area is believed to be the "spawning and breeding ground of many reef and pelagic species, which provide a good source of planktonic larvae of reef fishes which may re-stock the fisheries of the Sulu Sea".

- Turtle Islands Heritage Protected Area (South Sulu Sea)
  A total of ten islands comprise the Turtle Islands Group located in the southern portion of Sulu Sea northeast of Sandakan, Malaysia. Seven islands belong to the Philippines (Great Bakkungan, Taganak, Baguan, Langaan, Sibaung, Boaan, and Lihiman) while three belong to Malaysia (P.Selingaan, P. Bakkungan Kechil and P. Gulisaan). Reef fish visual census in conjunction with coral reef survey was conducted by KKP in 1997, which resulted to a record of 155 species in 25 families (SEASTEMS, 1998c). The study indicates that plankton feeding (planktivores) and fish eating (piscivores) species dominate reef fishes of the Turtle Islands. A summary of fish inventory in the Sulu Sea as reported in Aliño *et al.* (in prep.) indicates about 577 species.

- <u>Sulawesi Sea</u>

  - Davao Gulf
    Three sites within Davao Gulf were surveyed by the MSU-Naawan in 1996 to gather baseline information on reef assessment. These were Marisa Uno Reef near Samal Island, Sigaboy Island off Governor Generoso, Davao Oriental, and Tinaytay and Burias reefs on the coast of San Isidro, also of Davao Oriental. Reef fish species count of the sites were 108 spp, 106 spp, and 105 spp, respectively.

  - Moro Gulf
    Illana Bay, which comprises most of the coastal waters of Zamboanga del Sur, is located in the northern portion of Moro Gulf. Two sites within the Bay were

surveyed namely: Calibon Pt. and Daodao Island, which resulted to 147 reef fish species belonging to 31 families.

- Sarangani Bay
  In a survey conducted by Dames Moore in Sarangani Bay in 1992, the fish underwater censuses conducted in 21 sites indicate that, areas which are not fished, tend to have larger fish individuals representing most of the families. While those reefs that were heavily fished have less presence of predator species (e.g., snappers and groupers) if and when present are less in number and are smaller in size. In general, most fish were small with very few species of commercial value except for three sites located at the mouth of the Bay where large schooling jacks, rainbow runners and snappers were observed. The number of species from the 28 stations ranged from 17-61. Dominant species include those of the pomacentrids, labrids and acanthurids.

Importance

ECONOMIC BENEFITS

- Coral trade
  International trade in ornamental corals, shells, sea turtles and other coral reef organisms flourished in the 1970s. Tons of the corals and reef-associated organisms were extracted yearly for export to other countries mostly in the United States. The volume of coral export reached 1.8M m^3 of corals annually (White and Cruz-Trinidad, 1998.)

- Reef fisheries
  Intact reefs serve as habitats for numerous invertebrates and reef associated fishes. Economically, these highly productive areas provide livelihood to millions of Filipino fishers. Fishery products from reef areas include not only food but export products as well as extracts for pharmaceutical purposes.

- Live fish trade
  The live fish industry started to flourish in the late 1970s, specifically the aquarium fish trade. However, due to the poor method of collection, mainly with the use of cyanide, the Philippines was one of several countries banned by importing countries. This started the decline in the once vigorous trade.

  The live-fish trade mostly for table food started in the late 1960s and continue to flourish. The most common target species is the *Plectropomus leopardus* and other species of a lesser degree such as grouper, rock lobsters, stonefish and others. In 1996, about 840 tons were exported from the Philippines.

- Tourism revenues

  Reef areas are the favorite tourist destinations for snorkeling, skin diving, scuba diving, and underwater photography. The pristine waters, magnificent beaches, and underwater diversity are the main attractractions for foreign as well as local visitors. Revenues from tourism alone bring in millions of dollars to the country giving locals a source of income.

White and Cruz-Trinidad (1998) made a conservative estimate of revenue from tourist arrival in Panglao, Bohol. The revenue from entrance fees alone was estimated at over US$ 26,000.

ECOLOGICAL SIGNIFICANCE

Coral reefs rival that other great tropical community, the rain forest, in their majesty, richness, and complexity. But in terms of abunance of readily observable animal life, even the mighty rain forest takes a back seat. They are easily the richest and most complex of all marine ecosystems. Coral reefs are such massive structures that they must be considered not only biological communities but geological structures, the largest geological features built by organisms.

Coral reefs, despite being notoriously low in nutrients, harbor a super abundance of life and provide habitats for various plant and animal species. They serve as nurseries and feeding grounds for juveniles and home to demersal as well as some pelagic species. The numerous mirohabitats and the huge number of species is a direct reflection of the opportunities afforded by this environment. A single coral head may contain more than a hundred species of worms and a numerous assortment of other organisms! Symbiotic relationships are also extremely common, thus, favoring the coexistence of a multitude of organisms.

The coral's associate zooxanthellae provide the vital first step in the coral reef food chain. Many reefs also supply larvae and gametes to nearby sink areas where they grow and proliferate. In this manner, diversity is maintained not just within a locality but throughout the entire region. But why is it so important to maintain diversity? Simply put, a more diverse ecosystem is a more stable one, just as there is strength in numbers. Though diversity is more than just a game of numbers, but also of types.

As mentioned earlier in this section, reef areas in the Philippines serve as the center of biodiversity in Southeast Asia. Within SSME, particularly in Central Visayas, Panglao in Bohol, Negros Oriental, and selected areas in Mindanao where coral reefs are still in relatively good condition, biodiversity is maintained. Other noteworthy sources of larvae and gametes are the Tubbataha Reef National Marine Park, The Apo Island Reserve, and various marine protected areas in the region.

Threats and Issues

ANTHROPOGENIC SOURCES

The main sources of threats to coral reefs are human-induced. Among the most pressing issues are:

- Destructive fishing methods

  - *Use of poisonous substances*
    The use of cyanide in the collection of aquarium fish started in the 1950s and presently continues to a lesser extent. Figure 4.11 idicates the reefs where cyanide fishing is practiced. The drop in this practice is due to the decline in the demand for aquarium fish from the Philippines, mostly caused by the notoriety by which the fish are captured. However, the use of cyanide for catching live fish for table food has increased over the years (Pratt *et al*., 2000). The coral trout *Plectropomus leopardus* is the most commonly targetted species in the live reef fish food trade (Pratt *et al*., 2000). Fisheries specialists foresee overexploitation of this species should the current practice continue.

  - *Blast fishing*
    Beause the number of blast fishers have been reported to decrease in recent years, coral communities are slowly recovering. But due to the intense damage wrought in most reefs (Figure 4.12), recovery will take some time. One simulation study indicated that 30% reduction in the current level of destructive fishing activities would allow slow recovery of corals and gradually enhance biodiversity (Alcala, 2000).

  - *Other destructive fishing methods*
    Trawling, "muro-ami" and the use of non-selective fishing gears are among the most common problems that amplify coral reef destruction. Since a large volume of fish are caught at one time, depletion of fish stocks are feared to ensue. Besides overfishing of food fish, "by-catch" has scaled up at an alarming rate. These fish, which are either juveniles or non-consumable species, only end up as waste.

- Habitat destruction
  Habitat destruction results from various causes such as high sediment load, destructive fishing methods, and pollution generated by households (domestic wastes) and industrial operations. Land conversion and deforestation from upland areas are pointed out to be the ultimate source of marine habitat destruction.

  Pollution incidents such as major oil spills also contribute to the destruction of coral reefs. Chronic spills along ports and harbors and from motorized *banca* also pose a risk to the survival of coral communities.

NATURAL SOURCES

Besides the glaring effect of human-induced threats to coral reefs, natural phenomena also factor out. Among the most notable cases are:

- Coral bleaching episodes

    Six bleaching reports were documented from 1980 to 1997 in Bolinao, Pangasinan, Northern Luzon. Arceo *et al*. (1999) documented the bleaching and mortality of corals due to elevated sea surface temperatures (SSTs). In 1999, Arceo *et al*. using coral bleaching report forms, video transect surveys and NOAA's satellite data, documented for the first time in the Philippines a mass bleaching event. Elevated SSTs that surpassed the upper thermal limits of corals were suspected as the major cause of bleaching. Analyses of before and after bleaching episodes showed that live coral cover significantly decreased (0.7% to 46%) while dead coral cover significantly increased (3% to 49%).

- "Crown-of-thorns" outbreak

    Crown-of-thorns outbreaks have been reported in different parts of the country over the last 20 years. In 1998, the Cebu-Bohol area was badly affected, while in 2000 eastern Palawan was severely devastated by the onslaught. This sea star can destroy a significant amount of living hard corals by covering the coral colony with its stomach and digesting away the live coral tissue. Much is yet to be studied about the factors that trigger these outbreaks.

Resource Management

LEGISLATIONS

National legislations were passed during the 1970's including the coral ban, and environmental laws defining limits to industrial discharges such as mine tailings. Setting maximum allowable limits to specific parameters in the water allowed the maintenance and protection of good water quality that translates to better conditions for corals and associated flora and fauna to thrive.

Ordinances promulgated by local government units (LGU) have tremendously promoted the protection of coastal areas. These include support for national legislation and the local implementation of environmental and fishery laws.

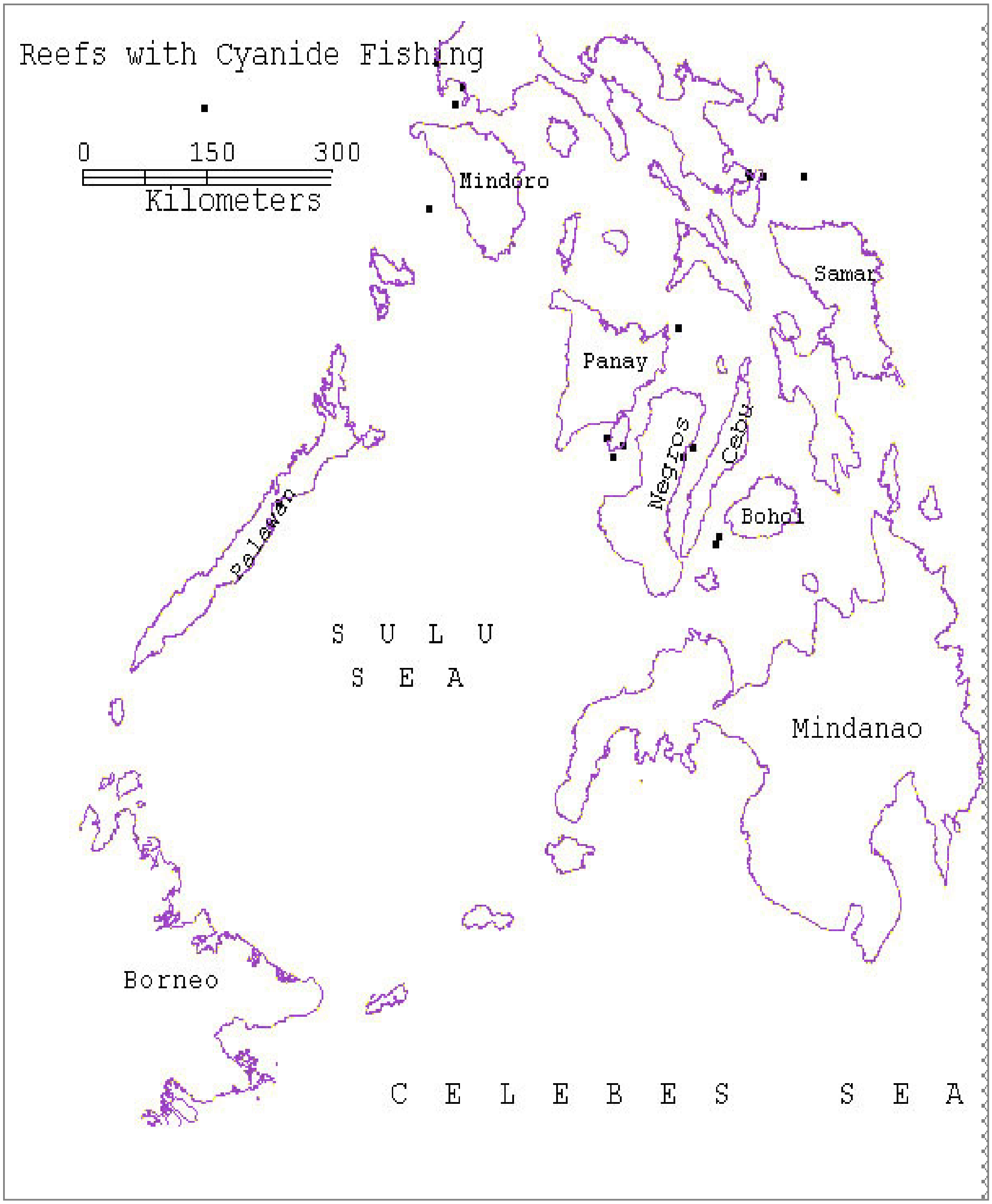


Figure 4.11 Reefs where cyanide fishing is practiced

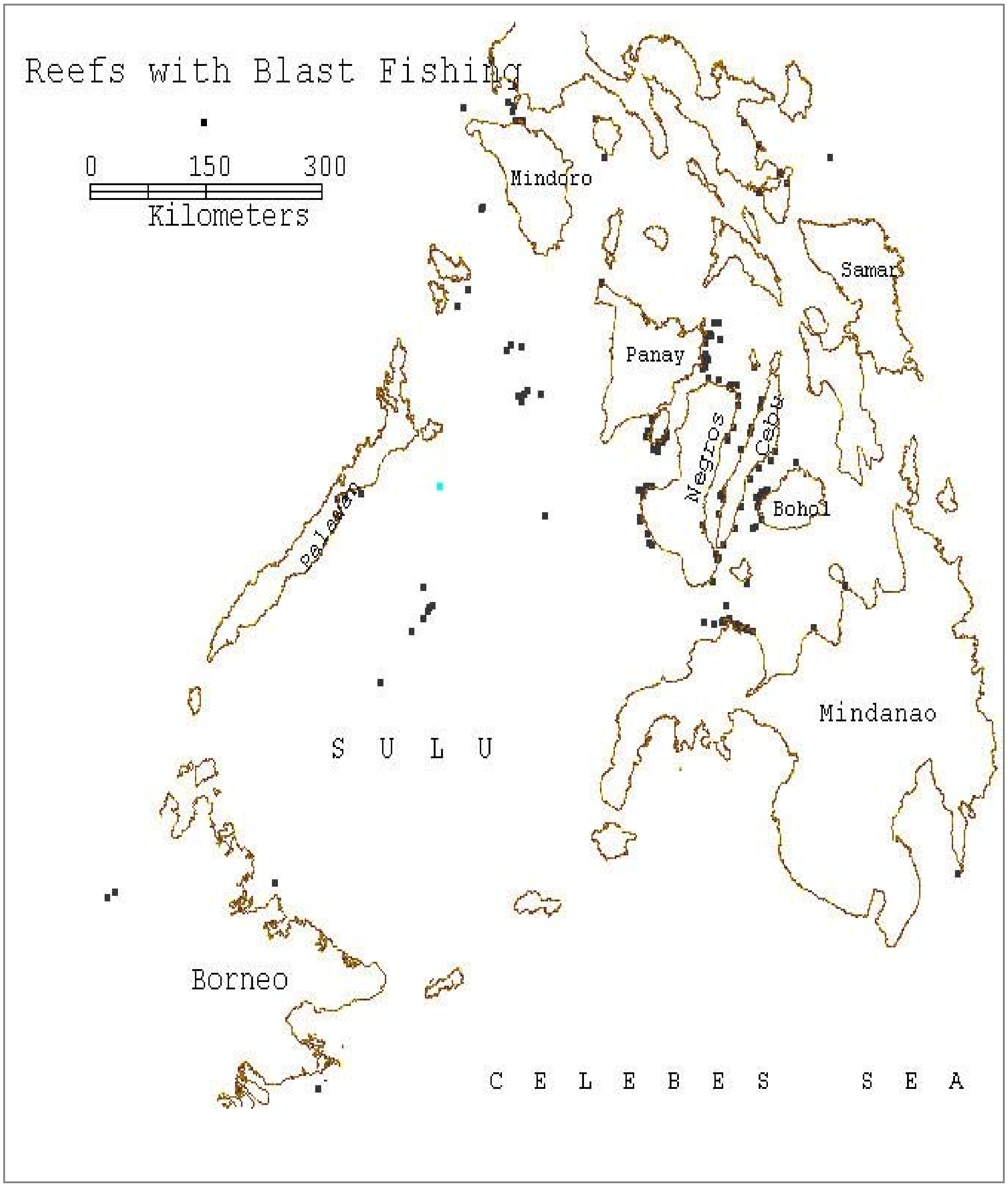


Figure 4.12 Reefs where blast fishing is praticed

MARINE PROTECTED AREAS

The declaration of coral reefs as Marine Protected Areas (MPAs) was initiated by the LGUs. Over 700 MPAs are now recorded in the country but less than 10% are being effectively managed (Aliño *et al*., 2000).

The proclamation of the Tubbataha Reef National Marine Sanctuary as a World Heritage Park have resulted in greater awareness of the need to protect the country's marine resources. It also called the attention of conservationists worldwide to intensity conservation efforts to protect these highly valuable resources. Many more MPAs have been designated nationwide with the participation of local communities.

RESTORATION EFFORTS

Because of the escalating stress mounted upon our coral reefs, the rate of its destruction is increasing alarmingly. There is, thus, an urgent need to save the few intact reefs we have and restore the ones that have been ruined.

Several institutions like the Marine Science Institute (MSI) in Central Luzon and Silliman University (SU) in the Visayas have set up programs to restore reefs within their respective areas. Where coral recruitment was once the prolific mode of rehabilitation, recently coral transplantation has gained popularity in refurbishing damaged reefs. Although still in the experimental stage, MSI together with the Philippine Tourism Authority (PTA) and the Bureau of Aquatic Research (BAR), has been transplanting corals in Padre Burgos, Quezon and the Hundred Islands and Bolinao in Pangasinan.

IV. THE SOFT BOTTOM ECOSYSTEM

Flordeliz Guarin, Hildie Maria E. Nacorda, and Johanna Pe-Montebon

Very little published information was found on this subject although the soft bottom communities are included in studies such as resource assessments for coastal management and environmental impact assessments.

Benthic Faunal Assemblages

A resource assessment conducted in Panguil Bay's soft bottom communities show the predominance of meiobenthic over the macrobenthic fauna (FSP, undated b). The meiobenthic fauna was composed of the following: nematodes, copepods, polychaetes, turbellaria, ostracods, oligochaetes, amphipods, shrimp larvae, crab larvae, kinorhynchs, and tardigrades. The macrobenthic fauna include young crabs, lingula larvae, bivalves, gastropods and bigger nematodes. Additional macrobenthic fauna such as juvenile and adult shrimps, crab megalopae, juveniles of demersal fishes, polychaetes, echinoderm juveniles and adults were found using different sampling equipment.

The meiofaunal population using cored samples showed 45,465 individulas per 0.1 m^2 while 510 individuals per 0.1 m^2 were found for the macrofauna. For the Ockelman sledge, the mean abundance varied in nearshore (2 to 1, 629 individuals per 300 m^2) and in the offshore areas (26 to 73 individuals per 300 m^2).

Monsoons were found to affect the biomass of both the meio and macrofauna where the highest biomass for macrofauna was during the northeast monsoon. The nearshore stations were organically richer than the offshore stations. Grain size distribution and the monsoons are believed to affect the total mean population densities of both meio and macrofauna.

A similar study was conducted on soft bottom communities in Carigara Bay. The dominant species are nematodes, clams, oysters and sipunculids. Table 4.7 presents the list of meiofauna found in Carigara Bay (FSP, 1994).

Importance

Meiofaunal organisms serve as important food sources of larger organisms, many of which are economically important species. Thus, the loss of these species could have profound ecological and economic effects. Being sedentary they also bioaccumulate certain heavy metals such as mercury, cadmium, etc, thus they serve as excellent biological indicators.

Benthic sediments are sites of processes important to the functioning of marine ecosystems. Dead organic matter accumulates at those sites, where it becomes subject to microbial decomposition. This degradation requires a supply of oxygen and leads to a release of nutrients to the overlying water. The diffusive sublayer of the benthic boundary layer presents a barrier to the downward flux of oxygen and the upward flux of nutrients (Mann and Lazier, 1996).

Table 4.7 Meiofaunal communities in Cariga Bay (1994)

Phylum	**Common name**
Annelida Class Polychaeta	Segmented worms, common worms
Arthropoda Class Crustacea	Shrimps, crabs, lobsters
Mollusca Class Bivalvia Class Gastropoda	Snails, slugs, clams, oysters Clams Snails
Cnidaria/ Coelenterata	Jellyfishes, anemones, corals
Nemertea/Rhynchocoela	Marine bottom dwelling worms
Chaetognatha	Arrow worms
Brachiopoda	Free swimming crustaceans
Priapulida	Worm-like marine animals
Sipunculida	Unsegmented worms
Platyhelminthes	Flatworms
Nematoda	Roundworms
Echinodermata	Sea stars, brittle stars, sand dollar, etc.
Chordata	Amphioxus

Threats

ANTHROPOGENIC FACTORS

Human activities almost always leave lasting impacts in the ecosystem. For soft-bottom communities these include:

- accumulation of organic matter and silt due to waste dumping,
- excessive river runoff,
- stirring of shallow benthic areas due to destructive fishing methods such as trawling and dredging.

Due to their sedentary nature, benthic organisms are susceptible to contamination from silt and sediments. They could be directly buried by large sized grains such as those from mine tailings or dredged spoils dumped in coastal areas. During construction of development projects, fine silt can affect the filter feeding mechanisms of benthic organisms, which can cause lower productivity or disrupt reproductive functions.

Coastal developments result in either temporary or permanent loss of habitat and the elimination of sensitive organisms. Building of ports and harbors cause the alteration of the habitat.

NATURAL DISTURBANCES

Two types of natural disturbances that affect meiofaunal populations are the following: (1) disturbances caused by currents and wave action and (2) alteration of grain size by animal activities. These can have profound effects on the sizes of meiofaunal communities and the species comprising them.

V. MARINE PLANKTON AND ECOSYSTEM LINKAGES

Rudolf Hermes and Flordeliz Guarin

Plankton are small drifting organisms, some of which are able to swim actively, but not against strong currents. This group is comprised of tiny plants (phytoplankton), animals (zooplankton) and other microorganisms (fungi and bacterioplankton). The separation from nekton, especially in view of the planktonic early life history stages (distinguished as "meroplankton" from the "holoplankton"), is not clearly defined. Plankton represent essential links or trophic levels in the marine food webs and is part of the very critical early life history stages, as eggs and larvae, of the vast majority of marine organisms.

Phytoplankters are the primary producers in tropical waters, producing biomass and generating oxygen through photosynthesis. The primary consumers are the herbivorous zooplankton that graze upon the phytoplankton. Very important zooplankton are copepods and other small crustaceans that serve as food for planktivorous fish, and jellyfish (that feed upon planktonic fish eggs and larvae). Planktivorous small fish are the secondary consumers in the marine ecosystem.

Only relatively few planktonic organisms are directly the object of fisheries. In some regions of the Philippines, e.g. the Samar Sea, the jellyfish are harvested commercially for export as processed food. The fisheries for a small sergestid crustacean and the fry of the fish of the goby family, in certain estuarine areas are further examples of regionally important plankton fisheries. Milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) fry fisheries and the capture of shrimp larvae constitute a special case of plankton harvest with subsequent aquaculture activity.

Dynamics and Linkages

PLANKTON IN TROPICAL OCEANS

The critical factor determining primary production in tropical oceans in general is not availability of light, but rather the rate of supply of nutrients. Nutrients are almost continuously present but usually at very low concentrations. Coastal influences even at some distance offshore, local climate, terrestrial run-off, local upwelling, and other factors such as local gyres or internal waves, which could be responsible for on-shelf transport of nutrients, can all influence productivity and even simulate a seasonal cycle.

In the nearshore coastal areas, phytoplankton production is enhanced through increased nutrient availability due to coastal enrichment and faster regeneration. "Land-mass" effects include the input of nutrients and trace metals, but also of organic factors such as humic acids and other bacterial products. This nutrient supply, together with other physical, chemical and biological factors, is subject to extreme variations in shallow tropical waters. Primary production rates of 1500 mgC/m^3/day (200-300 gC/m^2/yr) have been measured at the surface in the coastal Indian Ocean.

Sudden increases in production and blooms are at best shortlived and follow pulses of increased nutrient supply (run-off after heavy rains or increased turbulent mixing due to monsoonal winds or typhoons). In recent years, there are indications of more frequent harmful algal blooms that pose serious public health issues and entail major economic losses. In areas adjacent to the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas, these are almost exclusively caused by the thecate dinoflagellate *Pyrodinium bahamense* var. *compressum.*

As can be expected, breeding cycles of marine organisms tend towards a pattern such that larvae or meroplankton are more abundant when nutritional conditions are favorable. This often coincides with the spring season in higher latitudes. There are indications that breeding periods are also fairly specific for tropical benthic animals though reproductive periods may be extended. The main characteristics of warm waters is that different benthic species breed at different times, the period ranging over most of the year, so that at any time a considerable abundance of meroplanktonic larvae may be found in neritic waters- and further offshore- in contrast to the observations for temperate seas. Lunar periodicity and monsoonal influences are also known to play a role in meroplankton abundance and breeding cycles.

Meroplankton such as crab, shrimp and polychaete larvae, may be particularly significant in coral reefs and atolls. Overall abundance is known to undergo diurnal variations, with swarms of ostracods and other epibenthic forms dominating during nighttime. Zooplankton drifting across a reef can be depleted significantly by the various reef predators, most prominently the coral polyps themselves.

Open ocean plankton is known to include meroplankton (Raymont, 1983). Typical examples are among decapod crustaceans such as the phyllosoma larvae of lobsters, which remain drifting for more than two months. They appear to be able to delay metamorphosis when occurring over great depths. Such ability would increase the chances of survival and successful settlement. They share this characteristic with other species over a wide range of invertebrate taxa, e.g. cirriped crustaceans, bivalve mollusks, and polychaetes, but little is known about the physical, chemical and biological factors controlling the acceleration or delay in metamorphosis. Transport of larvae by currents across marginal seas such as the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas and much larger distances is therefore entirely possible. However, the fact remains that meroplankton remains near the coast, and only a small percentage of the stragglers swept offshore will survive.

Among the tropical ichthyoplankton the characteristic leaf-like leptocephalus larvae of anguilliform fishes is the best-known example of an extended duration of larval period. In the span of two weeks, a drifting fish larva can be transported almost 1000 km by currents at the moderate speed of 2 knots.

PLANKTON IN THE SSME

The Sulu and Sulawesi Seas which are bordered by major islands with important river systems (particularly on the island of Borneo) have in general a much higher primary productivity (250-300 $gC/m^2/yr$) than the open tropical ocean. This primary productivity would translate into a secondary production of 200-300 mgC/m^3. One of the early references on the plankton of the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas confirms that a distinct seasonal change in the abundance of zooplankton occurs with an appreciable increase from spring to summer (Raymont, 1983).

Recent studies at the University of the Philippines Marine Science Institute (UPMSI) and collaborating insitutions on the influence of the South China Sea on Philippine shelf reef systems investigated nutrient characteristics and quantified depth-integrated primary productivity rates in the Sulu Sea as 195 $gC/m^2/yr$. This value is slightly higher than those measured for both the oceanic and shoal areas of the South China Sea (San Diego-McGlone *et al*., 1999a).

A study conducted by UPMSI addressed the effect of internal waves, a fortnightly occurrence due to topography and tidal currents (Apel *et al*., 1985), on the potential larval transport within Sulu Sea. It was found that the relative strength of the lead wave affects the distribution and densities of plankton, causing meroplankton accumulation. It was concluded that the internal wave may be an important transport mechanism for larvae and could contribute to the enhancement of shelf productivity (Juinio-Menez *et al*., 1999).

Ongoing studies on plankton within the SSME are in areas between Tubbataha Reef and the eastern coast of Palawan (Juinio-Menez *et al*., 1999), in the Kalayaan Island Group, and Palawan waters (Tamse, 1999).

Importance

SIGNIFICANCE TO THE FISHERIES WITHIN SSME

The importance of plankton in the Sulu and Sulawesi Seas is best illustrated by its effect on the major economically important pelagic fish species dependent on it for food. The roundscads of the genus *Decapterus* are entirely plankton feeders and have their population center within this region and adjacent shallow seas. The scads rank second to the skipjack tuna among the fish resources of the Western Central Pacific Ocean. High zooplankton abundance coincides well with the main *Decapterus* fishing grounds. A similar situation is true for the mackerel *Rastrelliger* which depend on a wide range of phytoplankton and zooplankton for food, and the sardines of the genus *Sardinella*. All of the above mentioned fish taxa form part of the plankton community during the earliest stages of their respective life cycles.

Hermes and Villoso (1987) measured the zooplankton biomass distribution in Sulu Sea during two seasons in 1982 and 1983. Relatively uniform biomass values (wet weight) from 3.1 to 8.7 g/100m^3 (wet weight equivalent to g/m^2 for the upper 100 m of the water column) were recorded in October. Values were more variable in February and reached a maximum of 24.8 g/100m in the eastern portion of Sulu Sea where local upwelling conditions could exist during this period (northeast monsoon).

Studies on the potential transport and its significance to the distribution pattern of fish larvae were conducted. Larvae of *Chanos chanos* in the eastern part of the Sulu Sea was reported by Kumagai and Bagarinao (1979). During the northeast monsoon period the surface current provided a transport system from the westcoast of Panay towards northeastern Palawan, but was directed eastward during the southwest monsoon.

Baguilat (1987) found tuna and tuna-like larvae belonging to the skipjack, yellowfin and bullet tuna widespread but never in large numbers. During October 1982, yellowfin and skipjack larvae were more abundant while bullet tuna concentrated in the southern Sulu Sea and dominated in February 1983. This coincides well with the reported seasonal peak spawning of the species. Larval and early juvenile fishes of the Sulu Sea and adjacent waters show that the most abundant larvae in belonged to the oceanic myctophid (26/100m^3) and gonostomatid (5/100m^3) families (Armada, 1997). Larvae of the largely benthic gobiid family were also abundant both in offshore areas and near the southeast coast of Palawan. Other important taxa near the slope/shelf of Palawan included the engraulid, bregmacerotid, lutjanid, and acanthurid families. In Tubbataha Reef, Dolar and Alcala (1993) found that fish larvae densities ranged from 0 to 47/m^3.

ALGAL BLOOMS AND THEIR EFFECTS

Red tide occurrence in the Philippines has been reported as early as 1908. The first outbreak of a toxic red tide occurred in Samar in June 1983. The dinoflagellate species causing the Paralytic Shellfish Poisoning (PSP) in the Philippines has been identified as *Pyrodinium bahamense* var. *compressum.*

The first outbreak detected in Maqueda Bay, Samar spread to other areas reaching Calbayog the following month. The bays affected by red tide that year include Bulan, Sorsogon, and Balete Bay in Mati, Davao Oriental. Appendix 3 summarizes the historical occurrence of PSP in the Philippines from 1983 to 1996 while Figures 4.13 to 4.18 illustrate the spread of red tide within a span of 6 years.

The sequential appearance of *Pyrodinium* in the Philippines as well as in Papua New Guinea and Western Borneo suggests a northerly spread of blooms and that major blooms coincide with ENSO (El Nino Southern Oscillation).

Although a lot of research work has already been done on PSP, the direct cause of the sudden outbreak of PSP could not be confirmed. Some of the suspected causes of toxic blooms include the sudden and high influx of nutrients from the nearby lands and the occurrence of the southwest monsoon which brings a lot of rain. Low concentrations of the dinoflagellates, though, do not produce any toxic effects as exemplified by some areas found to harbor this dynaflagellate throughout the year without producing PSP. The upper limit of toxin levels for safe consumption of shellfish is 80µg/100 g of fish.

A suspected transport route of the dinoflagellate include ballast water from ships.

Threats

The threats to the plankton component of the oceanic ecosystems are basically the same as those already well known as threats to the marine environment in general, but some of these affect plankton in a more direct way.

The most problematic is probably the threat through eutrophication. Eutrophication has the potential to alter the composition of the plankton more dramatically by changing entire food webs. Furthermore, the deliberate fertilization of oligotrophic seas such as the Sulu Sea, in order to increase their production potential, may breed unforeseen catastrophes. Since our understanding of the plankton and the role of nutrients in primary production processes is still very limited at best, it cannot yet be predicted which of the primary producers would most benefit from additional nutrients. A shift in species composition and increased incidences of red tides must be expected as one of the consequences of any deliberate manipulation. It could well happen that the intervention would lead to explosive growth of non-indigenous and economically unusable or even toxic organisms, and irreversible damage to the environment. Therefore any attempts to fertilize oligotrophic sea areas should be strongly discouraged.

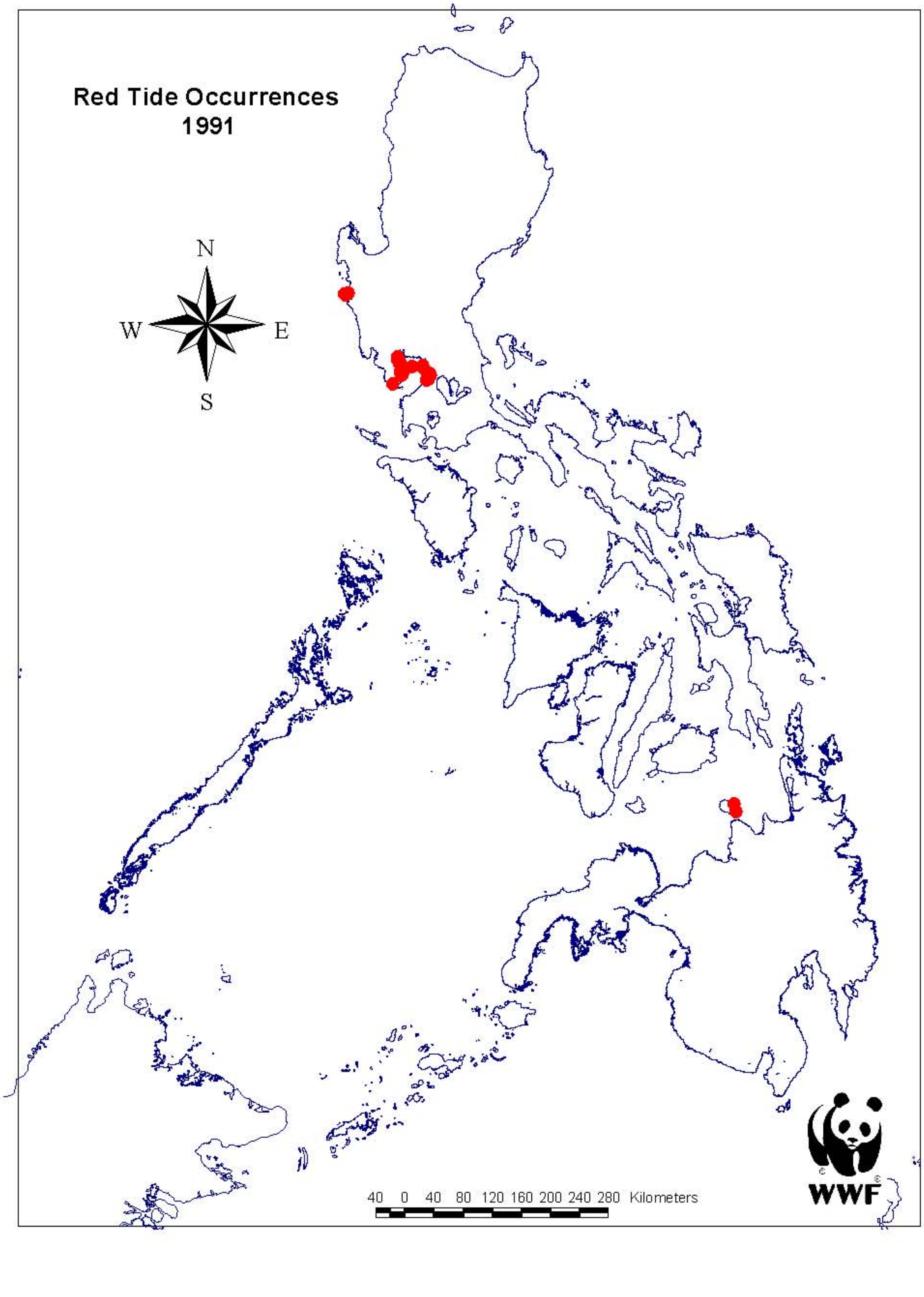


Figure 4.13 Red tide occurrences in 1991

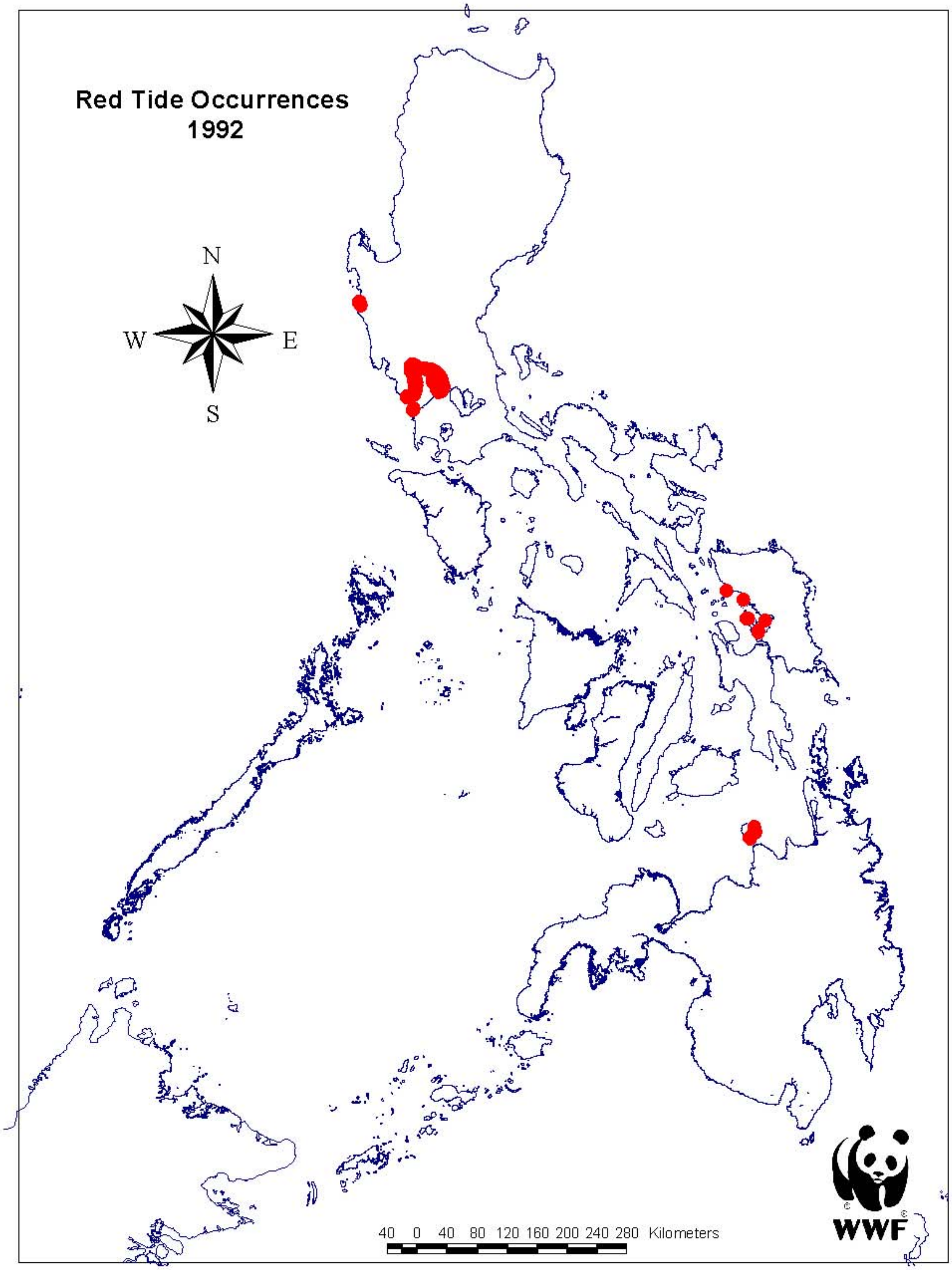


Figure 4.14 Red tide occurrences in 1992

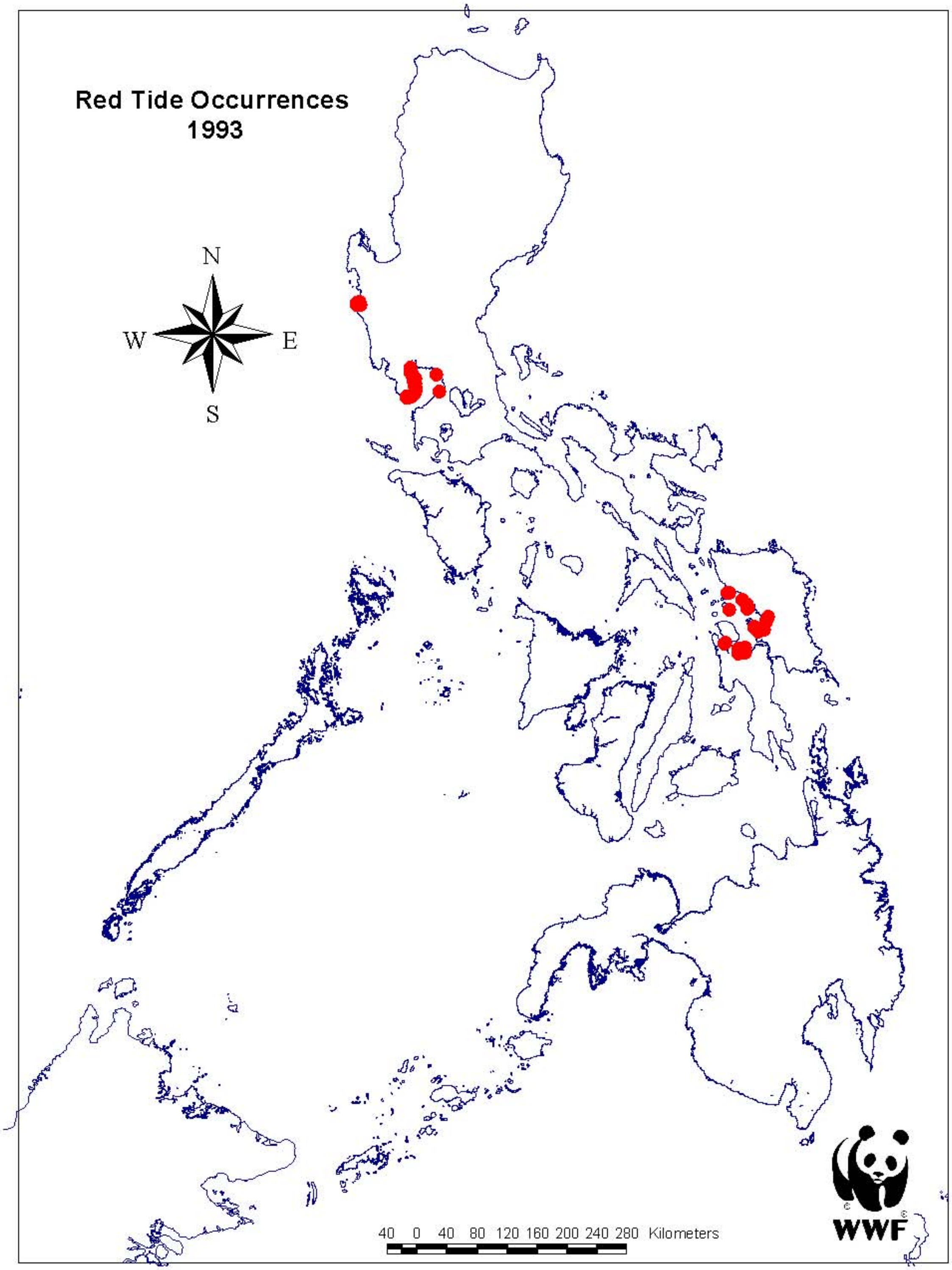


Figure 4.15 Red tide occurrences in 1993

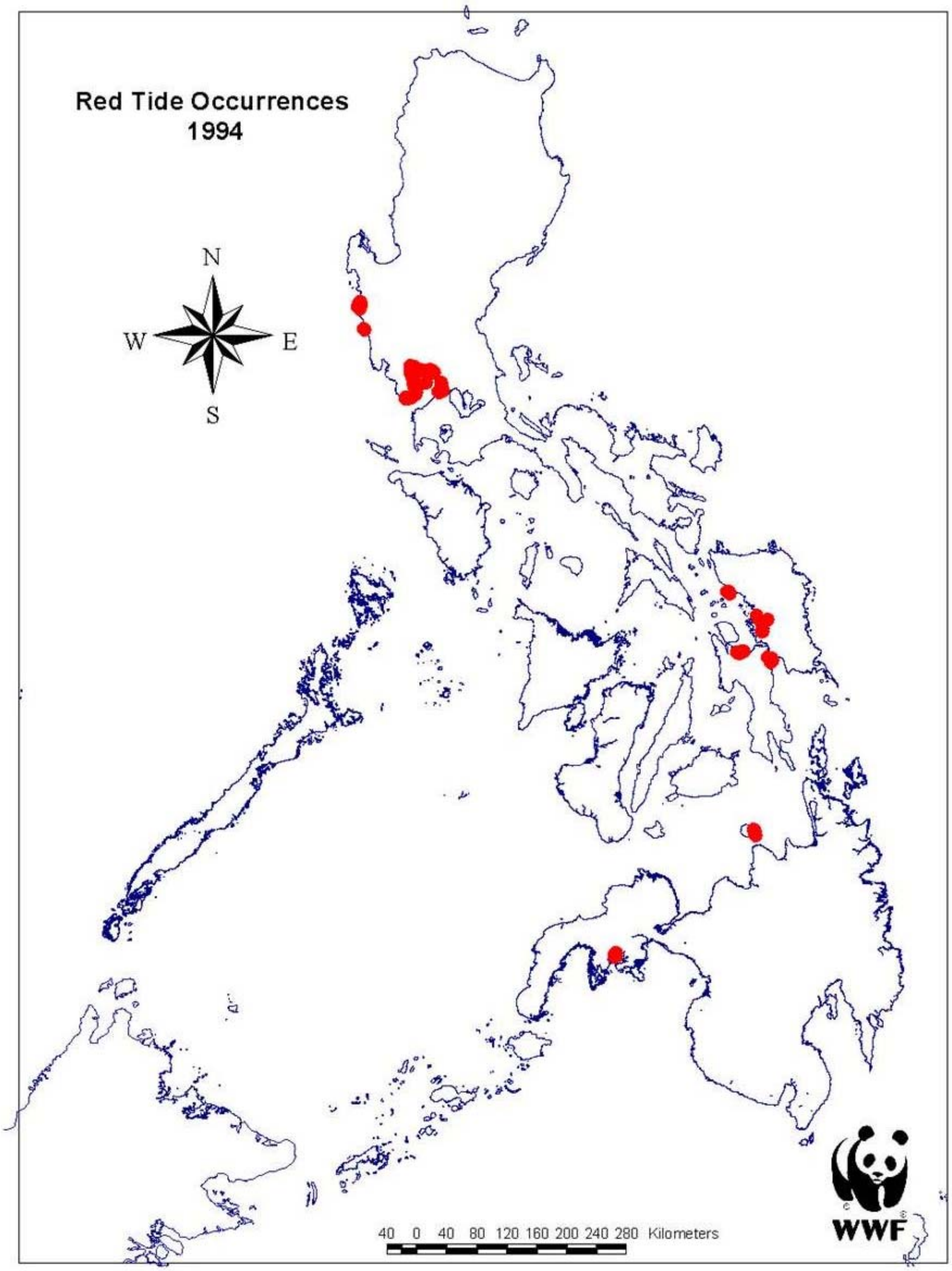


Figure 4.16 Red tide occurrences in 1994

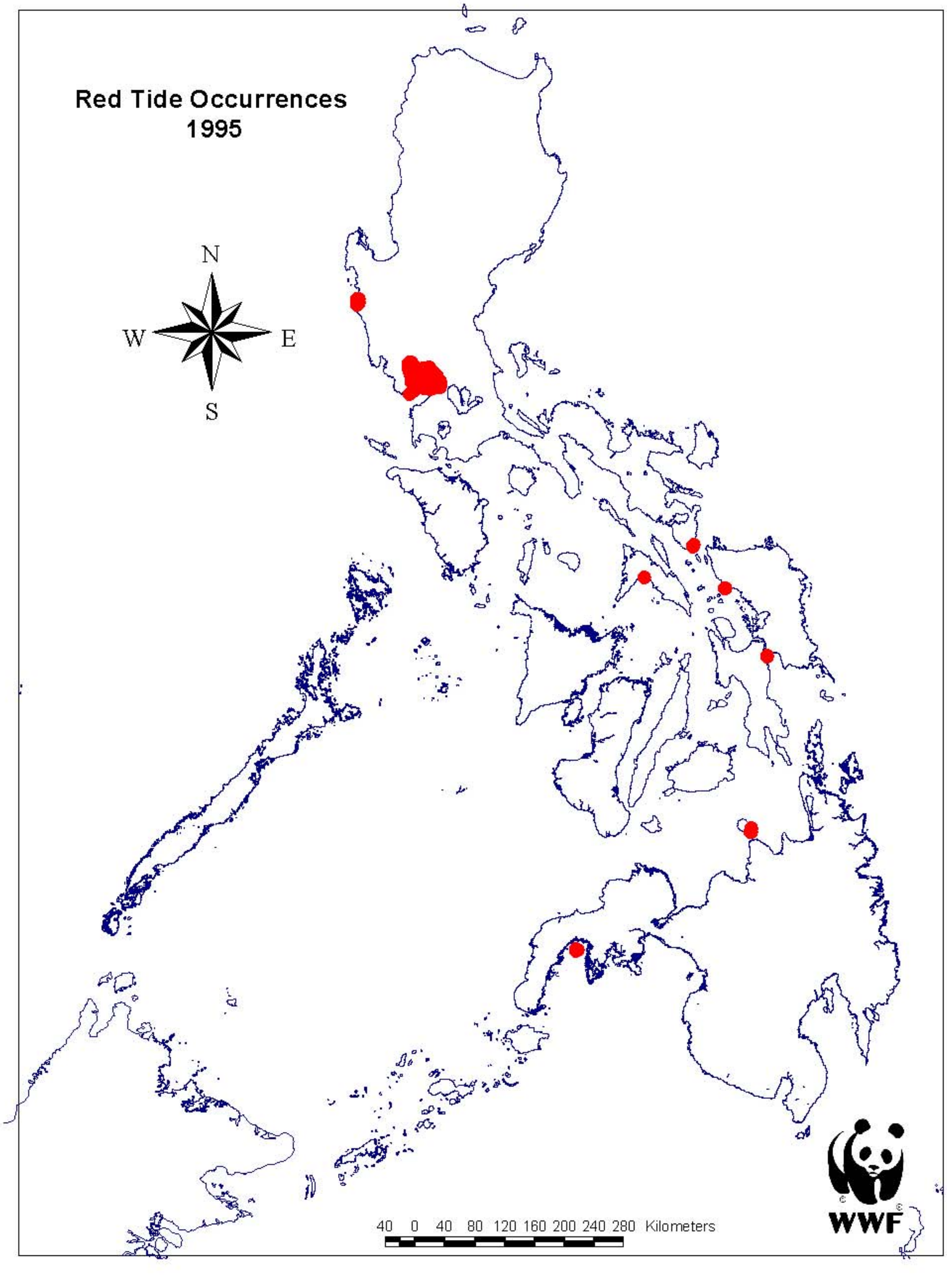


Figure 4.17 Red tide occurrences in 1995

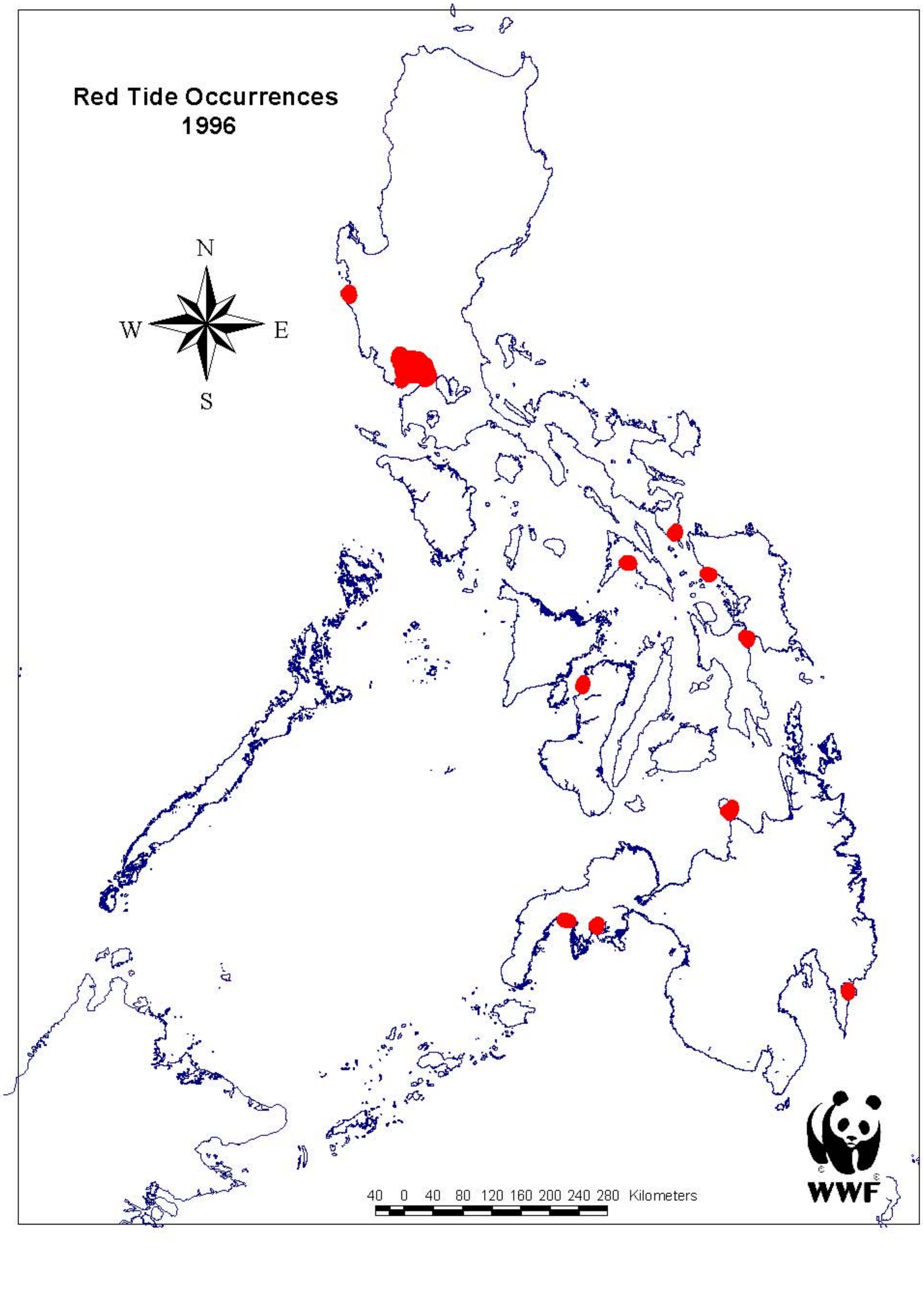


Figure 4.18 Red tide occurrences in 1996

Overfishing is certainly not limited to changes in the composition of multispecies fish stocks, but the loss of top predators can temporarily lead to increases in the number of plankton feeders and, ultimately, the number of economically less valuable or even undesirable species. Increase in jellyfish populations are considered as one of the negative consequences of ecosystem overfishing.

The consequences of global warming, which may contribute to increased irradiation, sea level rise, and increased turbulence, has the potential to effect changes in entire current systems, but can not be predicted with any high degree of certainty at present. However, it must be expected that primary productivity and therefore complete food webs will be greatly affected. One example is the possible increase in the frequency of red tides or the spread of diseases to marine organisms, resulting in damage to coral reefs, seagrass beds, and fish kills.

Although, it is not very obvious, heavy metal and chemical pollution, sedimentation, and the impacts of human activities, pose indirect threats. The magnification or accumulation of pollutants such as heavy metals or pesticides through planktivores (filter feeding or otherwise) is already a well established fact. Sedimentation and siltation, apart from damaging delicate marine organisms such as corals through direct physical contact or abrasion, also effectively reduce the light penetration and therefore the rate of photosynthesis. Since ecosystems are linked through the food web, impacts wrought on one link will damage the entire system.

VI. MARINE FISHERY RESOURCES OF NERITIC ECOSYSTEMS

Ramon I. Miclat, Flordeliz Guarin and A. Rex F. Montebon

Neritic ecosystems are among the most diverse ecosystems in the marine environment. Marine resources in this zone have been exploited as fisheries including those that use the zone as part of their migratory path.

Herre (1953) listed approximately 2,145 fish species in the Philippine waters. These fishes are the bony fishes that constitute most of the fisheries in the coastal waters of the country. Stocks of migratory fishes such as tunas (e.g. yellowfin, skipjacks, etc), billfishes and seerfishes swim over large distances and have been recognized as a shared resource that are economically important fisheries in the SSME (Figure 4.19).

Major Fishing Grounds within SSME

The Philippines, Sulu and Sulawesi Seas cover four designated fishing regions, namely, Regions I, II, III, and IV out of the six regional fishing grounds in the Philippines used in the assessment of Philippine fisheries potential. The designation was based on the operational characteristics of the exploiting fisheries. The four fishing regions in the SSME cover some 15 statistical fishing areas of the BFAR. In the estimates done for the different statistical fishing areas in 1980, it was shown that Region IV (West Sulu Sea, Palawan and Mindoro) had the highest potential estimates (462,000 MT) for demersal and pelagic fisheries.

Major Fishery Resources of the Region

COMMERCIAL VS. MUNICIPAL FISHERIES

Marine fisheries in the Philippines are conventionally categorized into municipal and commercial fisheries based on gross tonnage of the fishing vessel. Small-scale fisheries that utilize boats of less than 3 gross tons and those which do not involve the use of water crafts fall under municipal fisheries. Fishing using vessels of 3 GT and above are considered commercial. Municipal fishing activities are allowed in coastal waters within 15 km from the shoreline. Commercial fishing is allowed only beyond the 15 km limit from the shoreline.

Production estimates

Table 4.8 exhibits the total marine fisheries production in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas and its contribution to Philippine production. Production peak was attained in 1980 and 1986, contributing 43.29% and 42.11% respectively. A decline in production was experienced afterwards, dropping to 30.75% in 1995.

Historically, municipal fisheries were the major contributor to fisheries. In 1987, commercial fisheries started to contribute more to the total landings coming mainly from the Moro Gulf and South Sulu Sea (WWF, 1998). This growth has not been sustained. Commercial production in Sulu-Sulawesi went down from 63% in 1970 to 54% in 1987 and finally to 33% in 1995. The combined average landing in 1992-95 from the Moro Gulf and South Sulu Sea totalled only 30%.

Gear used

The Sulu-Sulawesi area is characterized by multiple-gear fishery. The purse seine ranked first as commercial gear with 53% highest landings between 1970-95 (WWF, 1998). Figures 4.20 and 4.21 present the various commercial and municipal gear utilized in the SSME, respectively.

Within the Sulawesi Sea, fishing is done with the aid of fish aggregating devices (FADs). These structures, which are anchored to the bottom, have floating platforms, usually made of bamboo while the subsurface parts have fronds of nipa or coconut leaves down to the depths of about 50 ft.

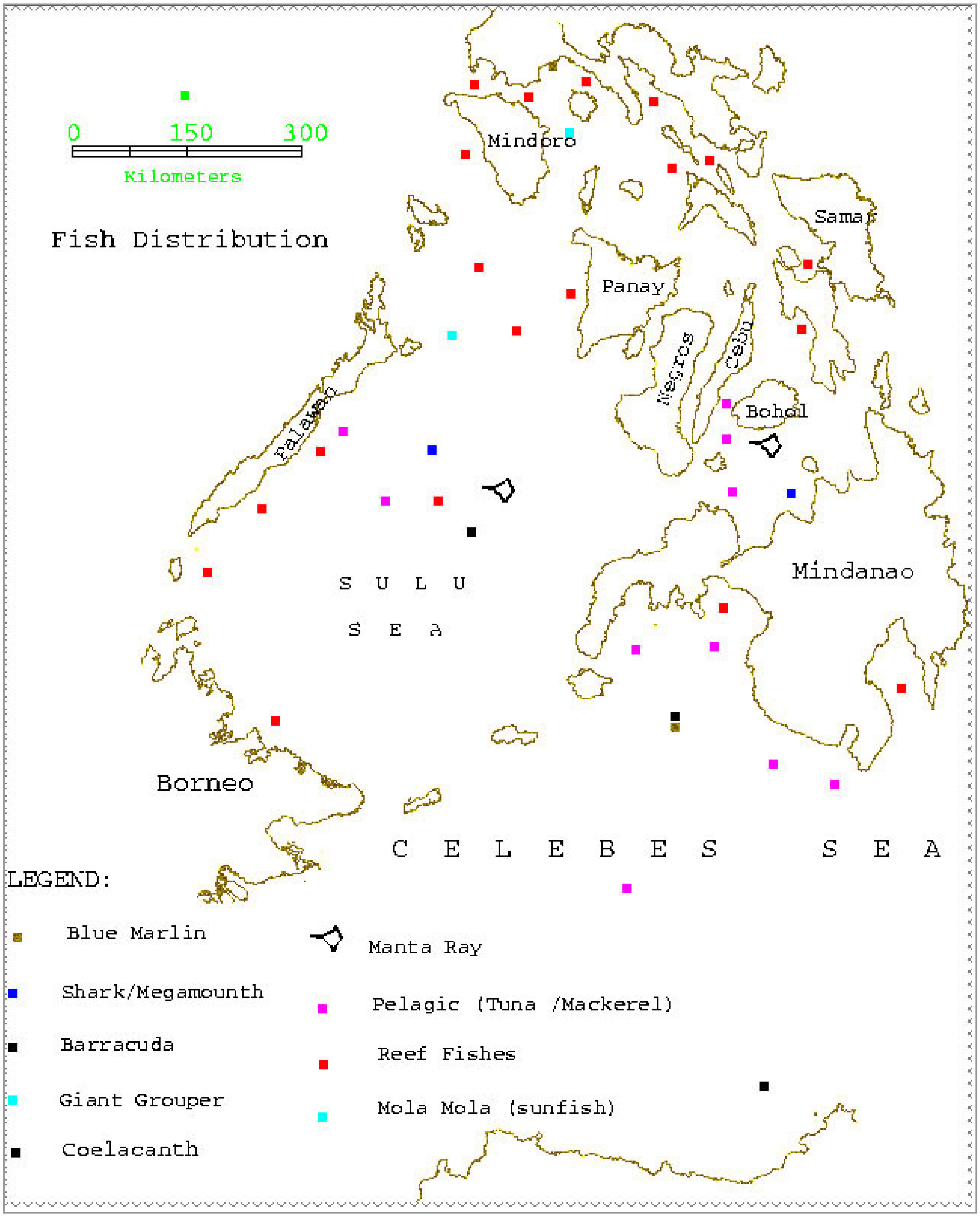


Figure 4.19 Fishery resource distribution in the SSME

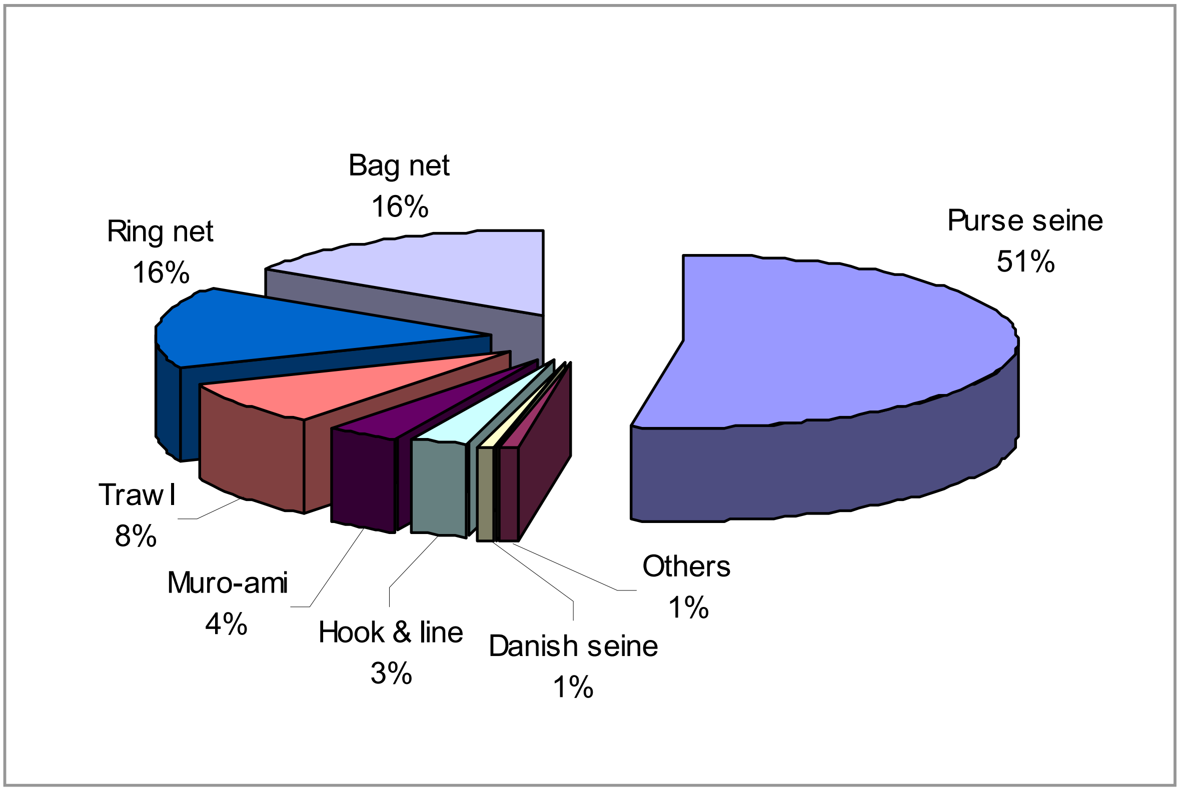


Figure 4.20 Commercial gear contribution to Sulu-Sulawesi's marine landings

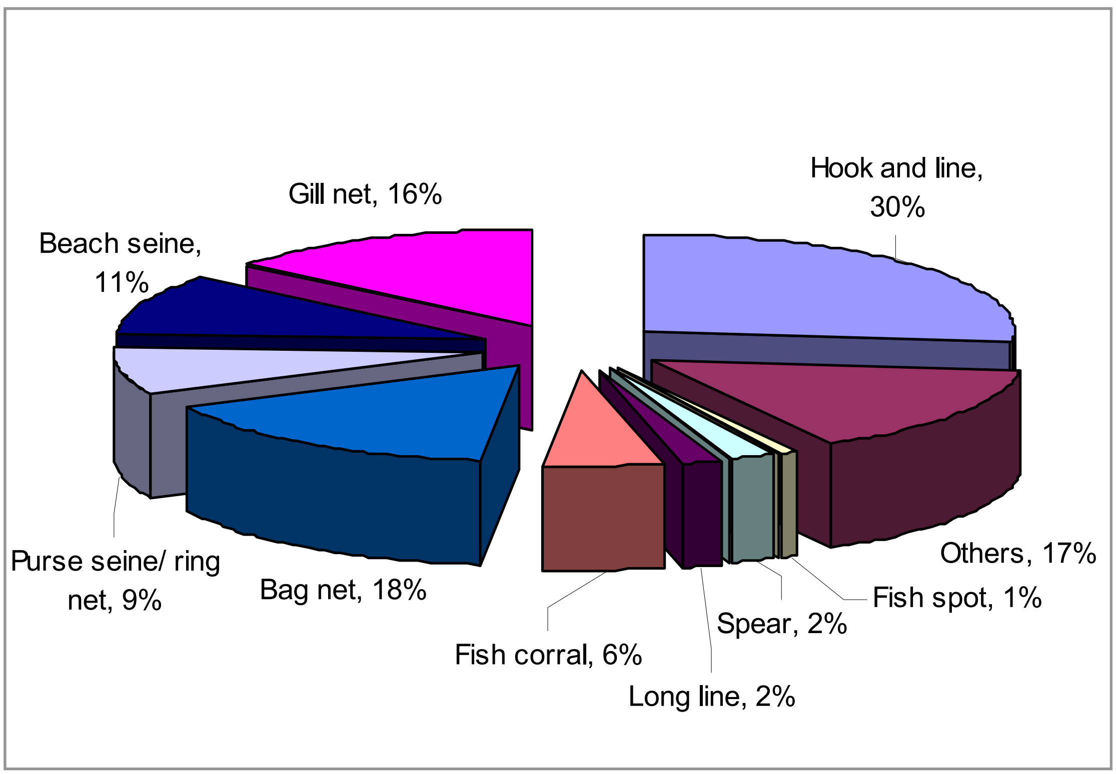


Figure 4.21 Municipal gear contribution to Sulu-Sulawesi's marine landings

Table 4.8 Total marine fisheries production (commercial and municipal) in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas from 1978 to 1995.

Year	Cuyo Pass	Moro Gulf	East Sulu	South Sulu	West Sulu	Total	% Contri-bution to Philippine prodxn.
1978		107,719	58,851	220,706	8,831	396,107	33.21
1977	40,498		57,739	218,678	221	317,136	27.91
1980	32,414	147,523	74,343	113,767	123,649	491,696	43.29
1981	34,572	106,079	71,334	108,416	116,393	436,794	36.26
1982	48,865	126,844	74,691	110,946	131,532	492,878	39.93
1983	58,986	152,347	122,601	98,999	118,408	551,341	42.73
1984	52,119	155,970	117,741	94,788	104,819	525,437	40.32
1985	50,880	166,219	108,634	94,792	115,436	535,961	41.32
1986	40,773	157,014	113,475	99,221	159,517	570,000	42.11
1987	49,423	142,893	141,485	93,430	182,610	609,841	
1988							
1989							
1990							
1991	20,393	46,190	24,781	155,417	17,719	264,500	
1992	37,541	186,115	121,919	171,035	13,690	530,300	31.95
1993	37,357	173,840	120,917	187,258	8,938	528,310	32.46
1994	43,637	174,016	96,929	192,085	13,548	520,215	31.60
1995	35,875	157,290	90,480	222,551	99.75	516,171	30.75

(Entries for West Sulu for years 1978-1981 and 1991-1995 lack the data. Using available data from 1982-1987, an average of 7.5% was contributed by the municipal fosheries in West Sulu to the whole of Sulu-Sulawesi marine landings. Missing data in 1988-1990, due to differences in methodology, coincided with the transfer of data collection from BFAR to BAS. No municipal data were available in 1991).

PELAGIC FISHERIES PRODUCTION

Pelagic fisheries refer to the exploitation of a diverse group of fishes living near the surface that include small pelagics, tuna and tuna-like fishes and large pelagics. Small pelagics are characterized by short life spans having an average of about 2.3 years, fast growth rate and high mortality rates (WWF, 1998) while large pelagics have long lifespans, relatively slow growth rates and low turnover rates.

Mean annual landings of pelagics for 1978-87 totalled 380,000 metric tons contributed by small pelagics (238,631 MT or 63%), tuna and tuna like fishes (125,163MT or 33%) and large pelagics (16,724 MT or 4%) (WWF, 1998).

Small pelagics

The small pelagic fisheries in the Sulu-Sulawesi are composed of roundscads (*Decapterus* spp.) as the dominant species contributing 35%. The others include sardines (*Sardinella* spp.), anchovies *(Stolephorus* spp.) and mackerels (*Rastrelliger* spp.).

Large pelagics

The large pelagics landing is dominated by cavallas (43%), Spanish mackerel (19.6%) and barracuda (12.1%). They contributed 75% of the mean large pelagic catch from 1978-87 (WWF, 1998). Other large pelagics include marlin, sailfish, swordfish and rainbow runner.

Tuna and tuna-like fisheries

Tuna fisheries in the Philippines are undertaken by both municipal and commercial fishers. General Santos City serves as one of the tuna capital of the Philippines where tuna fishing occurs the entire year though influenced by the monsoon months. Other important tuna fishing grounds are depicted in Figure 4.22. Municipal fishing operations of tuna commonly employ handlines with yellowfin and bigeye tuna as target species. The handliners operate around "payaos" which were introduced in Sarangani Bay. The lucrative tuna fishery later filled the entire bay with payaos which are now seen even farther offshore.

Frigate tuna (*Auxis thazard*) and bullet tuna (*Auxis rochei*) dominate the landings of tuna and tuna like fishes contributing 32%. Yellowfin tuna (*Thunnus albacares*) and big eye (*Thunnus obesus*) make up 27% while skipjack (*Katsuwonus pelamis*) 27% and eastern little tuna (*Euthynnus affinis*) contribute 13%. These six species are among the twenty-one species of tuna that have been identified in the Philippines and compose the tuna fishery due to their high export value.

A tuna research project was implemented in 1993-94 which undertook the tuna tagging activities to determine the biology including the migration route of selected species of tuna (Figures 4.23 to 4.24). Eight areas were monitored for landed catch of tuna. Of these eight areas monitored in 1993, 57.55 % of the total landed catch came from the sampling sites of Zamboanga City, 34.36% from General Santos and 4.69% from Pagadian City (all in Mindanao). The remaining 3% came from various areas namely, Masinloc and Subic (Zambales), Atimonan (Quezon), Puerto Princesa City (Palawan) and Tandag.

- Skipjack

  Skipjacks are distributed in tropical and subtropical waters across the Pacific. In the western Pacific they are found between 40°N-40°S in areas associated with warm poleward flowing currents while in the eastern Pacific, they are distributed between 30°N- 30°S due to colder currents flowing toward the equator (Figure 4.25; PRIMEX and SPC, 1993). Distribution of juvenile skipjack (smaller than 15 cm) is between the northern and southern limits of the 24ºC surface isotherm. The highest larval concentration is between 10°N and 10°S.

The patchy distribution of skipjack may be associated with the similarly patchy distribution of zooplankton and micronekton. Skipjack larvae are abundant in Samar Sea during February and March while Ticao Pass and Burias Pass show abundance during July and September. In the Sulu Sea, skipjack tuna are reported to be more abundant during October and November and less abundant in February and March.

- Yellowfin

  The distribution of yellowfin tuna in the Pacific is similar to that of skipjack, ranging from 40^{o}N –35^{o}S in the western Pacific and 35^{o}N-33^{o}S in the eastern Pacific (Figure 4.26; PRIMEX and SPC, 1993). In 1993, it was reported that yellowfin are restricted to the area bounded by the 26^{o}C isotherm being found in tropical waters the whole year and in higher latitudes only during the summer months.

  Yellowfin tuna has a broader distribution than skipjack due to its physiological makeup. The presence of swimbladder and large pectoral fins allow them to maintain hydrostatic equilibrium at a basal swimming speed slower than that of skipjack. This allows for lower metabolic rate and lower oxygen consumption permitting them to move around warm surface waters and in cooler subsurface waters.

  Like the skipjack tuna, the distribution of yellowfin tuna coincide with areas of high plankton concentration occurring in waters surrounding the Philippine archipelago. Both juvenile and adults were recorded to be abundant in Moro Gulf and Sulu Sea throughout the year. Yellowfin larvae are suspected to be present all over the Philippine waters, however, documentation were made only in limited areas such as the Sulu Sea, Ragay Gulf, Burias Pass, Ticao Pass, and Northern Samar Sea. Juvenile yellowfin are caught the whole year in Philippine waters. The larvae are reported in February and March, May and September in Ragay Gulf, Burias Pass and Ticao Pass (PRIMEX and SPC, 1993). In the Sulu Sea, considered as a breeding ground, yellowfin larvae occur during February and March and October and November.

- Bigeye

  Bigeye tuna are distributed across the Pacific Ocean between about 45^{o}N and 40^{o}S in the west and 40^{o}N and 35^{o}S. Bigeye tuna larvae are widely distributed in the equatorial waters of the western, central, and eastern Pacific. Compared to the skipjack and yellowfin tuna, bigeye tuna have a higher tolerance to low oxygen and a higher thermoregulatory ability, allowing them to dive to greater depths. Bigeye larvae are distributed in the western Pacific between 30^{o}N and 20^{o}S and in the eastern Pacific between the equator and 20^{o}N (Figure 4.27; PRIMEX and SPC, 1993).

Figure 4.22 Important tuna fishing grounds for commercial fisheries

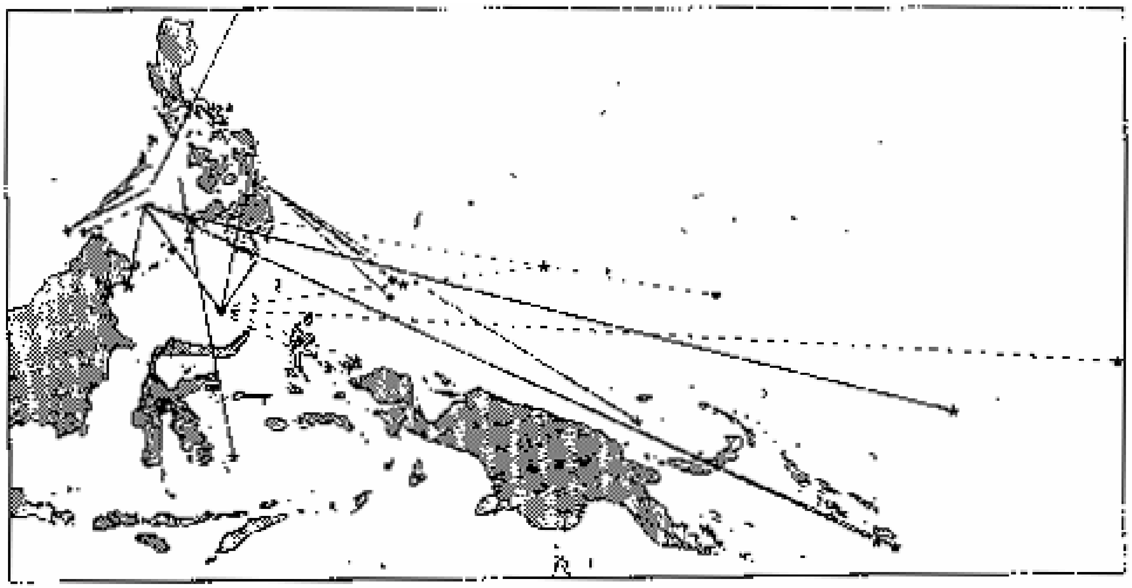


Figure 4.23 Movements of tuna released in the Philippines and recaptured outside Philippine waters (Skipjack - solid lines, yellowfin - dashed lines; PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)

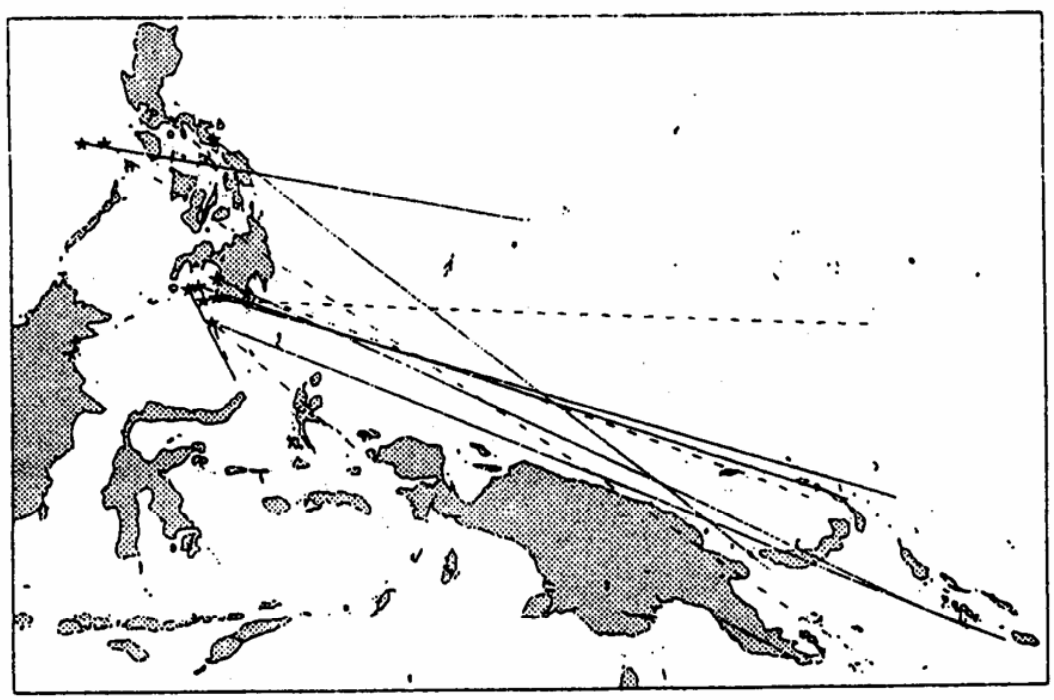
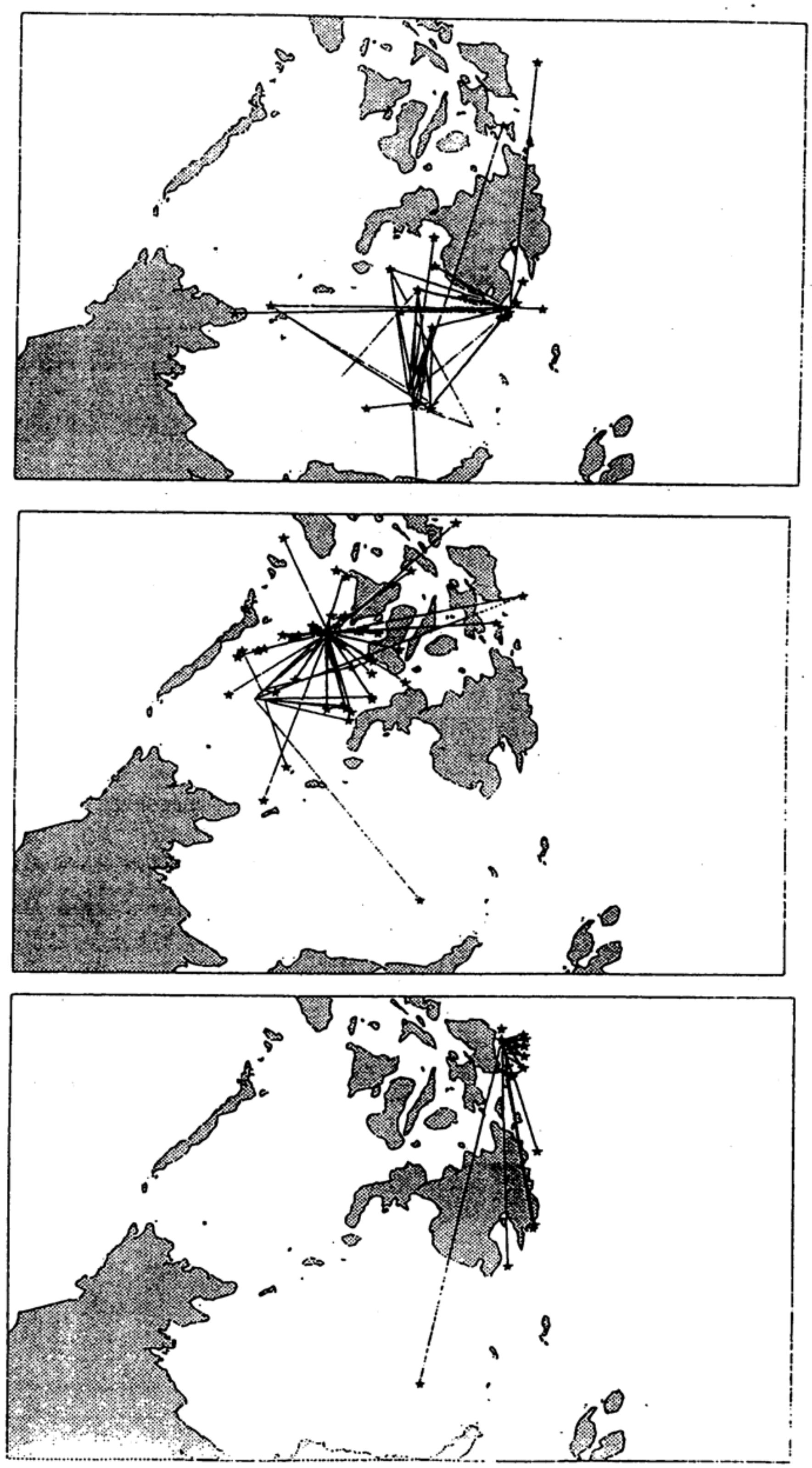


Figure 4.24 Movements of tuna recaptured in the Philippines from releases outside Philippine waters (Skipjack - solid lines, yellowfin - dashed lines; PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)



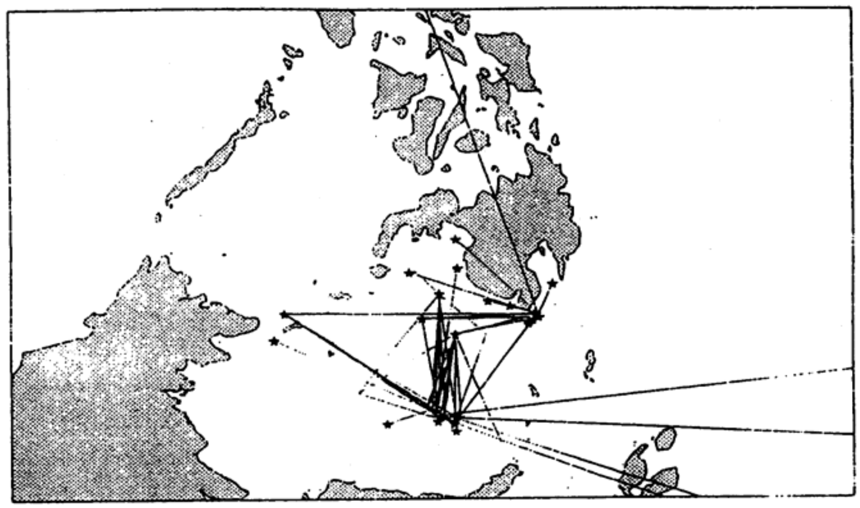
From the
Sulawesi Sea

From the
Sulu Sea

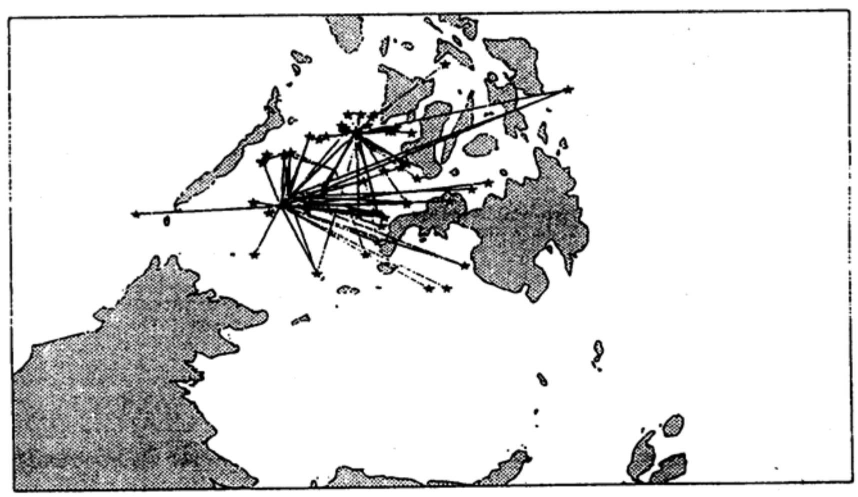
From the
Philippine Sea

Figure 4.25 Movements of tagged skipjack (PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)

From the
Sulawesi Sea



From the
Sulu Sea



From the
Philippine Sea

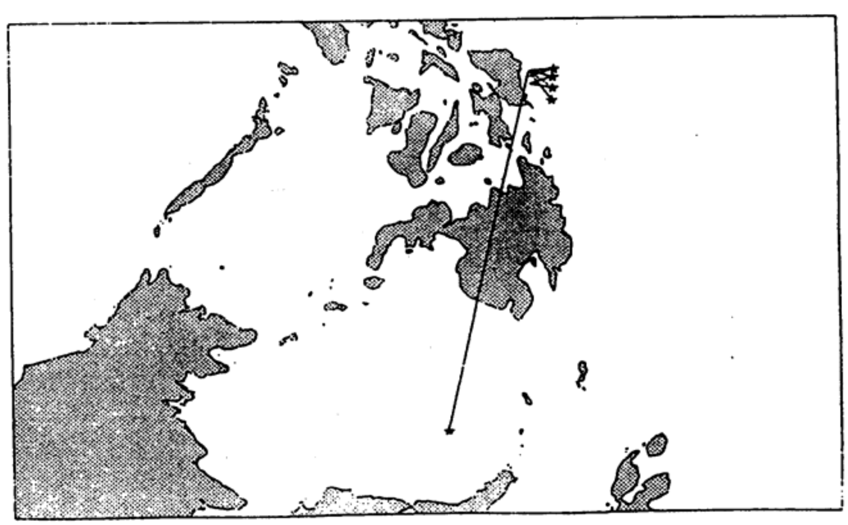
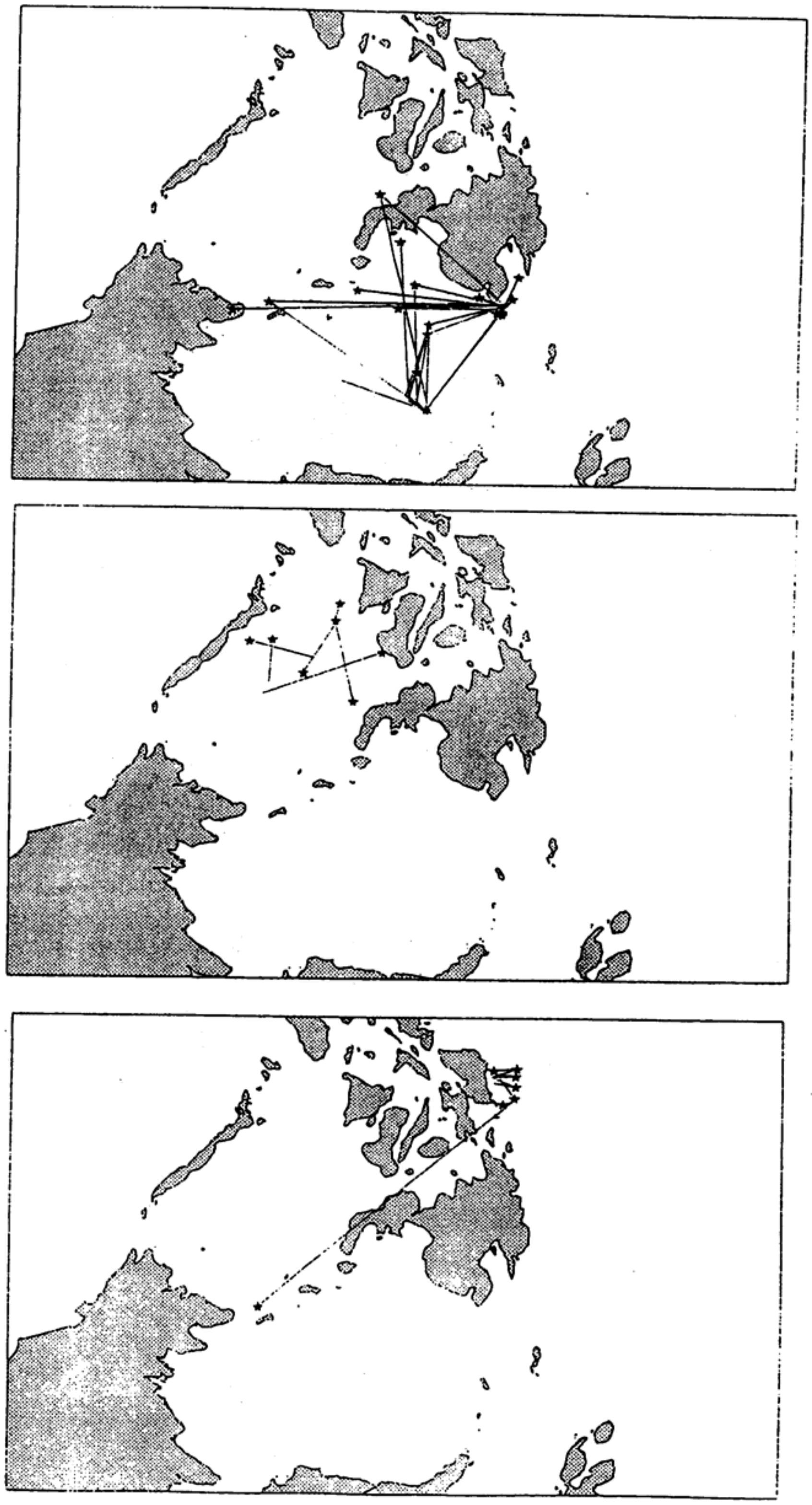


Figure 4.26 Movements of tagged yellowfin (PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)



From the
Sulawesi Sea

From the
Sulu Sea

From the
Philippine Sea

Figure 4.27 Movements of tagged bigeye (PRIMEX-SPC, 1993)

DEMERSAL FISHERIES PRODUCTION

Demersal fisheries refer to the exploitation of groups of fishes which inhabit areas close to the substrate whether soft (muddy, sandy or sandy-muddy) or hard (coral reefs and/or rocky). A list of species groups found in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas is presented in Table 4.9 and the dominant demersal landings from 1978 to 87 in shown Table 4.10. These species groups are among the 50 used in the BFAR Statistics classified as demersals.

One of the seasonal fishery in many shallow areas in the SSME such as the Sarangani Province facing the Sulawesi Sea is the milkfish (*Chanos chanos*) fry collection. There are two peaks for milkfish fry appearance in this area. The first one is from March to June and then another peak but smaller than the first one is November to January. In General Santos City and Sarangani Province, each municipality has its designated milkfish fry concession zones. The fry are cultured in ponds for commercial production.

Table 4.9 Demersal species groups found in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas (WWF, 1998)

Species Groups		
Assorted marine fish	Lobster	Shark
Butterfly fish	Mojarra	Shrimp prawn
Crab	Moonfish	Sickle fish
Croaker	Moray eels	Siganids
Cutlass, hairtail	Mullet	Skate, ray
Diana (opah)	Perchlet	Slipmouth
Flatfish	Pomfret	Snapper
Flathead	Porgy	Spade fish
Goatfish	Puffer fish	Squid, octopus
Goby	Red bullseye	Therapon, grunt
Grouper	Rudderfish	Threadfin bream
Lactarids	Sea bass	Threadfin mamali
Leaf fish	Sea catfish	Triggerfish
Lizard fish	Sergeant fish	Whiting, asohos

Table 4.10 Average annual landings of demersal species groups in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas from 1978-1987 (metric tons).

Rank	**Demersals**	**Average**	**%**	**Cumulative %**
1	Slipmouth	11,261.0	13.7	13.7
2	Squid, octopus	7,729.6	9.4	23.0
3	Groupers	7,591.0	9.2	32.2
4	Threadfin breams	7,550.3	9.2	41.4
5	Snappers	7,199.5	8.7	50.1
6	Goatfishes	3,962.6	4.8	54.9
7	Siganids	3,378.1	4.1	59.0
8	Grunts	3,143.5	3.8	62.8
9	Assorted marine fish	3,065.6	3.7	66.5
10	Wrasses, parrotfish	2,263.3	2.7	69.3
11	Surgeon fish	2,153.8	2.6	71.9
12	Sharks	2,141.3	2.6	74.5
13	Mullets	2,115.1	2.6	77.0
14	Porgies	2,065.6	2.5	79.5
15	Shrimps, prawns	1,756.0	2.1	81.9
16	Mojarra	1,627.5	2.0	83.9
17	Lizaed fish	1,438.5	1.7	85.6
18	Moonfish	1,434.7	1.7	87.3
19	Cutlass, hairtail	1,212.4	1.5	88.8
20	Others	9,226.5	11.2	100.0
	TOTAL	82,492.3	100.0	

Importance

SOURCE OF LIVELIHOOD

- Fisheries

  Approximately more than 50% of the 62 million Filipinos depend on fish as their main source of protein. Assessment of fish yields from coral reefs are in the range of 5-37 mt/km^2/yr (Miclat *et al.*, 1991; McManus *et al.*, 1992). This constitute approximately 8-20% or approximately 143,200-358,000t of the total fisheries production in the Philippines (Carpenter, 1977; Alcala, 1988; White and Cruz-Trinidad, 1998) from which 50% of the harvest is contributed by subsistence or artisanal fishers. Estimates of potential fisheries production in the Sulu Sea alone is valued at 2.12 tons/km^2/yr for small pelagics and 0.91 tons/km^2/yr for demersals.

Total Philippine commercial and municipal fish catch from the SSME has peaked to 1,099,000 MT in 1987, with 505,000 MT (86%) contributed by the commercial sector and 594,000 MT (74%) coming from the municipal/artisanal sector (Table 4.11; Figure 4.28). This figure represents about 79% contribution of the SSME to the Philippine total catch of 1,389,000 MT. However, catch started to decline continuously with its present level of 804,000 MT (602,000 MT and 202,000 MT from the commercial and municipal sector, respectively) recorded in 1995 representing only 47% contribution to the total Philippine catch (1,712,000 MT). The data also shows that the contribution of municipal/artisanal sector to the SSME total catch drastically dropped from 118% in 1987 to 34% in 1995 (Figure 4.29).

According to White and Cruz-Trinidad (1998) the Philippine export of fishery products reached P15M in 1996 with tuna, shrimp and seaweed as top commodities.

- <u>Tropical aquarium fish trade</u>
  In the 1980 study of the marine aquarium fish trade in the Philippines, exporters reveal that the bulk of the volume of aquarium fishes in the Philippines commonly come from the southern provinces (Albaladejo and Corpuz, 1981): Batangas, Masbate, Marinduque, Bicol Region, Cebu, Bohol, Leyte, Samar, Dipolog, Negros Oriental, Zamboanga, Siquijor, and Palawan. All of the above areas are within the SSME. As previously discussed, the United States and Europe were the major importers but by the mid 1980s demand has declined due to cyanide fishing. Today, aquarium fishes still rank within the top ten fishery products being exported, along with the live reef fish export trade.

- <u>Tourism</u>
  The diversity of underwater life particularly of colorful and highly attractive marine fish has lured tourists, divers in particular, to the region. One of the most visited areas in the Sulu Sea is the Tubbataha Reefs, which was declared a national marine park in 1988. Divers from all over the world visit Tubbataha because of the fantastic underwater seascape it offers consisting of lush coral growths which harbor an array of multi-colored reef fishes as well as larger species of sharks, manta rays, and barracudas. Underwater photographers had taken thousands of pictures of Tubbataha, many of them published in international divers' and travel magazines. Balicasag Island in the nearby Panglao Island in Bohol is another favorite tourist destination for diving enthusiasts for its vertical walls throbbing with large fishes. This site was recommended as a national marine park (White, 1984).

Table 4.11 Trends in Philippine commercial and municipal fish catch in the SSME between 1987 and 1995 (values in thousand metric tons)

Fishing Ground	Commercial Catch		Artisanal Catch		Total Catch	
	1987	1995	1987	1995	1987	1995
South Sulu Sea	48	181	54	14	102	195
Bohol Sea	14	70	35	13	49	83
Moro Gulf	61	83	100	2	161	85
Guimaras Strait	7	26	71	17	78	43
Samar Sea	6	24	43	5	49	29
Sibuyan Sea	5	20	23	ND	28	20
Camotes Sea	5	8	15	ND	20	8
Tayabas Bay	15	17	18	17	33	34
Subtotal	161	429	359	68	520	497
Davao Gulf	3	6	15	15	18	21
Visayas Sea	135	129	49	42	184	162
East Sulu Sea	27	19	88	54	115	73
Cuyo Pass	21	10	22	13	43	23
West Sulu Sea	143	10	26	ND	169	10
Ragay Gulf	11	7	14	6	25	13
Batangas Coast	4	1	21	4	25	5
Subtotal	344	173	235	134	579	307
Sulu-Sulawesi total	505	602	594	202	1099	804
% of Philippine total	86	65	74	26	79	47
Total Philippine catch	586	927	803	785	1389	1712

Source: BFAR, 1987 and 1995.

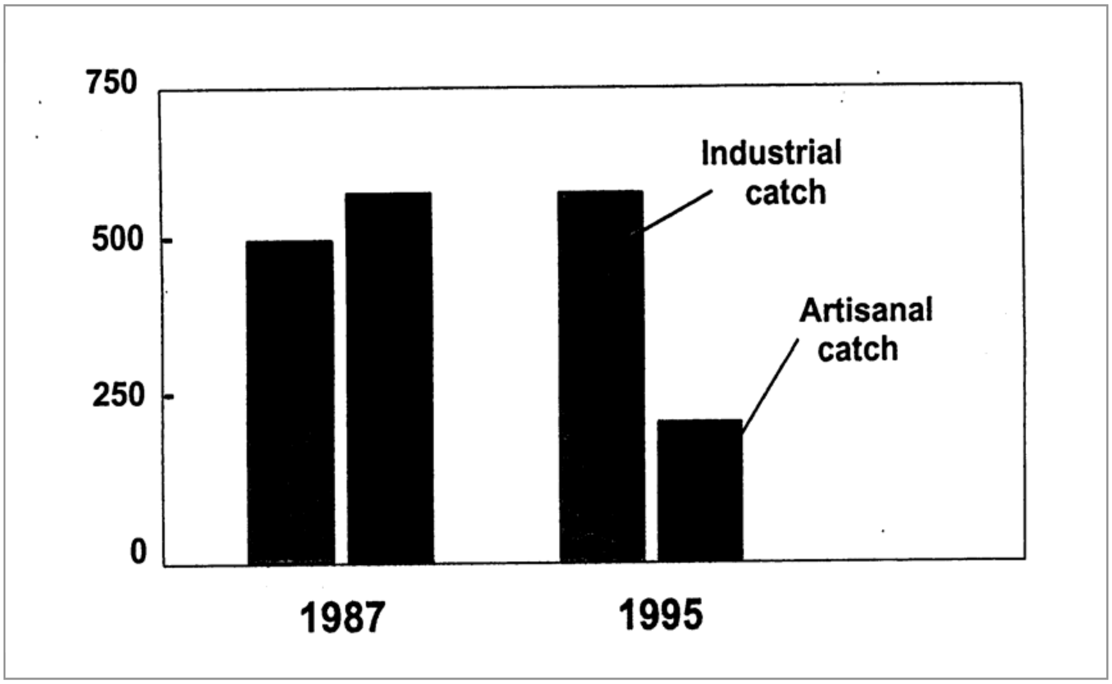


Figure 4.28 Industrial and artisanal fish catch in the Philippine portion of the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas (KKP Marine Fisheries Program for the SSME)

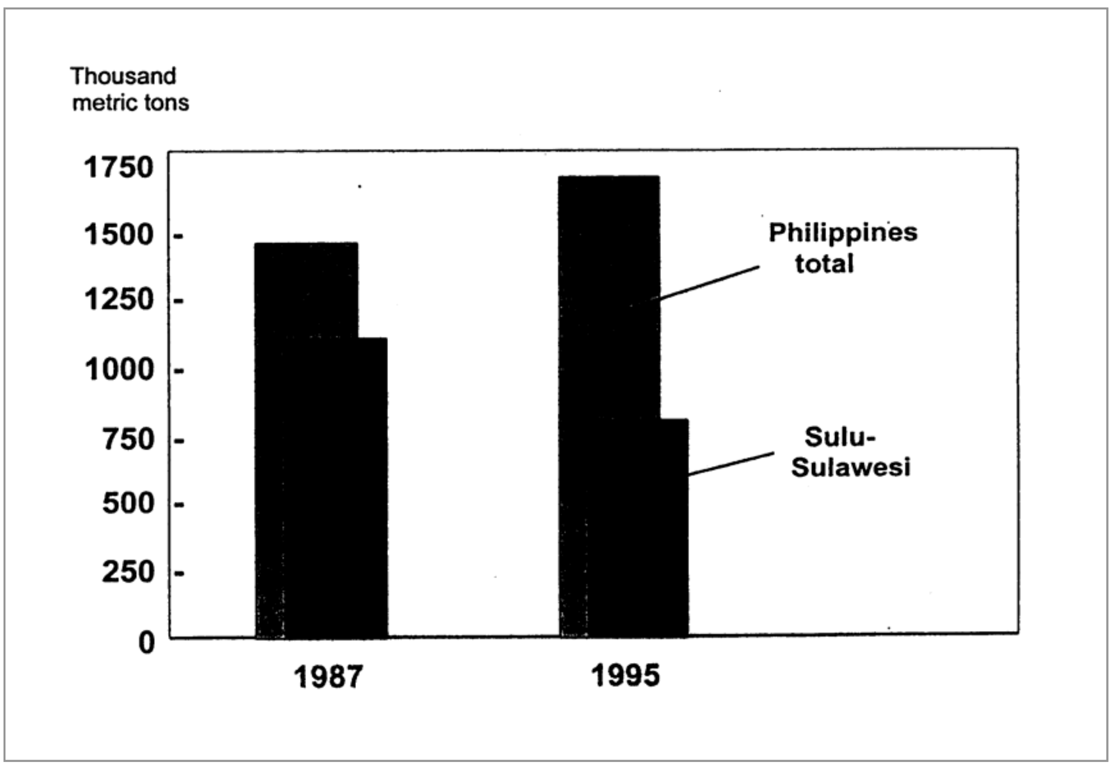


Figure 4.29 Decreasing fish catch in the Philippine portion of the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas (1987-1995 Philippine Fisheries Profile: BFAR, Quezon City as presented by the KKP Marine Fisheries Program for the SSME)

ECOLOGICAL IMPLICATIONS

Besides hosting a myriad species of fish, the SSME is a major migratory route for many charismatic species such as large marine mammals (whales, dolphins, and dugongs), turtles and numerous shark species, the most notable of which is the whale shark. Aside from these large species, the pelagic environment transports larvae and other planktonic organisms from source ecosystems to sinks ensuring the diversity of life underwater. Areas within the Philippine SSME which are known spawning grounds or sources of recruits include: the Tubbataha Reefs, Turtle Islands and Apo Reef.

Threats

DWINDLING RESOURCES

The most pressing issue at hand is the dwindling supply of stocks and fry in the SSME. In the mid-1980s, one-third of the marine aquarium fish exporters were also involved in live-reef fish export for food. The major destinations of these live-fish (e.g. groupers and humphead /Napoleon wrasse) are Hong Kong and Taiwan (Bentley, 1999). Hong Kong, which accounted for 72% of exports from 1991 to 1995, declined drastically in 1996 by more than 50%. The drop was attributed not to the decrease in demand but rather to the low supply of fish. Likewise, Taiwan, which predominantly import grouper fry had its import decline dramatically from 450 MT in 1993 to as low as 100 MT in 1996 due to reduction in fry supply. Origins of these live-fish trade are Tacloban, Zamboanga, Coron in Palawan (currently accounts for more than 50% of the live-food fish export), Quezon, Camarines Norte and Sur (Southern Luzon), and Tawi-Tawi in the Sulu Archipelago, which directly exports to Malaysia (Bentley, 1999).

This event may have been direct results of illegal and destructive fishing practices such as poaching, poisoning (usually with sodium cyanide), and blasting which are still rampant in the country to date. Encroachment of commercial fishing boats into municipal waters (15 km limit from the shoreline) and non-selective methods like trawling, “pa-aling,” and “muro-ami,” which harvest massive resources at a single haul, decreases the capacity of stocks to replenish and at the same time destroys their habitat. By-catch has also increased as a recult of non-selective practices, rendering ecologically important species economically insignificant.

ENDANGERED AND THREATENED SPECIES

As earlier mentioned, the unregulated capture of some marine species, either purposely or as by-catch, have resulted in an excessive decline of their populations. Thus, these marine life have been considered endangered or threatened species. The most notable of these are whale sharks, seahorses, and manta rays.

The tropical aquarium fish (e.g., napoleon wrasses, larger angelfishes, butterflyfishes, surgeonfishes, triggerfishes, batfishes and groupers), which are commonly gathered from reefs, may be considered threatened due to the manner in which they are caught. The rampant use of cyanide imperils the remaining fish populations as well as the habitats in which they thrive. The magnitude of catch reveals that little is left to repopulate.

There are those which are rarely found like the megamouth (*Megachasma pelagios*), a shark species caught off the waters of Macajalar Bay in Misamis Oriental on 21 February 1998 (Reyes, 1998). The discovey is the 11th find in 22 years and believed to be the largest among the 11 sightings in the world. According to the report, "only 10 sightings of megamouths have been recorded by the world's scientific community since 1976." Another rare species, the coelacanth (known as "ancient" or "the living fossil" fish because it is believed to be extinct) was reportedly caught in the Sulawesi Sea (Indonesian side) near Bunaken in 1998 (Erdman *et al.*, 1998). A bottom gear intended for demersal fish catch caught two specimens. It is believed theat that the fish might be another species of coelacanth besides the only known species *Latimeria chalumnae* caught in South Africa since 1938. A further discussion of these species is devoted in the ensuing chapter.

Resource Management

LEGISLATION

- Passing of the Fisheries code and the strict enforcement of fishery laws
- Definition of municipal waters within a 15 km area as off limit to commercial fishing.
- Apprehension of fishers violating fishery laws such as blast fishing and use of chemicals (e.g. cyanide).

However, due to weak enforcement, some commercial vessels caught fishing within municipal waters have been freed.

MARINE PROTECTED AREAS

So as to maintain and even enhance the marine resources of the Philippines, MPAs (Figure 6.1) were established in biologically diverse areas. The following are some of the more popular and legally protected MPAs within the Sulu and Sulwesi Seas:

- Tubbataha Reef National Marine Park (TRNMP)
- Sagay Municipal Marine Park
- Apo Reef Protected Seascape
- Sumilon Island Fish Sanctuary
- Apo Island Marine Reserve
- Turtle Islands Heritage Protected Area
- FSP Marine Sanctuary Areas

It was only in the 1990s that MPAs have been given legal protection through administrative or executive orders, proclamations, and ordinances, although they have been in existence long before either through a barangay or municipal resolution, which more often than not, are temporary in nature or may depend on the whims of the incumbent officials.

Fishing within MPAs are strictly banned although poachers have been known to frequent these areas. Fortunately, with the consolidated efforts of the government, NGOs (Non-Governmental Organizations) and concerned communities, effective enforcement is ensured.

Chapter V

Species of Special Concern

BACKGROUND

The SSME is indeed a trove of marine biodiversity, but more than that it is a treasure chest of fascinating and awesome underwater gems. The ecoregion hosts an array of charismatic species, all of which are noteworthy not just by their sheer majesty and elegance, but because they are the last remaining individuals of their kind. Many of them are in danger of disappearing forever because of our own greed. An entire chapter is designated to "species of special concern" to emphasize how substantial the SSME is just by harboring these species.

MARINE BIRDS

Flordeliz Guarin and Johanna Pe-Montebon

Better known as seabirds, marine birds are those that spend a significant portion of their lives at sea, nesting on land but feeding, at least partially, at sea hence have webbed feet to aid them them in water (Castro and Huber, 1997).

Occurrence and Distribution

Several areas within the SSME have been documented for the presence of large populations of different species of marine birds. Though these birds are capable of crossing vast distances, small and usually uninhabited islands free of human intrusion provide suitable nesting and/or breeding places. Among the most significant areas is the Sulu Sea which include the Tubbataha Reefs, Cagayancillo, Cavili, and the lesser islands and islets.

In Tubbataha Reefs alone, a total of 40 species, of which 16 are additional records, were observed on both Bird and South Islets (Table 5.1). Of the total, 12 species are marine birds composed of probably the largest assemblage of boobies, noddies, and terns in the Sulu Sea. Of the 12 seabirds, seven species are facing threats due to human activities. In Bird Islet, more than 1500 brown boobies and 753 nests were recorded on March 1995 (Table 5.2). These birds are known to be sensitive to disturbance such as tourist arrivals thus they leave their nests unattended, and permits poachers to collect the eggs left in the nests. In South Islet, nesting populations were noted although their colonies were not as numerous as in the other areas surveyed. The species found were brown boobies; the roseate tern *Sterna dougallii*, little tern *Sterna albifrons*, brown noddies, the greater crested terns, and the predatory *Arenaria interpes*.

Table 5.1 Seabird species recorded in Tubbataha Reef National Marine Park in March, May, and June 1995.

Species	**Family**	**Status**	**Breeding Pairs**	**Remarks**
Puffinus pacificus Wedge-tailed shearwater	Procellariidae	Vagrant; relatively uncommon	NB	
Bulweria bulweria Bulwer's petrel	Procellariidae	Vagrant; uncommon	NB	New record
Fregata minor Great frigatebird	Fregatidae	ULV; threatened locally and in SEA	NB	
Fregata ariel Lesser frigatebird	Fregatidae	Uncommon; local visitor	NB	
Sula dactylatra Masked booby	Sulidae	Rare; may breed threatened (L/R)	?	Highly disturbed
Sula leucogaster Brown booby	Sulidae	RB; locally threatened	700+	Vulnerable to disturbance
Stema fuscata Sooty tem	Stemidae	RB; threatened locally and in SEA	250-300	Vulnerable to disturbance
Stema dougalii Greater crested tem	Stemidae	RB; locally threatened	75-150	Affected by disturbance
Stema bergii Roseate tem	Stemidae	Uncommon; may breed	?	New record
Stema douggalii Little tem	Stemidae	Uncommon; may breed	?	New record
Anous stolidus Brown noddy	Stemidae	RB; threatened locally and in SEA	150-200	Affected by disturbance
Anous minutus Black noddy	Stemidae	RB; threatened locally and in SEA	1750-2000	Affected by disturbance

Table 5.2 Number of breeding and possibly breeding birds in Bird (BI) and South (SI) Islet in 1981,1991, 1993, and 1995

Species/ Common name	1981			1991			1993			1995		
	Total #	BI	SI	Total #	BI	SI	Total #	BI	SI	Total #	BI	SI
Sula dactylatra Masked booby	150	+	-	5	+	-	2		-	0	-	-
Sula sula Red-footed booby	5	-	+	3	+	-	0		-	0	-	-
Sula leucogaster Brown booby	3500	+	+	600	+	-	650	+	-	1500	+	-
Sterna fuscata Sooty tern	5070	+	+	1000	+	-	11	+	+	700	+	-
Sterna bergii Crested tern	2264	-	+	100	+	-	18	+	+	135	+	+
Anous stolidus Brown noddy	2035	+	+	90	+	-	215	+	+	600	+	+
Anous minutus White-capped noddy	147	-	+	1503	+	-	2330	+	+	4000	+	-
Sterna abifrons Little tern	0	-	-	0	-	-	0	-	-	3	-	+
Sterna dougallii Roseate tern	0	-	-	0	-	-	0	-	-	7	-	+

Legend: + Present on islet; - Not present on islet;

In Cagayancillo, twenty-one species of birds, six species of which are seabirds were recorded in 1995 while three seabird species are found in Cavili. All species nest and breed in the areas where they were observed. When the populations from Tubbataha, Cavili and Cagayancillo were added, a total of 56 species of birds belonging to 41 genera under 25 families were documented.

Other important areas used by migrating seabirds as feeding grounds and sites for freshwater replenishment are:

- Olango Island - situated southeast of Mactan Island, Cebu
- Liguasan Marsh - the delta of Rio Grande de Mindanao
- The Agusan Marshes
- Davao Gulf Delta - these valuable marshlands are located in the Mindanao area, northeast of the Sulawesi Sea.

Feeding strategies vary considerably among seabirds such that the shape of its beak is related to its food and feeding style. Boobies (*Sula*) and terns (*Sterna*) are plunge divers with straight and narrow beaks for feeding on fish that are swallowed whole. They are graceful flyers that hover over their prey before plunging for it. Frigate birds (*Fregata*) have narrow wings and a long, forked tail. They soar majestically along the coast and steal fish from other seabirds or catch prey from the surface. These agile pirates seldom enter the water as their feathers are not very waterproof. Shearwaters (*Puffinus*) are part of the tubenoses, having relatively short, heavy and hooked beaks, ideal for holding and tearing prey too large to be swallowed whole. They are skillful fliers that catch fish on the sea surface though some plunge underwater to pursue their prey (Castro and Huber, 1997).

Threats

Birds often prefer the serenity that islands provide, but recently human intrusion into their habitats have been more profuse. Hence, poaching or egg collection has become a very serious threat. Another is the alteration of their habitat since settlements have sprouted in many marshlands. In areas which have been proclaimed as reserves or sanctuaries like Tubbataha's Bird Island, the threats are minimal but periodic human visits from tourists also cause disturbances. In 2000, a cleanup in Bird Island by KKP's Tubbataha Reef Conservation group revealed the need for a larger scale effort as more garbage like plastics, old tires, and other non-biodegradable materials, have been drifting ashore.

Conservation Initiatives

One of the conservation initiatives for the protection of Tubbataha is the Declaration of Tubbataha as a World Heritage Park. Marshes and wetlands have recently been the object of attention for conservation, although concrete efforts and the passing of ordinances are yet to be affirmed.

MARINE MAMMALS

Arnel Andrew Yaptinchay and Moonyeen Alava

Marine mammals are among the "highlights" of the underwater world. Apart from their majestic appearance, their brains are larger in relation to body size and far more complex than that of other vertebrates, allowing the storage and processing of more information. This partly accounts for their amazing adaptability (Castro and Huber, 1997). Something fascinating about marine mammals that live in the sea like fishes is that they have followed different paths in adapting to the marine environment. At least four major groups have successfully invaded the oceans: the pinnipeds, carnivorans, sirenians, and cetaceans. Of these, the latter two groups are represented in the SSME.

The sirenians (Order Sirenia) include the dugong (*Dugong dugon*) while the cetaceans (Order Cetacea) include the suborders Mysteceti (baleen whales) and Odontoceti (toothed whales, dolphins and porpoises).

Dugongs

CHARACTERISTICS AND DISTRIBUTION

The dugong (*Dugong dugon*) belongs to Order Sirenia and is considered to be the only herbivorous mammal that is strictly marine. This is to differentiate it from manatees that live in coastal, riverine and fresh water habitats and also from cetaceans that belong to a different order. Most of the gathered information about dugongs is based on studies made in Australia where the world's largest dugong population is thriving.

The dugong's body is torpedo shaped with small flippers and whale like flukes. An adult can grow to about 3 meters in length and weigh more than 400kgs. The diet is mainly of seagrasses, but subtropical dugongs are known to feed on invertebrates as well (CRC, 1998). The dugong stays in shallow waters of about 20m depth although they have been known to dive up to more than 30 meters. They have life spans of about 70 years and mature at the ages of ten to 17 years. Females give birth only once every three to five years (CRC, 1998).

Dugongs thrive in the coastal waters of the Indian and the Western Pacific Regions. Their range in East Asia covers China, Vietnam, Cambodia, Thailand, Malaysia, Australia, Papua New Guinea, Indonesia, Borneo, the Philippines, Taiwan and Southern Japan. They are, however, represented by relic populations that are separated by large areas where populations are either extinct or severely decimated (Marsh & Lefebvre, 1994).

Historically, there are records of dugongs in almost all islands of the Philippines (Kataoka *et al.*, 1995; Figure 5.1). Their present day distribution is based on aerial and interview surveys, sightings, strandings and capture reports. Baltazar and Yaptinchay (1998) reported that dugongs are distributed in the following areas of the Philippines:

- Palawan Province including Cuyo and Cagayancillo
- Southern Mindanao coast (Davao and Moro Gulf to Pujada Bay)
- Sulu Archipelago
- Quezon-Isabela-Aurora coast
- Lubang Island, Mindoro
- Guimaras Strait and Panay Gulf
- Northeastern Mindanao

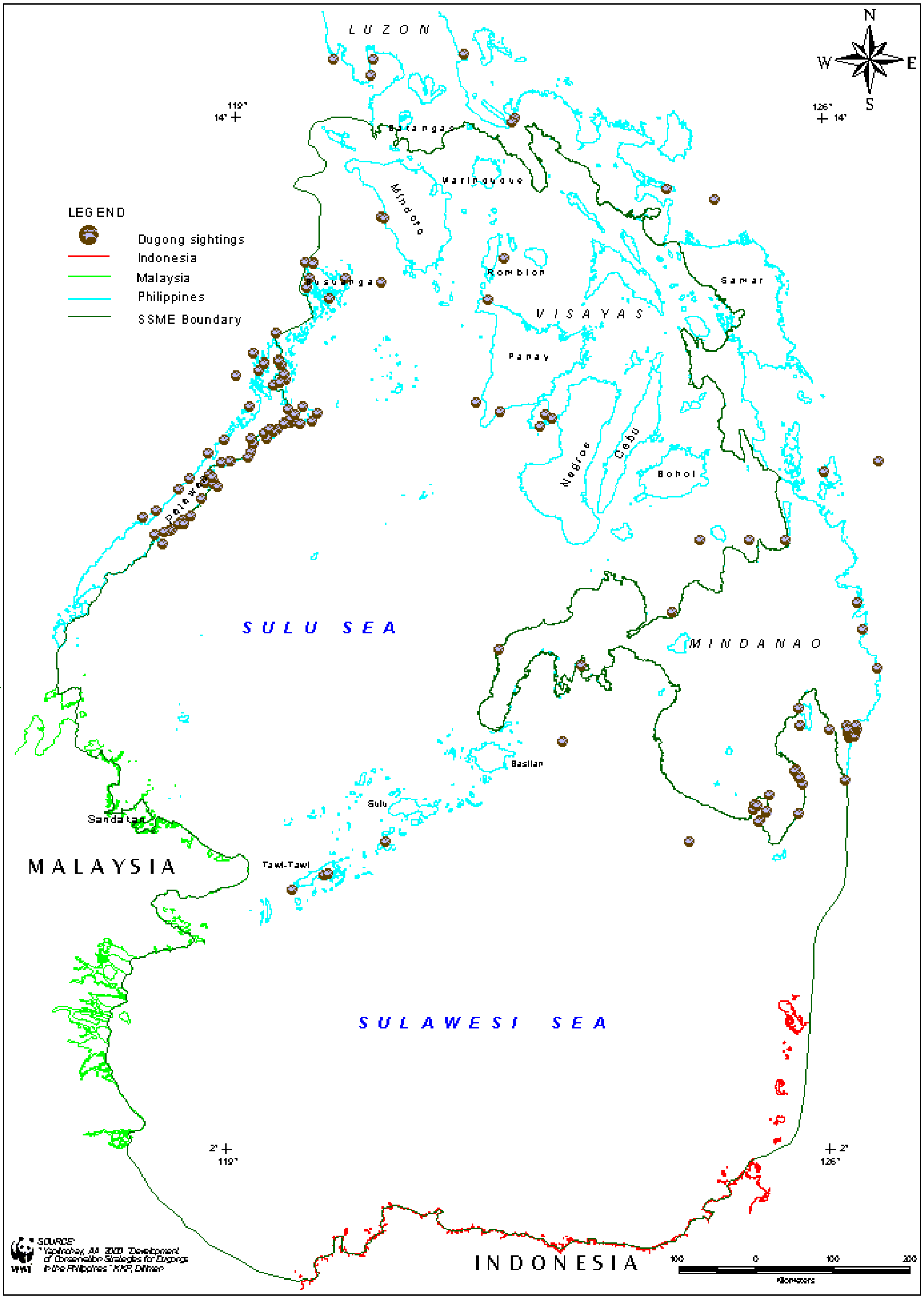


Figure 5.1 Historical sightings of dugongs

Palawan could be the stronghold for dugongs in the Philippines. There have been reports from Lubang, Mindoro, but recent sightings have not been recorded. The Quezon-Isabela area seems to hold a viable population especially in the Pollilio Islands and Palanan areas. Other areas that have rare reports include the eastern Bicol coast, Romblon and Masbate. The rest of Luzon and Leyte have yet to be surveyed to confirm the presence of dugongs in these areas.

There is no information on the dugong population in the SSME. The populations are best described as sparse and scattered throughout the different islands of the region. There are no counts of dugongs in the Philippines although aerial surveys and local workshops have been conducted to determine distribution extent. A survey in 1998 revealed that sighting rates were about 5.7 dugongs per hour in Palawan mainland, 10.2 in Busuanga, and 3.25 in Mindanao.

THREATS

The dugong population is critically declining throughout its range. This is mainly brought about by its slow rate of reproduction coupled with intense human exploitation. Scientists believe that the alteration of the habitat and the disappearance of seagrass areas (Table 5.3) and primarily hunting by people has resulted in the decline of the population of dugong. Other causes of the decline in dugong polluted were cited as the direct exploitation for food. The method of catching vary from use of harpoon/spear to dynamite fishing. Dugongs are also included in incidental catches in fishnets. These mammals are entrapped in nets and die from suffocation and stress after a few minutes of entrapment. They are extremely vulnerable animals and are in the verge of extinction in the Philippines.

Table 5.3 Elimination functions of seagrass habitats in coastal East Asia (modified from Fortes, 1989)

	INDO	**MALA**	**PHIL**	**SING**	**THAI**
Aquaculture					
Fish	I3	I2	I3	X	I2
Crabs	X	I1	X	I1	
Prawns	X	I2	X	IW	
Ricefields	X	X	X	X	X
Sugarcane	X	X	I1	X	X
Palm plantation	X	X	X	X	
Other agriculture	X	X	X	X	X

	INDO	MALA	PHIL	SING	THAI
Pasture	X	X	X	X	X
Solar salt	I1	X	I2	X	X
Industrial development	I2	W3	W3	W3	
Urban development	W2	I3	W3	I3	
Ports	X	X	W3	W3	I1
Airports	X	X	I1	I3	I1
Recreation	X	W	W3	W2	I3
Mining	X	I1	I3	X	I2
Waste disposal	W	W2	X	X	
Flood run-off engineering	I1	I2	X	X	
Boat traffic	I	X	W2	W2	I1

Legend:
I=use is localized; W=use is widespread; X=information inadequate; 1=minor use; 2=moderate use; 3=major use; INDO=Indonesia; MALA=Malaysia; PHIL=Philippines; SING=Singapore; THAI=Thailand

Fortes & McManus as cited by DENR/UNDP (1997) attributes the destruction of seagrass beds and soft bottom communities into three main categories, namely: biophysical, sociocultural, and institutional issues.

CONSERVATION INITIATIVES

- Legal status

  The dugong is listed under Appendix I in the CITES, except in Australia where it listed as Appendix II. The IUCN categorized it as vulnerable. It is also included in the CMS under its Appendix II listing. They are listed as endangered in the US Endangered Species Act.

  Prior to 1991, the Wildlife Law of 1916, No. 2590 allowed the protection of dugongs in the country. But dugongs in the Philippines became officially protected through DAO No. 55 banning the taking, harming and disturbance of dugongs and its habitat. It classifies the dugong as endangered. The Pawikan Conservation Project of the Protected Areas and Wildlife Bureau (PAWB), DENR is mandated to implement this law. However, this law is not fully enforced because of the poor implementation by the Philippine government. Fortunately though, there had already been some convictions effected in Palawan.

- Protected areas

  There are no protected areas for dugongs in the Philippines, but Green Island and Taytay Bays have been proposed sites. Several Protected Areas under NIPAS category are dugong habitats including Pujada Bay Protected Landscape/ Seascape, Sarangani Bay Protected Seascape, Apo Reef Natural Park, and Siargao Protected Area.

Other areas that are dugong habitats may be protected through the national marine parks and national marine reserves, game refuges, wilderness areas, mangrove swamp forest reserves, islands proclaimed as tourist zones and marine reserves, and protected areas declared through administrative and memorandum orders.

- Conservation and research activities

  Research and conservation of dugongs are carried out by three agencies namely: DENR, WWF-Philippines, and the University of the Philippines.

  WWF-Philippines has been involved in dugong conservation since 1996. The activities mainly focus on research and assessment of dugongs and information, education and communication programs (IEC) in the Philippines. Aerial surveys have been conducted with Toba Aquarium of Japan and the DENR. Training workshops have been organized for various groups in the Philippines and Malaysia.

  PAWB, through the field offices of the DENR and the Pawikan Conservation Project is mainly involved in habitat surveys, implementation of DAO 55, PA establishment, monitoring and IEC. The major activities that they are implementing are research, resource management, and information, education, and communication. A five-year plan for the conservation of marine mammals was formulated as a result of the Symposium Workshop on Marine Mammal Conservation held in Quezon City in 1994.

  UPLB is mainly involved in surveys of marine mammals in various parts of the Philippines. A study conducted by Aragones (1994) in Calauit Island has been published.

  Other groups involved in dugong conservation work in the country include the Palawan Marine Mammal Rescue Society, engaged in the release and salvage of captured dugongs in Palawan. SAGUDA-Palawan and the Mindanao Environment Forum in IEC programs. There is currently no central information source for dugong information in the Philippines.

- Others activities

  The potential for dugong tourism is low with only one site in the region (Dimakya Island, Palawan) available for underwater observation by SCUBA divers. This issue was taken up in the First National Dugong Seminar Workshop with recommendations to establish guidelines on dugong tourism in the said Island.

Whales and Dolphins

CHARACTERISTICS AND DISTRIBUTION

The largest group of marine mammals is the cetaceans (Order Cetacea), the whales, dolphins, and porpoises. Of all marine mammals, the cetaceans have made the most complete transition to aquatic life. While the rest return to land at least partially, cetaceans spend their entire lives in the water. Their streamlined and fish-like bodies are classic examples of convergent evolution (Castro and Huber, 1997).

Jeferson *et al.* (1994) reported 78 extant species currently recognized under the Order Cetacea which is divided into 2 suborders: Mysticeti (baleen whales) and Odontoceti (toothed whales). Based on the geographic distribution, there are roughly about 26 tropical and circumtropical species of cetaceans in the world, and possibly around the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas. Worldwide, there are 11 species of mysticetes belonging to six genera and four families while odontocetes have 67 species under 34 genera and nine families. Of these, 19 confirmed species occur in Philippine waters with 16 species present in the Sulu Sea (Figure 5.2). In addition to the 16 species found in the Philippine side, three species are found in the Malaysian side of the Sulu Sea.

The different cetacean species demonstrate variable schooling characteristics. The spotted dolphin has the highest school size in the northern Sulu Sea. The large whales, fin and Bryde's whales are solitary. Some species prefer the deeper waters e.g., pilot whales found in waters of 1000 m deep, while some prefer to stay close to the shoreline such as the fin whales.

Table 5.4 is a list of cetaceans found in the Philippines.

THREATS

Because of their size cetaceans are prized targets of fishers, hence, species populations have drastically declined through the years. Aside from the Bryde's whale, other cetacean populations that may be threatened in the Philippines are: sperm whales off Bohol Sea; the finless porpoise in northern Palawan; Irawaddy dolphins in Malampaya Sound, Palawan; and humpback whales off Fuga Island, Northern Philippines. Based on interviews, Tan (1995a and b) mentioned that the finless porpoise was once plentiful in the Visayan and Northern Mindanao rivers, but is now limited to Malampaya Sound in Northwest Palawan.

Marine mammals are either hunted directly or unintentionally as by-catch. Direct hunting occurs in the following areas: San Francisco, Negros Oriental; Dapitan in Mindanao; Pamilacan Island in Bohol; Catarman in Camiguin Island, Mindanao; San Jose, Panay; and Brooke's Point in Palawan. Indirect takes were documented in the following areas: in Negros Oriental and Occidental, Bohol, Cebu, Panay, Southern Leyte and Northern Mindanao.

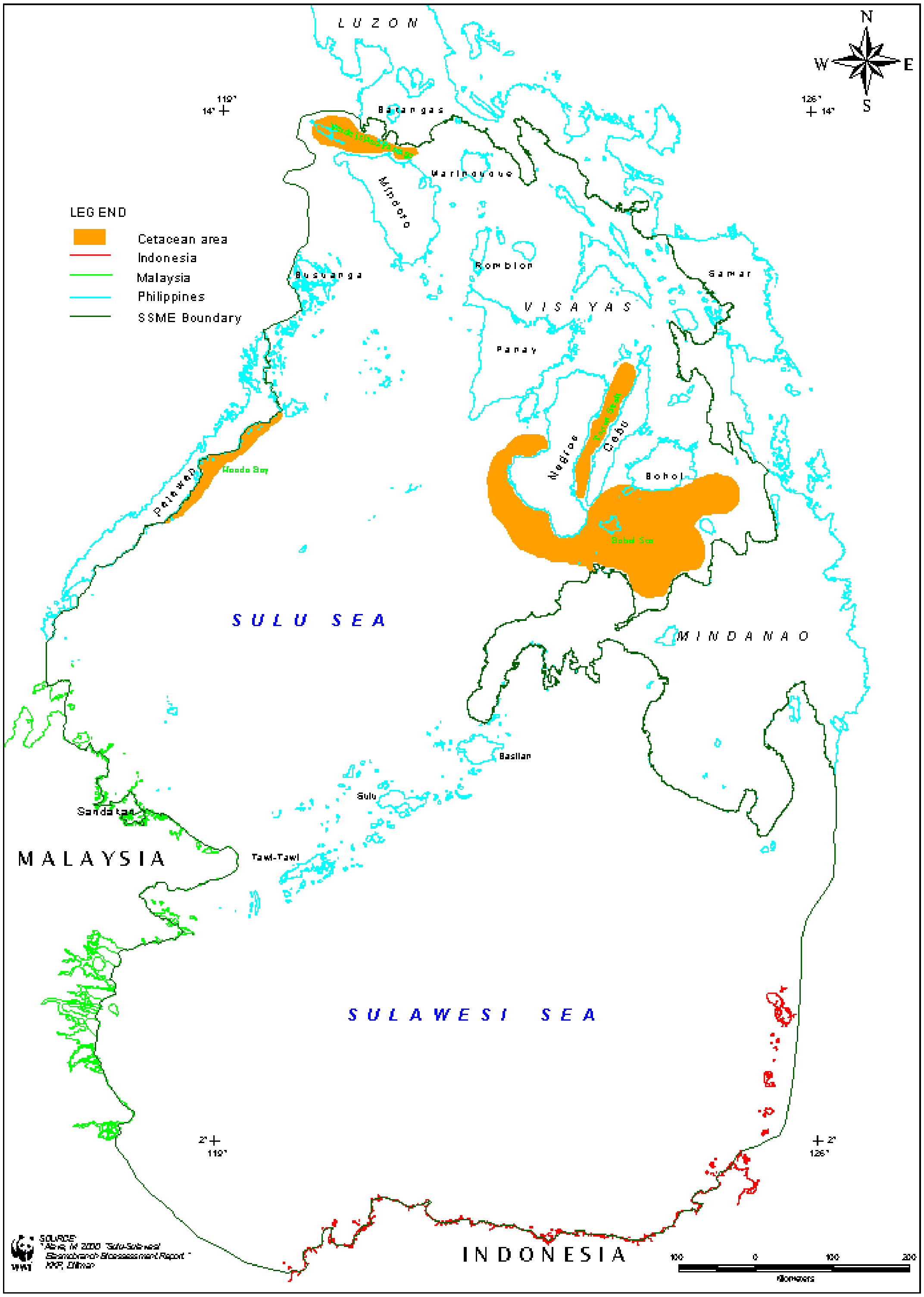


Figure 5.2 Distribution of cetaceans in the Philippines

Table 5.4 List of confirmed and probably existing cetaceans in Philippine waters.

Groups
Suborder Mysticeti (Baleen whales)
Family Balaenopteridae Balaenoptera acurostrata (Minke whale) Balaenoptera edeni (Bryde's whale) Balaenoptera physalus (Fin whale) Megaptera novaeangliae (Humpback whale)
Suborder Odontoceti (Toothed whales)
Family Physeteridae (Sperm whale) Physeter macrocephalus or P. catodon (Sperm whale)
Family Kogiidae (Dwarf and Pygmy sperm wales) Kogia breviceps (Pygmy sperm whale) Kogia simus (Dwarf sperm whale)
Family Ziphiidae (Beaked whales) Hyperoodon planifrons (Southern bottlenose whale) Mesoplodon densirostris (Blainville's or dense beaked whale) Ziphius cavirostris (Goose- beaked whale or Cuvier's beaked whale)
Family Delphinidae (Ocean dolphins) Feresa attenuata (Pygmy killer whale) Grampus griseus (Risso's dolphin) Globicephala macrorhynchus (Short-finned pilot whale) Lagenodelphis hosei (Fraser's dolphin) Orcaella brevirostris (Irrawaddy river dolphin) Orcinus orca (Killer whale) Peponocephala electra (Melon-headed whale) Pseudorca crassidens (False killer whale) Stenella attenuata (Pantropical spotted dolphin) Stenella coeruleoalba (Striped dolphin) Stenella longirostris (Long snouted spinner dolphin) Steno bredanensis (Rough-toothed dolphin) Tursiops truncatus (Bottlenose dolphin)
Family Phocoenidae (Porpoises) Neophocoena phocaenoides (Finless porpoise)

Source: Leatherwood, *et al*., 1992; Tan, 1995a; Perrin *et al.*, 1996; Alava and Yaptinchay, 1997; Dolar, 1999c.

RESOURCE MANAGEMENT INITIATIVES

- Legal status

  Reports of the exploitation of marine mammals led, in 1991, to the issuance DA Administrative Order (FAO) No 185 protecting dolphins. Although the issuance of FAO 185 had positive impacts, FAO 185 did not protect other cetacean groups outside Family Delphinide. In 1997, FAO 185 was ammended to include protection of all cetacean species (FAO 185-1). These orders bans the taking, catching, selling, purchasing, possessing, transporting or exporting of all cetacean species.

  Two critical sites were identified as high priority marine mammal MPAs: Tañon Strait (between the islands of Negros and Cebu) and Bohol Sea. The latter has already been declared a marine mammal sanctuary in 1998 while the former, is still undergoing the process.

- Institutional cooperation

  In 1993, DENR issued special Order No. 1636 creating the Inter-agency Marine Mammal Task Force, composed of DENR-PAWB, DA-BFAR, SUML, UP-MSI, WWF, and Bookmark. In 1994, the First Philippine Marine Mammal Symposium-Workshop was convened, which identified four major concerns: a) survey and research; b) habitat and resource management; c) policy review and formulation; and d) public education and information (DENR-PAWB, 1994).

- Whale/dolphin watch

  The establishment of whale and dolphin watching organizations increase awareness among Filipinos on cetacean presence in Philippine waters; encourage people to learn about this animals; convert whale and dolphins hunters into spotters during the tours (thus encouraging non consumptive instead of consumptive utilization of cetaceans); provide income to other people in the villages; proper tour design to lessen impact on animals and their important habitats (Tan, 1995a and b; Perrin *et al*., 1996).

  The first whale/dolphins-watching tour in the Philippines was organized by Tan in August, 1993 (Tan, 1995a and b; Perrin *et al*., 1996). Since then, dolphin watching trips were offered regularly in at least three areas: Tanon Strait (run by Bais City Office of Tourism); Bohol Island (run by the Pamilacan Island Dolphin and Whale Watching Organization, a people's organization established by WWF-Philippines and the IATFMMC); and Davao Gulf, southern Mindanao (run by local hotel owners in collaboration with local fishers).

<u>ELASMOBRANCHS</u>

Moonyeen Alava

Characteristics and Distribution

Elasmobranch is the collective name for sharks, skates and rays. Elasmobranchs and chimaeras collectively make up the class of fish known as Chondrichthyans or cartilaginous fishes, which have evolved over 400 million years ago. Class chondrichythes is subdivided into two sublasses: Subclass *Elasmobranchii*, under which are the sharks, skates and rays; and Subclass *Holocephali*, the chimaeras or ratfishes. The group as a whole has struck fear in the hearts of men, having legendary reputation as being generally dangerous, vicious, killer of the seas.

Though less diverse than bony fishes (i.e., teleosts), cartilaginous fishes fill a wide array of ecological niches, adapting feeding strategies ranging from plankton-feeding (e.g., whale sharks, manta rays) to being the most successful predators in the sea (e.g., great white shark, tiger shark). Their success seems to be due to the particular combination of adaptive characteristics related to bouyancy, respiration, external covering, feeding, movement, sensory systems, osmoregulation, and reproduction (Moyle and Cech, 1996).

There are approximately 1,165 species of cartilaginous fishes (Class Chondrichthyes) worldwide, as adopted by the 1998 FAO shark action plan (Compagno, 2000b). These include at least 488 species of ordinary sharks, 627 spcies of batoids (winged sharks, skates, and rays) and 50 species of chimaeras or silver sharks.

Compagno (2000b; Appendix 4) reported at least 122 species of chondrichthyes belonging to 38 families; 2 species of chimaeras (1 family); 70 species of sharks (20 families) and 50 species of batoids.

Not included in Compagno's (2000b) checklist are the reports on two rare and large planktivores, the megamouth shark (*Megachasma pelagos*). The shark, which landed in Cagayan de Oro in 21st February 1998 (Morissey, 2000), is the 11th sighting in the world. Another is the remains of a possible basking shark (*Cetorhinus maximus*) found in Masbate (Lacanilao, *pers.comm*). A video footage of a shark's head in Honda Bay, Puerto Princesa also showed a big-eyed thresher shark (*Alopias* sp.).

In the Philippines, the most studied species is the whale shark, *Rhincodon typus*. Studies by Trono (1996), Alava *et al.* (1997a and b), and Yaptinchay *et al.* (1998) on the fishery and trade of whale sharks in the Philippines, focuses on the population in the Bohol Sea. Results of these studies revealed that the whale shark numbers are going down, either based on catch data in Bohol between 1993 and 1997 or on sighting information in Donsol between 1997 and 1998. Whether this suggests a declining population, there is not much evidence to support such a hypothesis. However, there is no initial estimate as to the population size of the animals, much less the characteristics of the population. Behavioral studies in the natural habitat (sans tourists) are also conducted in Honda Bay (Torres *et al.*, 2000).

Threats

ENVIRONMENTAL THREATS

The same threats imposed upon marine resources are also experienced by chondrichthyans. But of all these, pollution and habitat degradation and loss are among the most important.

Naturally occurring environmental changes which adversely affect the environment, eventually affects the species. However, Simpfendorfer (2000) pointed out that there has been few documented studies worldwide directed at assessing how environmental changes, either human-induced or natural, impact shark populations. He stressed that, particularly, in exploited populations, environmental factors can be the difference between sustainable and unsustainable populations.

THREATS TO FISHERIES

Historically considered as having low economic value to large-scale fisheries, chondrichthyan species have been often neglected by fishery management strategies. Today, in addition to environmental problems, chondrichthyan populations are also subject to overfishing. Many have become the target of directed commercial and recreational fisheries around the world, and are increasingly taken in as by-catch with other more commercially important teleosts (Camhi *et al*., 1998). Due to indiscriminate and unregulated fishing, and the lack of resilience of the species, the number of these fascinating marine creatures is dwindling at an alarming rate.

In the Philippines shark fisheries have been reported to exist throughout the country, with the piked dogfish, *Squalus acanthias*, being the most well known (Chen, 1996; Barut and Zartiaga, 1997). Targeted and commercial exploitation of the piked dogfish started around 1967, due to demand for squalene oil.

LOCAL AND INTERNATIONAL TRADE

Trade of shark and shark products are common in Sabah, where a number of coastal communities are dependent on the marine resource for subsistence and income. Fresh, dried or processed fins (and to a certain extent, shark and ray meat) are sold in all major markets in Kota Kinabalu, Sandakan, Semporna and Tawau (Ali *et al.,* 1999). Data available did not segregate shark products into species.

In the 1994 Annual Fisheries Statistics, Malaysia is reported to import frozen shark meat from New Zealand, Singapore, Hong Kong and Taiwan as well as other shark fins and fin products from Australia, China, Chile, New Zealand, Philippines, Singapore, Indonesia, Hong Kong, and Thailand, (Ali *et al*., 1999). Processed fins are exported back to Thailand, Korea, Hong Kong, Brunei and Singapore.

In terms of total value, the shark fishery has historically provided a relatively small contribution to the overall fisheries production. However, shark fishery is rising, hence, the threats that go with it.

Resource Management

LEGAL STATUS

Prior to 1998 there was no legislation in the Philippines that dealt specifically with the conservation of elasmobranch species. Reports of the slaughtering of seven whale sharks in Donsol, Sorsogon in early March 1998, led to the issuance of the Department of Agriculture's Fisheries Administrative Order (FAO) No.193 (series of 1998), banning the taking, catching, selling, purchasing, possessing, transporting or exporting of whale sharks and manta rays. However, since the establishment of the ban, poaching occurs in many areas of the country (i.e., Bohol, Sorsogon, Palawan), reflecting the inadequacy of the government to implement such a ban.

In addition to FAO 193, however, the New Fisheries Code has been passed (Republic Act 8550), which potentially protects all fishery resources under the "precautionary approach" to management.

<u>International organizations</u>

- International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN) or the World Conservation Union, is made up of six volunteer commissions, the largest and most active of which is the *Species Survival Commission (SSC)* founded in 1948. The SSC works primarily through its over 100 specialist groups which focuses on a particular taxon. One such group is the *Shark Specialist Group (SSG)*, established in 1991, whose mission is to promote the long-term conservation of the world's chondrichthyan fishes, effective management of their fisheries and habitats, and, where necessary, the recovery of its populations.

- World Wide Fund for Nature (WWF) and its affiliates are involved in elasmobranch biodiversity, research, conservation and management issues worldwide. Activities and support include: funding, coordinating, collaborating in shark-related projects, programs, or organizations

- The TRAFFIC network is the joint wildlife trade monitoring program of the IUCN and WWF, whose purpose is to help ensure that wildlife trade is at sustainable levels and in accordance with domestic and international laws and agreements.

MARINE REPTILES

Jose Angelito M. Palma and Angel C. Alcala

There are now close to 6,000 living species of reptiles, including lizards, snakes, turtles, and crocodiles. Their skin is covered with scales to prevent water loss. The egg has a leathery shell that prevents it from drying out so that reptiles can lay their eggs on land. Like fishes, reptiles are ectotherms, with their metabolic rates varying with temperature. Many species are long gone, like the icthyosaur and only a few reptiles still roam the seas. Some are rare and endangered; others are common but have a restricted distribution (Castro and Huber, 1997).

Sea Turtles

Sea turtles are an ancient group of reptiles. Unlike land turtles, sea turtles cannot retract their heads into the shell. Their legs, particularly the larger first pair, are modified into flippers for swimming. They usually leave the water only to lay eggs (Castro and Huber, 1997).

The SSME is considered a critical habitat for sea turtles. Five of the seven species of marine turtles are known to occur in significant populations in the region. These are the green turtle (*Chelonia mydas*), hawksbill turtle (*Eretmochelys imbricata*), Olive Ridley (*Lepidochelys olivacea*), loggerhead (*Caretta caretta*), and the leatherback turtle (*Dermochelys coriacea*). Major nesting populations of green turtles are found in the Philippine-Sabah and Turtle Islands-Berau, Northeast Indonesia areas. Clusters of rookeries for green and hawksbill turtles are located in the Northern Sulu Sea such as Apo Reef, down to the coast of East Kalimantan, Central Sulawesi and up to the Northwestern portion the Sulawesi Sea (Limpus, 1985; Palma, 1995).

IMPORTANT SPECIES

- Loggerhead (*Caretta caretta*)
  The loggerhead inhabits shallow warm waters close to nesting beaches. Its nesting areas are crevices in rocky or reef points. Nesting occurs in spring and summer and renesting frequency has intervals of nearly two weeks. Females usually lay two to five times per season, depositing on each occasion from 40 to 190 eggs. The major pattern of the reproductive cycle is two or three years.

  During the first period of life, the loggerhead exhibits a pelagic-nectonic existence feeding on organisms associated with *Sargassum* mats. There is very limited information on this species with the reported sighting only in Pilas Island in Basilan.

- <u>Green Turtle (*Chelonia mydas*)</u>

  The green turtle is a solitary nektonic animal that occasionally forms feeding aggregations in shallow water areas with abundant seagrasses or algae. It migrates from rookeries to feeding grounds, which can be sometimes several thousand kilometers away. Green turtles are widely distributed and is the most abundant among the five species found in SSME. Its major nesting population is found in the southwest portion of the Sulu Sea between the territorial limits of the Philippines and Malaysia known as Turtle Islands. Important rookeries are the islands of Baguan, Taganak, Langawan and the San Miguel Islands.

  In the Baguan Island Marine Turtle sanctuary, over 2,000 females nest annually between 1984 and 1989. Minor nesting occurs at Tubbataha Reef where 14 nests were observed in May 1991 and some in the Quniluban portion of Cuyo Islands specifically Taytay, Pamalikan, Mandit and Halog. As adults, *Chelonia mydas* is herbivorous but in captivity it can maintain a carnivorous diet. The main forage items of adult green turtles are the seagrasses *Thalassia*, *Cymodocea*, *Syringodium*, *Halodule* and *Halophila* and the algae *Gelidium*, *Gracilaria*, *Gracilariopsis*, *Hypnea*, *Caulerpa*, *Agardiella*, and many more.

- <u>Hawksbill (*Eretmochelys imbricata*)</u>

  Hawksbills inhabit clear, littoral waters of mainland and island shelves, and perform migratory movements that cause variations of population density in certain areas and seasons. Migrations among the islands in the Philippines, Indonesia, or along Peninsular Malaysia and Sarawak are probably performed by solitary turtles of by small groups. In general, hawksbill turtles nest on beaches, during warm and rainy seasons, and in summer. The nesting cycle is 2 or 3 years with a mean around 2.6 years.

  The hawksbill turtle can be regarded as widely distributed with low densities in the SSME. Low level nesting in the remote and least disturbed areas in the Phil.: In the Visayas including southern Negros and Sumulon Island; the Quiniluban Group of the Cuyo Islands, the Turtle Islands, and possibly in other parts of Palawan and the Sulu Archipelago. The Sabah Turtle Islands is the most significant nesting areas for hawksbill and is considered the biggest nesting concentration of hawksbills in the whole ASEAN region (Limpus, 1985).

  Hawksbills are carnivorous oftentimes observed poking in crevices between rocks and corals, which makes the diet often highly variable. The hawksbill is nectonic until it reaches around 10 cm of straight carapace length. When it approaches coastal areas its diet changes to benthic organisms, thus frequenting areas with hard substrata, corals, tunicates, algae, and sponges.

- <u>Olive ridley (*Lepidochelys olivacea*)</u>

  The most abundant turtle in the world, the Olive ridley inhabits the neritic areas and migrates along the continental shelves. It can dive up to 300 m deep but feeds in shallow waters. It nests in beaches, and like other turtle species, it shows nest-site fidelity. It is a facultative carnivore, capable of eating a single kind of food for long periods.

Few sightings and nestings are recorded in the SSME, mainly in the Sabah Turtle Islands, coast of Palawan, and Tanjung Aru in Central Sulawesi (Pawikan Conservation Project, 2001).

- Leatherback (*Dermochelys coriacea*)

  The leatherback turtle is a highly pelagic species that approaches coastal waters only during the reproduction season. Although small groups of individuals have been reported moving in coastal waters in the middle of concentrations of jellyfish and tunicates, it seldom forms large aggregations. It is capable of diving into deeper waters. The rookeries are characterized by approaches of deep water, absence of fringing reefs, and steep sloped beaches that facilitate the landing of the turtles. The adult is carnivorous feeding mainly on jellyfish, tunicates and other epipelagic, soft- bodied invertebrates.

  The nest is usually just across the high tide mark and very often below it. The nesting cycle is 2 or 3 years with females laying 4 or 5 times per season, depositing on each occasion from 61 to 126 eggs. The few sightings of this species are in the Quinluban group of Islands in the northern portion of the Sulu Sea with major nesting reported in Kuala Terengganu, Western Malaysia and Irian Jaya, Indonesia.

THREATS AND ISSUES

- Overexploitation

  For decades, the eggs of green turtles have been regarded as a delicacy, hence massive egg gathering has endangered the capability of the turtle to repopulate. The adult hawksbill, on the other hand, is slaughtered for its carapace which is utilized as ornaments and decorations and as other turtle shell items.

- Environmental degradation

  Changes in the environmental quality of the nesting and feeding areas of the marine turtles have affected the population.

RESOURCE INITIATIVES AND MANAGEMENT

The management and conservation of sea turtles in the SSME is basically undertaken by the respective national and state agencies. In the Philippines management and conservation of sea turtle resources is solely the responsibility of the DENR through the Pawikan Conservation Project (PCP). All turtle species are protected by E.O. 542 establishing a sea turtle conservation program through the creation of the Task Force Pawikan in 1979 which is now referred to as the PCP.

Within the SSME, a number of areas are under specific management regimes to protect sea turtles. The most significant management scheme currently implemented is in the Philippine-Sabah Turtle Islands. Aside from the respective management scheme implemented by the PCP and Sabah Parks, it has joined forces to collaborate management through the establishment of the Turtle Islands Heritage Protected Area. This is considered a landmark agreement establishing the world's 1st transboundary protected area for sea turtles.

Sea Snakes

DESCRIPTION

The term "sea snakes" refers to about 52 species of venomous snakes inhabiting marine waters between South Africa and Japan in the Western Pacific and Indian Oceans, eastward to a zone between Mexico and Ecuador, with the Indo-Australian region as the center of evolution of the group (Dunson, 1975; Minton, 1975). Sea snakes have anatomical and physiological adaptations to life in seawater. They live and breed in the sea without returning to land (except the species of *Laticauda* which lay eggs on land).

The sea snakes (true sea snakes) belong to the Family Hydrophiidae. There are 16 species reported in the Philippines, based on Smith (1926), Herre and Rabor (1949), Alcala (1986), Cogger (1975), and Punay (1975). This number would probably increase with more fieldwork, as it is much smaller than the number (32) reported from Australian waters (Cogger, 1975). Very little research has been done on the taxonomy and distributions of sea snakes in the Philippines. Most observations and collection records have been mostly in the Visayas (Figure 5.3). This bias should not be interpreted to mean absence of sea snakes in other marine waters of the country. It is, in fact, highly probable that the sea snakes reported from the Visayan Sea are also found in the Sulu Sea, Bohol (or Mindanao) Sea, Sulawesi Sea, South China Sea, and Pacific Ocean.

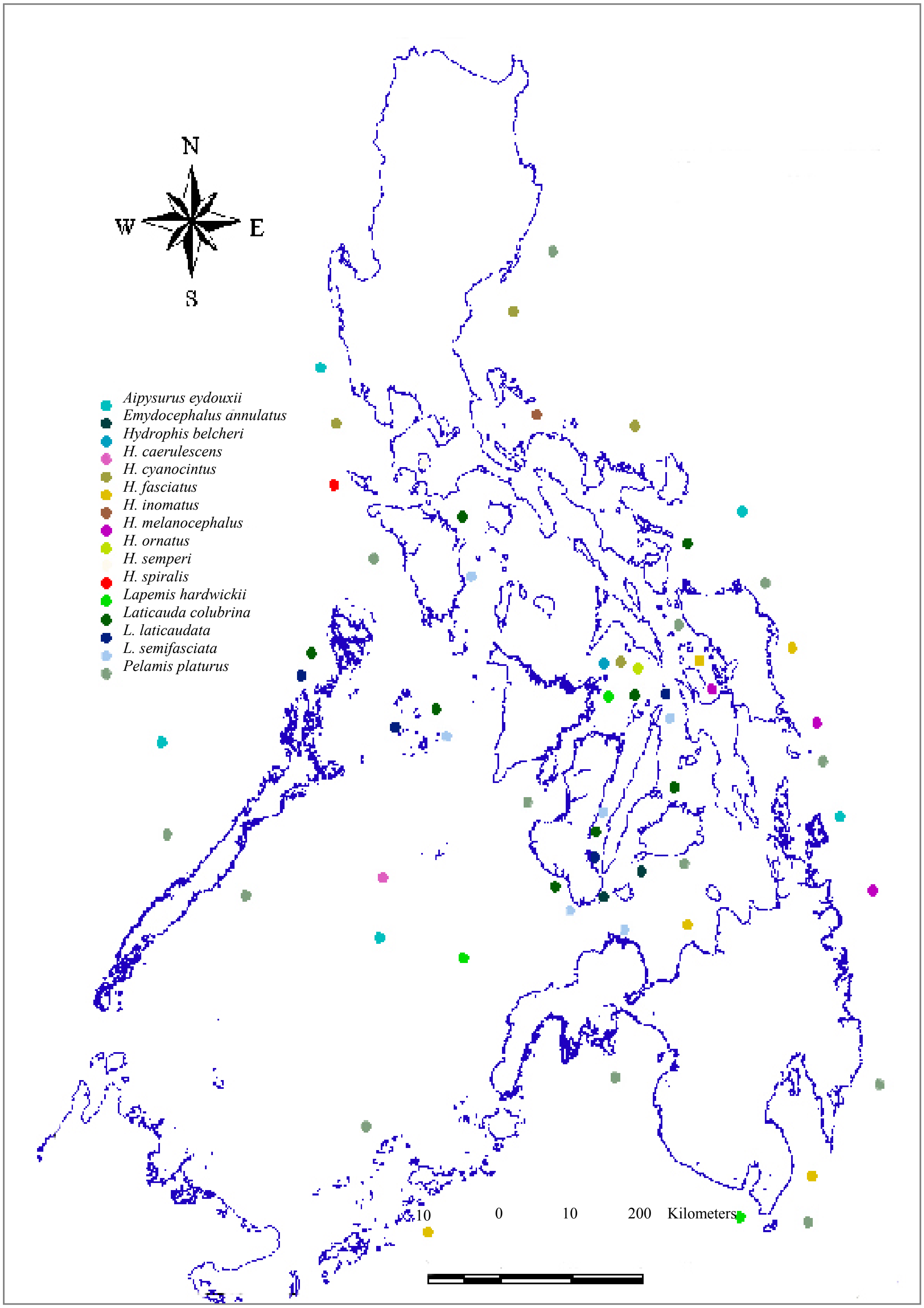


Figure 5.3 Actual and potential distributions of the 16 reported sea snake species in Philippine waters

GENERAL ECOLOGY

Sea snakes occur in shallow coastal waters, except for *Pelamis platurus,* a pelagic species which may be carried by currents to deeper seas. The genus *Laticauda* used to be found in large to moderate numbers in shallow waters around small islets and in coral reefs. Species of this genus lay eggs on land, in crevices of rocky islets. Other hydrophiid species bear their young alive in seawater. One species of *Hydrophis* (*H. semperi*) endemic to the Philippines, lives in freshwater Taal Lake, having been isolated there for a long geological period of time. *Emydocephalus* inhabits coral reefs at depths of 40-60 feet. Several species of *Hydrophis* are caught by trawls in sandy-muddy sea bottom. Except for species of *Emydocephalus* and *Aipysurus eydouxii,* both of which are fish egg eaters, all species of sea snakes feed on fish. All sea snakes possess venoms that attack the nervous system, but many species do not bite when handled. Practically all of them have small gapes, which make it difficult to deliver large amounts of poison to a victim. Nevertheless, they must be handled with utmost care.

ECONOMIC IMPORTANCE

There used to be a sea snake fishery primarily for leather in Gato Island, off northern Cebu, which started in 1934 and ended in 1971 (Herre and Rabor, 1949; Punay, 1975) when this fishery collapsed apparently due to overharvesting. This island, on which large numbers of *Laticauda laticaudata* and *L. semifasciata* previously congregated, is now found to harbor only a few snakes. Two other species, *Hydrophis inornatus* and *Hydrophis belcheri,* have been reported by Punay (1975) as sources of skins for leather as well as for meat.

Punay (1975) mentions marine areas for sea snake fishery. These are Cuyo Islands, parts of Visayan Sea, Catbalogan, Samar, Bicol Peninsula, Batangas Bay, Lubang Island, Zamboanga and Sulu Archipelago. It remains to be seen whether sea snakes abound in these areas because of the lack of field data. But where they are found in abundance, they could be a source of livelihood for coastal populations.

IMPORTANT SPECIES

The following species of sea snakes of the Family Hydrophiidae have been reported in Philippine marine waters:

1. *Aipysurus eydouxii* Gray - Found in deep waters throughout the country.
2. *Emydocephalus annulatus* Krefft - Probably found throughout the Philippines. Recorded from coral reefs off Negros and Bohol.
3. *Hydrophis belcheri* Gray - Reported from seas in central Philippines (Visayan Sea).
4. *Hydrophis caerulescens* Shaw - Probably present, but no definite records.
5. *Hydrophis cyanocinctus* Daudin - Luzon marine waters and Visayan Sea.

6. *Hydrophis fasciatus* Schneider - Recorded from the Visayan Sea and the areas around Samar, Mindanao and Sulu.
7. *Hydrophis inornatus* Gray - Recorded from marine waters of eastern Luzon.
8. *Hydrophis melanocephalus* Gray - Pacific Ocean to Australia.
9. *Hydrophis ornatus* Gray - Visayan Sea, central Philippines.
10. *Hydrophis semperi* Garman - Found only in Lake Taal, endemic to the Philippines.
11. *Hydrophis spiralis* Shaw - Only one record in the Philippines; range is not known.
12. *Lapemis hardwickii* Gray - Recorded from the Visayan Sea, probably in large bodies of marine water in the Philippines south to New Guinea and Australia.
13. *Laticuada colubrina* Schneider---Found in shallow waters along seacoasts throughout the Philippines. Records from Central Visayas marine waters.
14. *Laticauda laticaudata* Linnaeus - Found in shallow water around small islands throughout the country, including northern Cebu.
15. *Laticauda semifasciata* Reinwardt - Known to occur throughout the Philippines, including northern Cebu.
16. *Pelamis platurus* Linnaeus - In coastal waters throughout the Philippines.

Note: *Acrochordus granulatus* of the Family Acrochordidae is not included in the sea snake group; also *Hurria rynchops* of the Family Colubridae is not a sea snake. Both species are found in marine and brackish waters throughout the Archipelago.

INFORMATION GAPS

Three important areas in our knowledge of sea snakes need more research. These are taxonomic studies, distributions, and population densities in marine waters of the country. These studies are needed for proper management of our sea snake resources. It is recommended that a thorough study of sea snakes found in Philippine waters and in the Celebes Sea be conducted.

Chapter VI

Approaches to Biodiversity Conservation

SUMMARY OF THREATS AND RESPONSES

What we have done…

The connectivity between land and sea is unquestionably evident. Events that take place upland ultimately affect the organisms downstream. The previous chapters dealt with the current state of the different ecosystems and communities within the SSME. Regrettably, many, if not all, of these marine communities are threatened by human activities. Mangrove areas have been reduced significantly due to encroachment of commercial, residential and industrial facilities. Moreover, mangroves are overharvested for their multifarious benefits. The fisheries are declining due to overexploitation by commercial operators using highly efficient fishing gear and oftentimes intruding in municipal waters. These fishing gear also damage coral reefs and the bottom topography of the seas. Marine mammals, sharks, sea turtles, and other large marine species are threatened either due to direct takes or habitat loss (e.g., nonsightings of dugong in previously known ranges).

Various types of environmental degradation affect the coastal zone and marine waters. From upland, sediments are deposited along the length of the rivers, eventually finding their way into the sea and smothering corals and filter feeding bottom organisms. The biological structure may, thus, be changed, primarily affecting the most sensitive organisms. The species most resilient to the disturbance predominates and effects a change in the species composition.

As already mentioned, sediments form one source of contamination. Another type of pollution comes in the form of toxic wastes. Toxic wastes such as industrial liquid wastes and effluents reach the coastal water resulting in direct acute lethal effects i.e., mortality or long term subtle effects from chronic low level contamination. Subtle effects often take years to be recognized. These include immune system impairment of marine organisms, reduced reproductive success, developmental aberration and interference with the feeding behaviour. Only the organisms able to respond physiologically to these stresses are left to survive and populate within the area. Sadly, most species either succumb to these hazards and eventually die out, or they may seek alternate refuges in farther areas.

We have witnessed through the years, many examples of direct impacts causing large-scale mortality such as fish kills that include not only fishes, but also marine birds, marine mammals, and sea reptiles that feed upon them. Thermal effluents from factories and plants have caused massive fish kills and have altered the ecosystem altogether. Grounding of oil tankers had similar results. Sewage flowing into the beaches and nearshore coastal waters became a source of infection from pathogenic bacteria and parasitic helminths that pose health risks both from skin infection and ingestion of infected marine organisms. Harmful algal blooms have been known to occur over vast areas because of this. Solid wastes or nonbiodegradables carried by tides and currents into the offshore areas reduce the aesthetic significance of the underwater world. These also leak harmful chemicals which may be detrimental to the organisms within. Overharvesting has resulted in the depletion of resources and aggravates the already deplorable condition of the marine ecosytems. The use of destructive fishing gear have destroyed habitats for many years now and still continues to do so.

Overall, our marine environment is truly in danger with various threats impinging from all angles. The issues could be generalized into two wide-ranging categories: overexploitation of the biological resources and environmental degradation resulting in the loss or alteration of marine and coastal habitats. But the irony of it all is that we humans who benefit most from the seas are the common denominators who imperil it excessively.

What we must do…

The earth we live in is finite, capable of bearing only so much beating. The continued demands upon its already diminishing resources would ultimately strip it bare. It is time to take drastic measures to replenish the earth's wealth and save its last remaining treasures. Among these, is the SSME, the heart of global marine biodiversity.

With the concerted efforts of various individuals and organizations, mitigating measures will be set in place, habitats will be restored, species will again proliferate, and a rich future for the people who depend upon SSME will be assured.

REHABILITATE DEGRADED ECOSYSTEMS

Various institutions are collaborating to test different techniques in ecosystem rehabilitation. Coral transplantation is among the newest methods in practice. Although it is still too early to say whether transplantation is a better technique, it does provide promising results with fast growth rates facilitating recolonization. Seagrasses are also transplanted in some areas but are often left to regrow. *Sargassum*, often dominant within the break zone, has been harvested to denudation in many areas. Repopulation through massive spore recruitment have been proven to be successful. Although great efforts are being put into ecosystem rehabilitation, some haven't been as successful mainly because the method wasn't appropriate or the species used was unsuitable. Hence, a lot of work and research needs to be put in place.

ESTABLISH MARINE PROTECTED AREAS

The key to the establishment of an MPA is the selection of the site based on a prioritized set of objectives. The selected site either contains high species diversity (diversity hotspots) or hosts endemic or at risk species, habitats or ecosystems. Critical habitats like feeding and breeding areas, spawning or nursery grounds, and high productivity areas are a priority consideration. The presence of charismatic, endemic, and keystone species (those that play a major role in the ecosystem necessary in maintaining ecological processes) also entails special consideration for an area (Figure 6.1).

The declaration of specific areas, such as MPAs, are being initiated by the local government units. Over 700 MPAs are now recorded in the country but less than 10% are being effectively managed (Aliño *et al*., 2000). National parks such as the declaration of the Tubbataha Reefs as World Heritage Park have resulted in greater awareness of protecting the country's marine resources and in appreciating them. Because the law prohibits fishing and gathering activities from MPAs, the area is able to host aggregates of species which repopulate at a faster rate. They are soon able to export larvae and juveniles to nearby sink ecosystems, thus preserving the integrity of the species.

INTEGRATED COASTAL ZONE MANAGEMENT

Coastal resources management has been tried in many countries throughout the world. Initially it focused only on selected resources within the coastal area. Experience show that a more expanded, integrated and wholistic approach is necessary to realistically implement a management scheme.

The Integrated Coastal Zone Management (ICZM) or Integrated Coastal Area Management has been recognized to be more effective since many critical factors are taken into consideration. All critical ecosystems especially those at "risk" are analyzed by their root causes and all major environmental parameters are considered. A biological community is best protected through the integration of biological, physical, chemical and cultural (human-induced) factors. The ICZM provides a framework for integrating the management of activities, developments and resources of the environment and consequently, biodiverisity.

Conservation of the biological communities should be analyzed in its proper context. The ICZM framework that must be prepared should take into consideration the important players within the SSME. This means that before measures could be identified, a complete understanding of factors that contributed to the overexploitation of the different ecosystem components (the mangroves, fish, mammals), the alteration of habitat, or the degradation of the environment must be had. This requires the integration of the sociocultural aspects with the resource management issues prevailing in the study area such as resource use conflicts, the perpetuation of open-access resources, the failure of law enforcement and the different levels of policies from the local government, and the international treaties and national government issues.

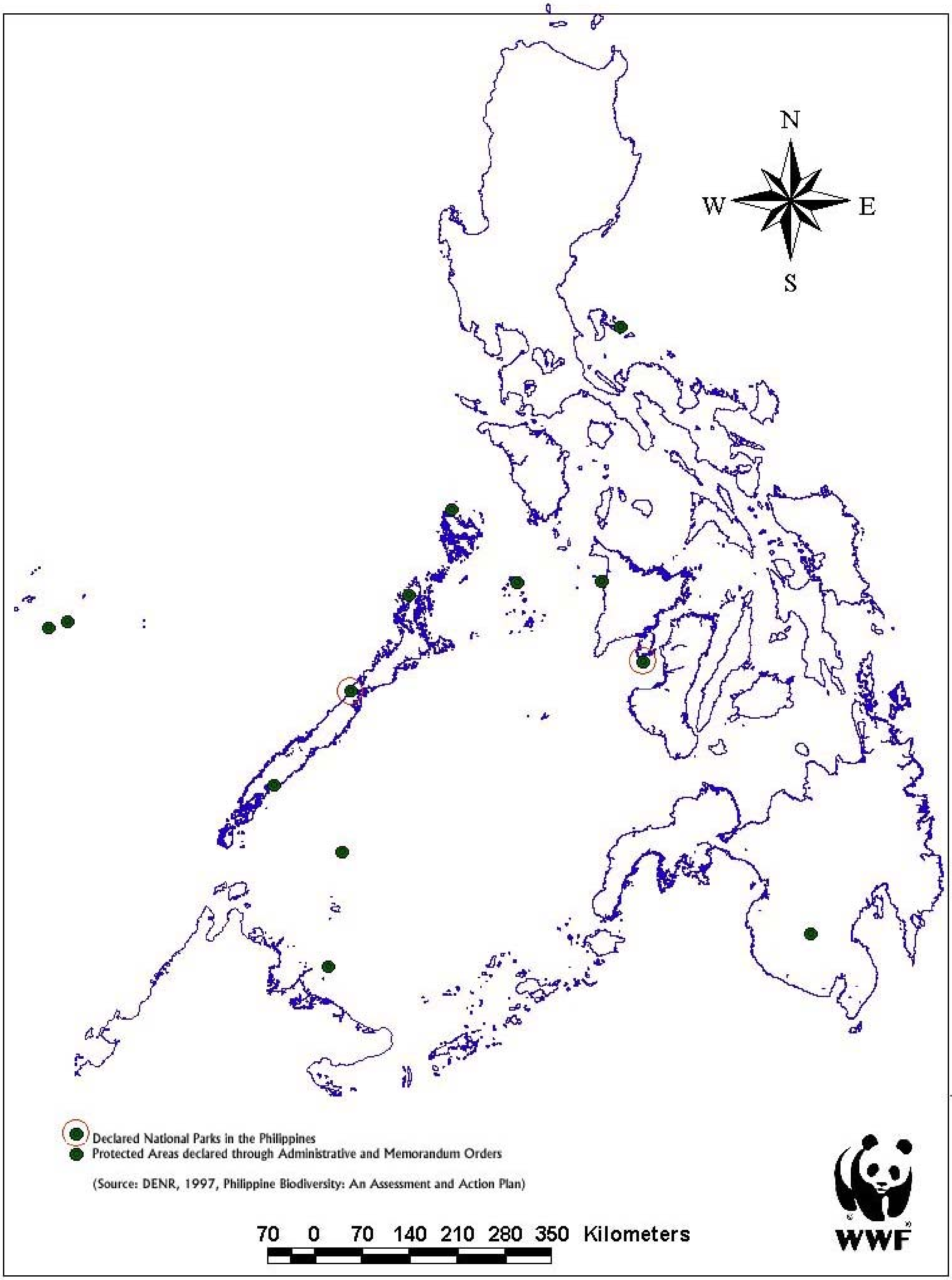


Figure 6.1 Marine protected areas (MPAs) in the Philippines

STARTEGIES FOR PROMOTING BIODIVERSITY CONSERVATION

In 1992, the Convention on Biological Diversity recognized the importance of preserving and protecting the earth's biodiversity. Several strategies have been recognized, namely:

- establishing a system of protected areas or areas where special measures need to be taken;
- regulating or managing biological resources important for biodiversity conservation, whether inside or outside protected areas in order to ensure their conservation;
- rehabilitating degraded ecosystems;
- legislating for the protection of threatened species and promoting their recovery;
- preventing the introduction of exotic or non-native species;
- regulating and managing relevant processes and activities known to have adverse effects on biological diversity; and
- encouraging relevant practices of indigenous and local communities.

The SSME Biodiversity Conservation Plan can adopt any or all of the strategies enumerated above, as identified during the 1992 Convention on Biodiversity. The question is how to choose and prioritize these strategies considering the present condition of the ecosystems within the SSME.

A first step would be establishing a system of MPAs or areas where special measures need to be taken. Marine Protected Areas are oftentimes established to conserve marine biodiversity and productivity. In many areas within the SSME, several marine protected areas (MPAs) have been identified and established as enumerated in Appendix 5. A system of monitoring and evaluating the impacts of such MPAs should be established in order to determine whether the system is working or not. Its significant positive indications are recognized, depending on the purpose for which the MPA was established, e.g. recolonization of degraded areas, increase in fish population, etc. then the system or the structure of the MPA is successful. However, if no significantly positive impact is recognized, then the MPA needs to undergo re-evaluation. The successful MPAs should be linked together either for further enhancement or for duplication to other areas within the SSME.

POST BIOPHYSICAL ASSESSMENT

The biophysical assessment is conducted as the first stage towards biodiversity conservation. Among its important points are:

- Species diversity or taxonomic diversity - refers to the variety of species or other taxonomic groups in an ecosystem.
- Ecological diversity - refers to the variety of biological communities found on earth.
- Genetic diversity - refers to the genetic variation that occurs among members of the same species

- Functional diversity - refers to the variety of biological processes, functions, and characteristic of a particular ecosystem

One must keep in mind the diffirences between marine and terrestrial ecosystems which makes conservation strategies and approaches between these two ecosystems unique.

SELECTION OF PRIORITY AREAS

In order to attain the conservation goals identified by WWF in 1998, several approaches in selecting priority sites have been put forward and these are enumerated as follows (WWF, 1998):

- Assess the relative rarity of different communities at different biogeographic scales. Rare communities may rank as high priority.

- Identify where native biodiversity will have the best chance of persistence based on the availability and quality of remaining blocks of natural habitats or intact native biotas. An example is in coral reef areas. In destroyed reefs, the potential area for conservation can have a higher chance of success if it is situated near intact source reefs that export larvae and juveniles.

- Identify blocks of particular habitats or species that are critical in maintaining important ecological processes. The liquid medium in the sea makes ecological processes continuous unlike land processes where spatial boundaries are more defined. Currents and tides that affect circulation patterns influence ecological processes such as productivity.

- Synthesize information for identification of priority sites or areas that are representative and contribute to the long-term persistence of biodiveristy within the ecoregion.

In the biophysical asesSement, the various ecosystems within the SSME have been described. In cases where historical data are available, trends are presented. With adequate information at hand, priority areas were identified. The “common” priority areas are those that have been recommended for several conservation efforts such as reef protection, charismatic species protection, or mangrove conservation. These include areas where management initiatives have already posted some degree of success or have been sustained over a period of years. Taking into consideration the major conservation goals of WWF and using as basis the above approaches, priority areas for the conservation of various ecosystems were plotted into the basemap.

Figures 6.2 to 6.8 illustrate some of the priority areas for conservation, specifically for mangroves, coral reefs, fisheries, and marine mammals.

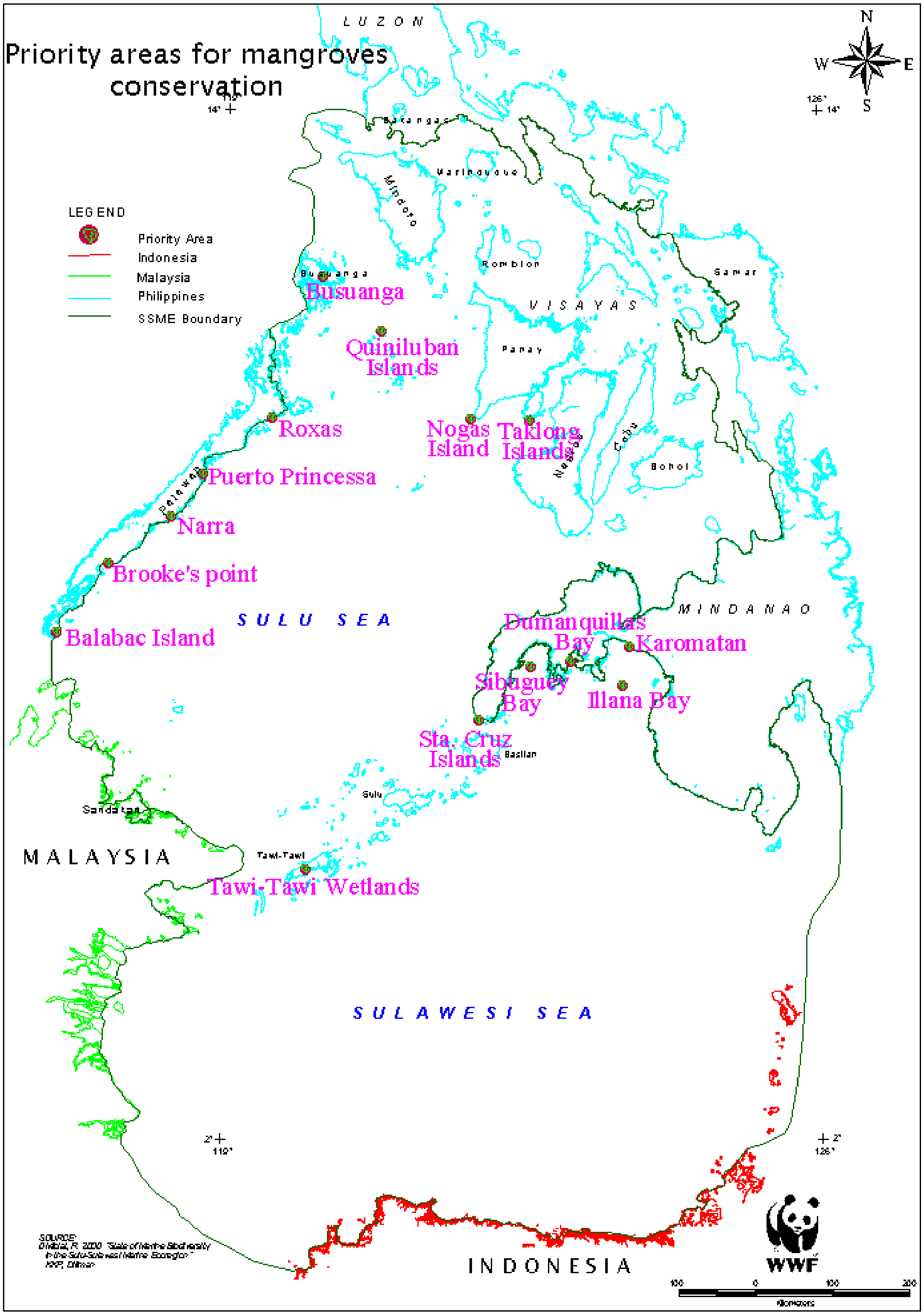


Figure 6.2 Priority areas for mangrove conservation

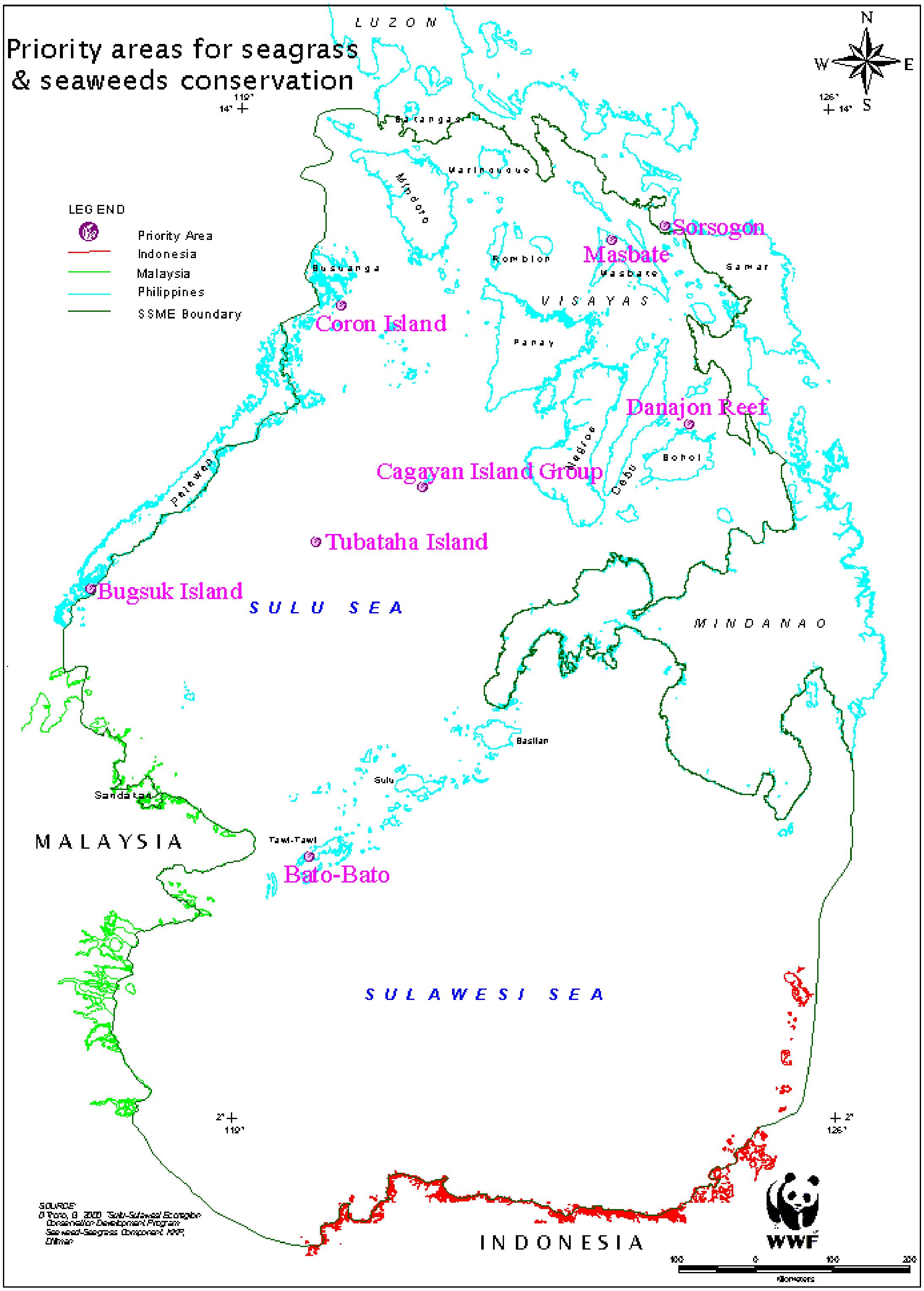


Figure 6.3 Priority areas for seaweed and seagrass conservation

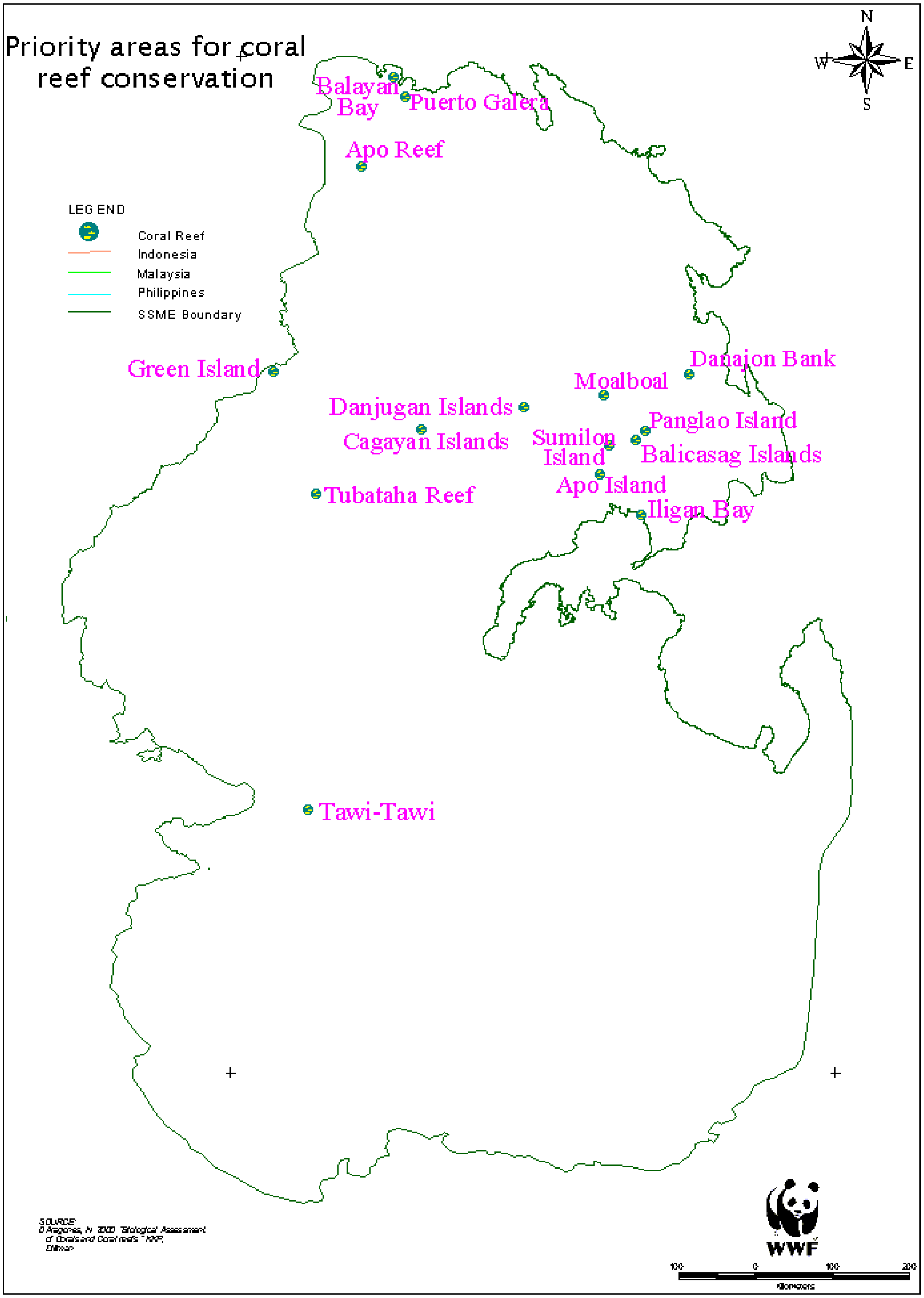


Figure 6.4 Priority areas for coral reef conservation

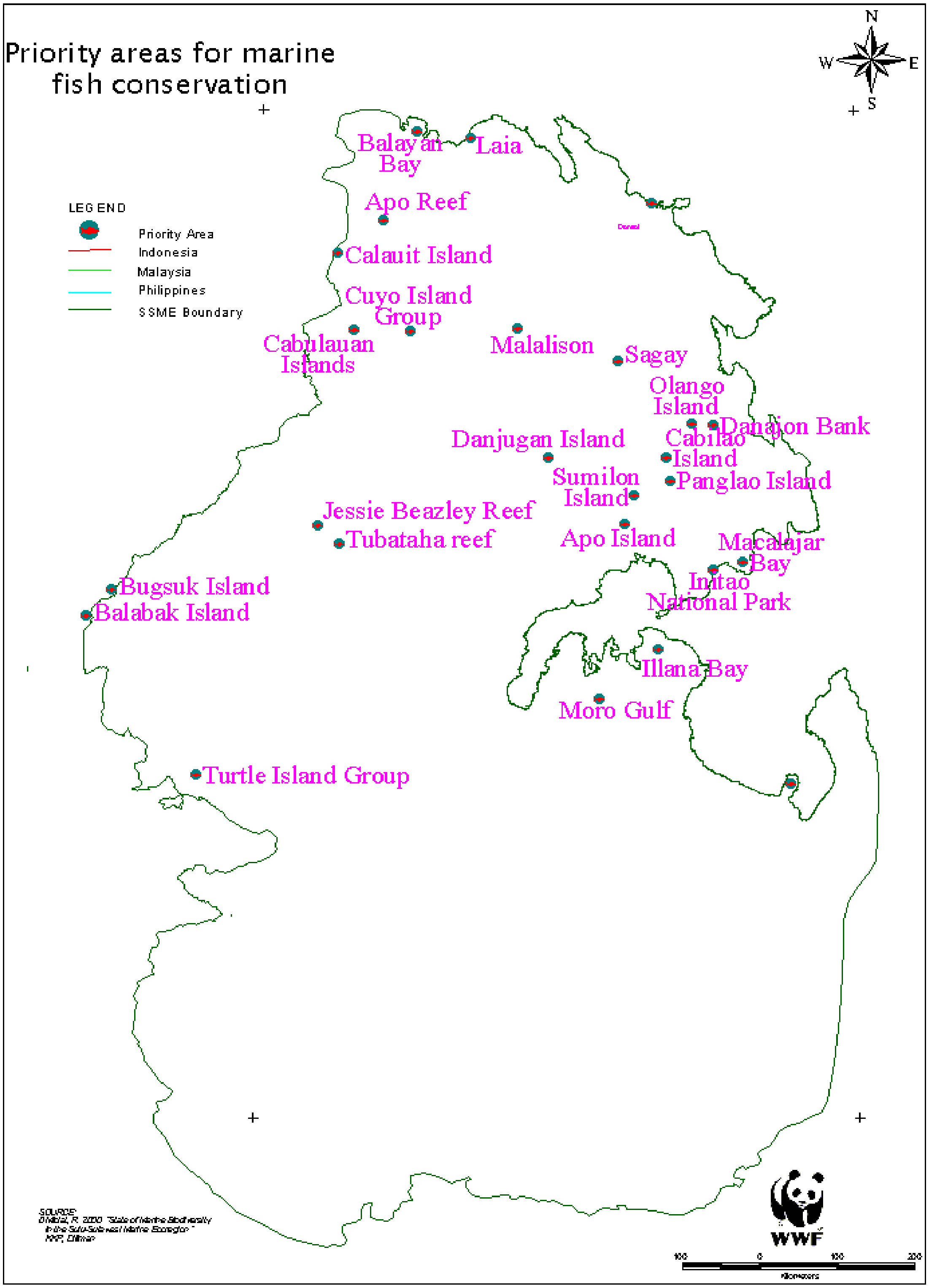


Figure 6.5 Priority areas for marine fish conservation

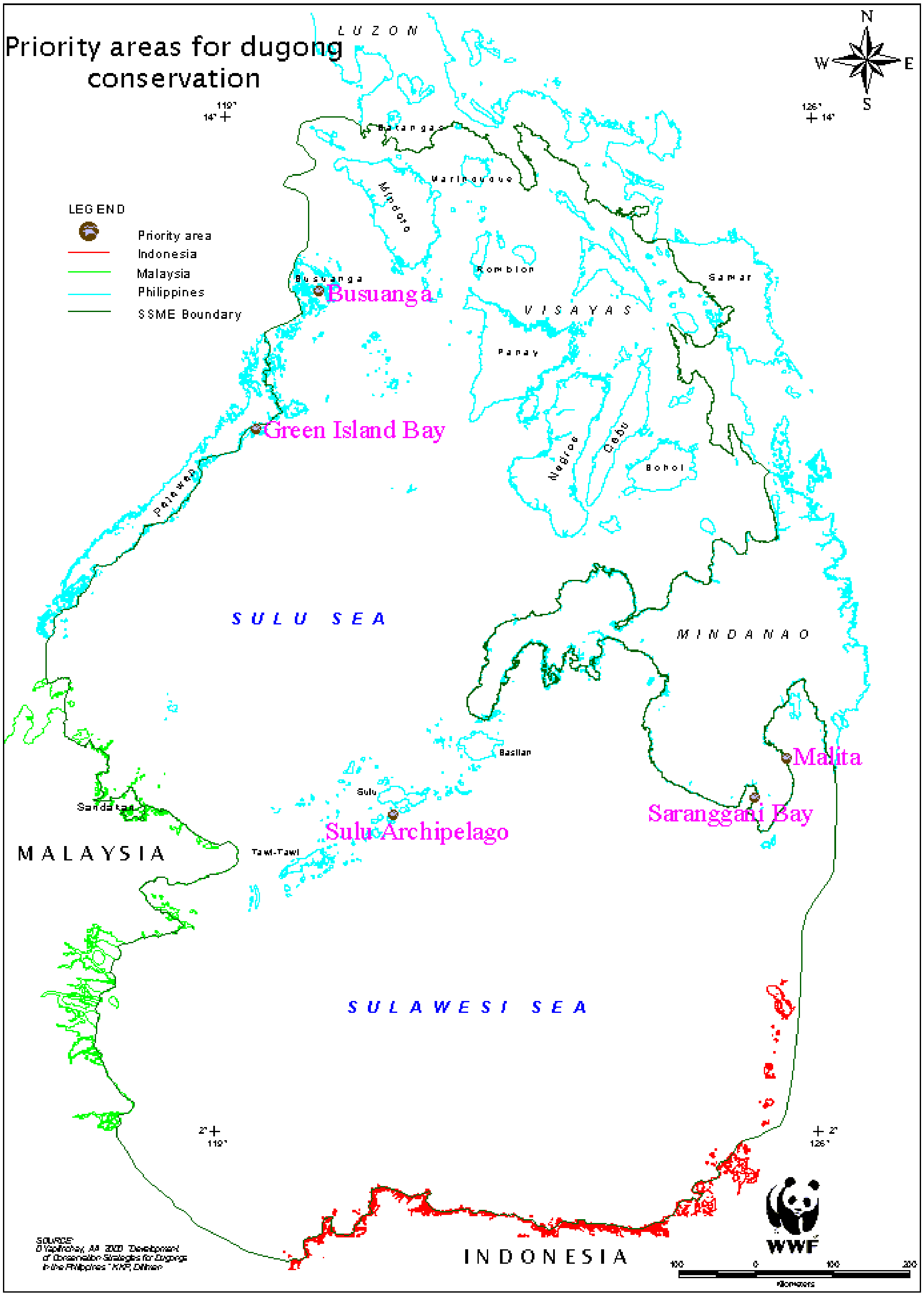


Figure 6.6 Priority areas for dugong conservation

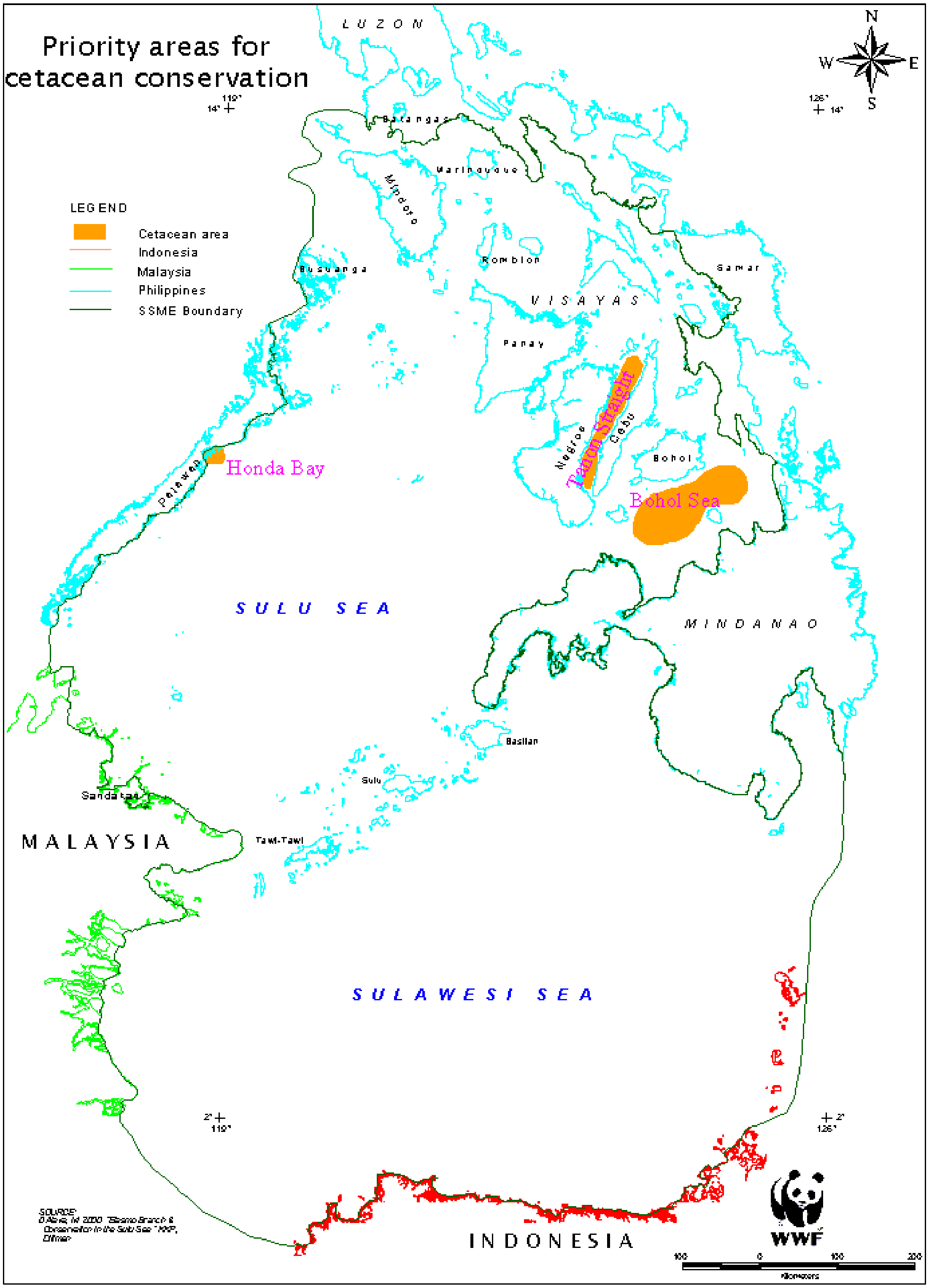


Figure 6.7 Priority areas for cetacean conservation

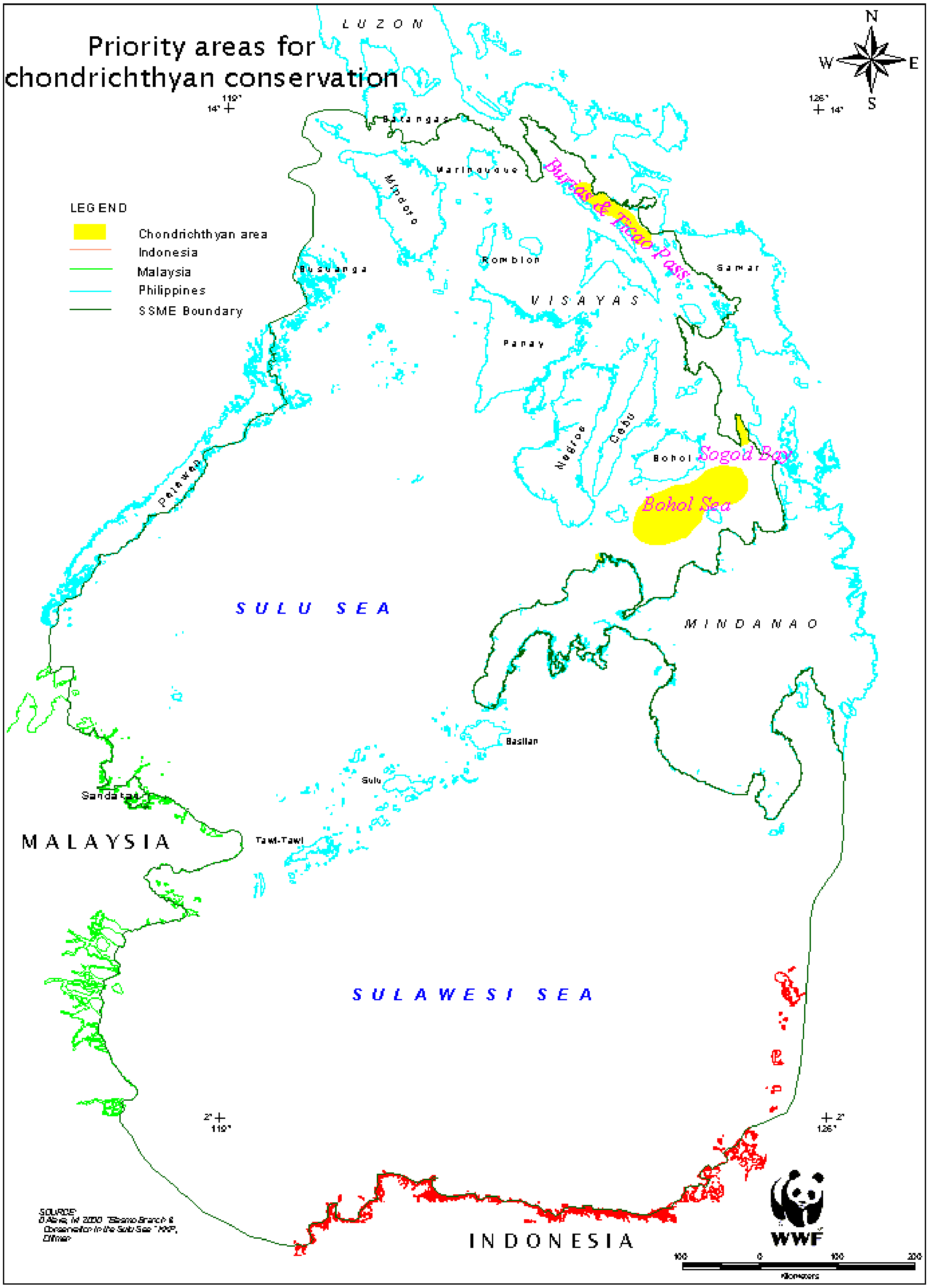


Figure 6.8 Priority areas for chondrichthyan conservation

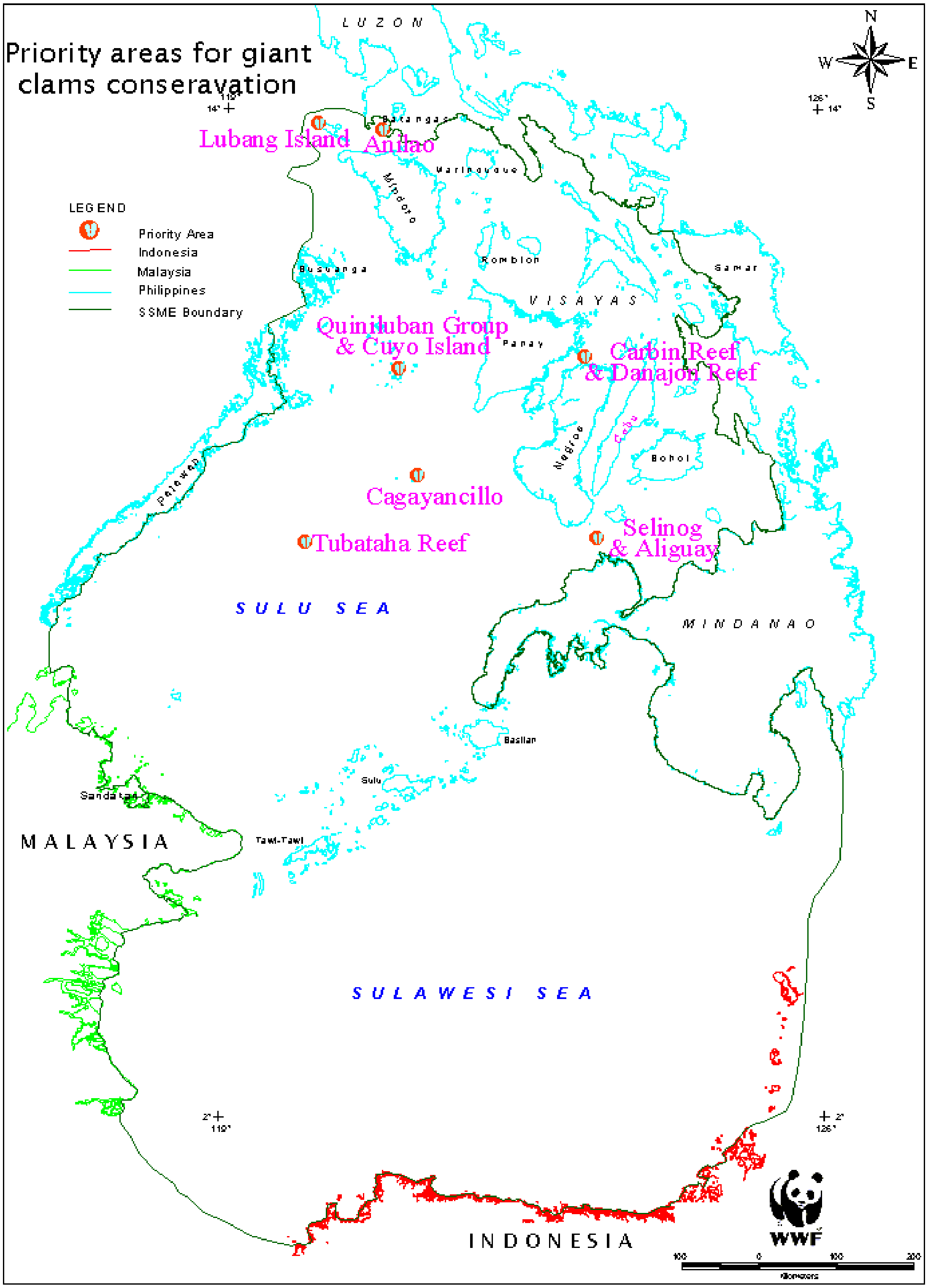


Figure 6.9 Priority areas for giant clam conservation

Abdul Hamid, M. 1997. Legislative requirements and constratints in sports fishing. Seminar on Angling and Eco-tourism: Synergy and Sustainability. University of Malaysia, Kuala Lumpor, 31 March 1997.

Abu Talib, A. 1997. Elasmobranch fisheries in Pensular Malaysia. Internaional Seminar and Workshop on Sharks and Rays Biodiversity, Conservation and Management. Tuaran, Sabah, Malaysia, 7-10 July 1997.

Agardy, T. 1998. The role of marine protected areas in coral reef conservation. Coral Reefs: Proceedings of an Associated Event of the Fifth Annual World Bank Conference on Environmentally and Socially Sustainable Development.

Aguilar, L. 1949. Calorific values of wood. *Philippine Journal of Forestry* 6 (2): 217 225.

Ahmad, A. 1998. Elasmobranch fisheries research and conservation in Malaysia. Japanese Elasmobranch Society Symposium: Recent Status of Elasmobranch Studies. Ocean Research Institute, University of Tokyo, Japan, 19-20 November 1998.

Alava, M.N.R. and A.A.SP. Yaptinchay. 1997. Marine Mammals (Cetaceans and Sirenians). *In:* Philippine Red Data Book. Bookmark and Wildlife Conservation Society of the Philippines. pp. 169- 246.

Alava, M.N.R. and A.A.SP. Yaptinchay. 2000. Whale sharks in the Philippines. Shark 2000 Conference. Honolulu, Hawaii, February 21-24, 2000.

Alava, M.N.R. and M.L.L. Dolar. 1995. Resource utilization on marine mammals in Visayas and Mindanao, Philippines. Eleventh Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals. Orlando, Florida. Dec. 14-18, 1995. (Abstract only).

Alava, M.N.R.; M.L.L. Dolar; S. Leatherwood; and C.J. Wood. 1993. Marine mammals of the Philippines. *Asia Life Sci*. 2: 227-234.

Alava, M.N.R.; A.A.SP. Yaptinchay; G. Acogido; M.L.L. Dolar; C.J. Wood; and S.Leatherwood. 1997a. Fishery and trade of whale shark (*Rhincodon typus*) in the Philippines. 13th Annual American Elasmobranch Meeting. Seattle, WA, USA, June 26 – July 2, 1997.

Alava, M.N.R.; A.A.SP. Yaptinchay; R.B. Trono; and E. R. Dolumbal. 1997b. Fishery and trade of whale sharks and manta rays in the Bohol Sea, Philippines. International Seminar and Workshop on Sharks and Rays Biodiversity, Conservation and Management. Tuaran, Sabah, Malaysia, 7-10 July 1998.

Albaladejo, V.D. and V.T. Corpuz. 1981. A market study of the aquarium fish industry of the Philippines: An assessment of the growth and the mechanics of the trade. *Proc. 4th Intl. Coral Reef Symposium* 1: 75-81.

Alcala, A.C. (unpub.). A list of sea snakes in the Philippines. Technical Report submitted to WWF-Philippines for the SSME Program. 5 pp.

Alcala, A.C. 1980. Observations on the ecologyof pacific hawksbill turtle in the Central Visayas. *Philippine Journal of Fisheries Research* 5(2): 42-52.

Alcala, A.C. 1986. Guide to Philippine Flora and Fauna: Amphibians and Reptiles. Vol. 10. Natural Resources Management Center and University of the Philippines, Diliman, Quezon City, 195 pp.

Alcala, A.C. 1988. Effects of marine reserves on coral fish abundances and yields of Philippine coral reefs. *Ambio* 17(3): 19.

Alcala, A.C. 1993. Ecological importance of the coral reefs in the Cagayan Ridge, Sulu Sea, Philippines. *Silliman J.* 36(2): 1-4.

Alcala, A.C. 2000. Blast fishing in the Philippines, with notes on two destructive fishing activities. *In*: Licuanan, W.Y. and E.D. Gomez (eds.). Philippine Coral Reefs, Reef Fishes, and Associated Fisheries: Status And Recommendations To Improve Their Management. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network (GCRMN).

Alcala, A.C. and A.S. Cabanban. 1986. Fry and larvae of fish and crustaceans in coastal marine waters of Negros Oriental, Philippines. *Silliman J.* 33 (1-4): 10-23.

Ali, A.; R. Ali; M. Nasir; and I. Salleh. 1999. Management of shark fisheries in Malaysia. In: Case studies of the management of elasmobranch fisheries. *FAO Fisheries Technical Paper* 378/1: 402-424.

Aliño, P.M.; E.F.B. Miclat; C.L. Nañola, Jr.; and H.A.Roa-Quiaoit (eds.). (in prep). Atlas of Philippine Coral Reefs. U.P. Marine Science Institute, DOST-PCAMRRD, Coral Reef Information Network of the Philippines, WWF, and ICRI. (URL http://www.philreefs.org).

Aliño, P.M.; N. Palomar; and H. Arceo. 2000. Marine protected areas: renewing the urgent needs for coral reef management. *In*: Licuanan, W.Y. and E.D. Gomez (eds.). Philippine Coral Reefs, Reef Fishes, and Associated Fisheries: Status And Recommendations To Improve Their Management. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network (GCRMN).

Amio, E. C.; D. S. Alonzo; and B. A. Lomibao. 1969. Nipa palm tapping, collection and distilling practices of nipa sap in Cagayan. FORPRIDECOM Technological Publication Number FPIDO 2.

Anglo, E. G. 1999. Western Pacific tropical cyclones and the ENSO. 66th Annual Meeting of the National Research Council of the Philippines. EDSA Shangri-La Hotel, Mandaluyong, Metro Manila.

Anonymous. 1977. Mangrove and estuarine area development in the Philippines. International Workshop on Mangrove and Estuarine Area Development for the Indo-Pacific Region. 17-19 November 1977, Manila, Philippines.

Apel, J.R.; J.R. Holbrook; A.K. Liu; and J.J. Tsai. 1985. The Sulu Sea internal soliton experiment. *J. Phys. Oceanogr*. 15: 1625-1651.

Aragones, E. G. Jr.; J. P. Rojo; and F. C. Pitargue Jr. 1998. Botanical Identification Handbook on Philippines Mangrove Trees. FPRDI, DOST, College, Laguna.

Aragones, L.V. 1994. Observations on dugongs at Calauit Island, Busuanga, Palawan, Philippines. *Wild. Res*. 21: 709-717.

Aragones, L.V. 1995. Fishery for dolphins as bait for nautilus off Brooke's Point, Palawan, Philippines. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, Negros Oriental, 27-30 June, 1995. 10 pp.

Aranas, A. L. 1962. The taxonomic importance of the vegetative characters of the mangrove species in Lalao, Bongabon, Oriental Mindoro. B. D. Thesis, College of Forestry, Universityof the Philippines, College, Laguna.

Arceo, H.O.; M.C. Quibilan; P.M. Aliño; G. Lim; and W.Y. Licuanan. 1999. Coral bleaching in the Philippines reefs: coincident evidences with mesoscale thermal anomalies. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 69(2): 579-593.

Armada, N.B. 1997. Larval and early juvenile fishes of the Sulu Sea and adjacent waters. *Univ. Philipp. Visayas J. Nat. Sci*. 2: 102-137.

Arquiza, Y. and A. White. 1994. Tales from Tubbataha: natural history, resource use and conservation of the Tubbataha Reefs, Palawan, Philippines. Bandillo ng Palawan Foundation, Puerto Princesa City, c.1994. 73 pp: ill.

Arroyo, C. A. 1978. Flora of Philippine Mangroves. Proceedings of the International Workshop on Mangrove and Estuarine Area Development for the Indo-Pacific Region. 14-15 November 1977. Manila, Philippines.

Arroyo, C. A. 1979. Mangrove and estuarine vegetation in Southeast Asia. *BIOTROP Special Publication* 10: 33-34.

ASCOT, 1998. Aurora State College of Technology Biodiversity Conservation Program. Baler, Quezon Province, Souther Luzon.

Atchue, J. A. 1978. The Mangrove Resource: A Holistic Approach to Its Development. Manila, Philippines.

Audley-Charles, M.G. 1981. Geological history of the region of Wallace Line. *In*: T. C. Whitmore (ed.). Wallace's Line and Plate Tectonics. Clarendon Press, Oxford. pp. 24-25.

Audley-Charles M.G.; A.M Hurley; and A.G. Smith 1981. Continental movements in the Mesozoic and Cenozoic. *In*: T. C. Whitmore (ed.). Wallace's Line and Plate Tectonics. Clarendon Press, Oxford. pp. 9-23.

Baconguis, S.R.; D.M. Cabahug Jr.; and S.N. Alonzo-Pasicolan. 1990. Identification and inventory of Philippine forested-wetlands resource. *Forest Ecol. Mgmnt*. 33/34: 21-44.

Bagawan, B. O. and F. O. Francia, 1979. Dissolving pulp from Benguet pine and bakauan wood mixture. *FORPRIDE* 8 (2): 6-11.

Baguilat, R.B. 1987. Occurrence and description of tuna and tuna-like larvae in the Sulu Sea. Report of the 2nd Meeting of Tuna Research Groups in the Southeast Asian Region. FAO-UNDP.

Baltazar, R. and A.A. Yaptinchay. 1998. Current knowledge on dugong status and distribution in the Philippines based on hearing and aerial surveys, sighting and capture reports. First National Dugong Seminar Workshop. Davao City, Philippines, November 6-8, 1998. (Abstract only).

Banaag, J. F. 1972. Vegetation composition and association in a mangrove forest ecosystem in Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro. *Natural and Applied Science Bulletin* 24 (1-2): 1-40.

Barut, N.C. and R.R. de Veyra. 1995. Review of the status of small cetaceans in the Philippines. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 12 pp.

Barut, N.C. and J.S. Zartiaga. 1997. Shark fisheries in the Philippines. International Seminar and Workshop on Sharks and Rays Biodiversity, Conservation and Management. Tuaran, Sabah, Malaysia, 7-10 July 1997. 6 pp.

Beasley, I. and T.A. Jefferson. 1997. Marine mammals of Borneo: A preliminary checklist. *The Sarawak Museum J.* 11: 193-216.

Bentley, N. 1999. Fishing for solutions: Can the live trade in wild groupers and wrasses from Southeast Asia be managed. TRAFFIC Southeast Asia, Petaling Jaya, Selangor, Malaysia. 1-100 pp.

BFAR. 1983. Study on the development and management of Apo Reef on the marine reserve. Coral Reef Research Project Annual Report submitted to PCAMRD. Manila, Philippines.

BFAR. 1987. Philippine Fisheries Profile. Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources, Quezon City.

BFAR. 1995. Philippine Fisheries Profile. Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources, Quezon City.

BFAR-Coral Reef Research Project. 1983. Study on the development and management of Apo Reef on the marine reserve. Annual Report submitted to PCAMRD. Manila, Philippines.

Biusing, E.R. 1997. Status and trends of elasmobranch fishery in Sabah, Malaysia. Sharks and Rays Biodiversity, Conservation and Management. Tuaran, Sabah, Malaysia, 7-10 July 1997.

Boncodin, E. and M.N.R. Alava. 1999. Ecological data collection in Donsol , Sorsogon: Final Report (February– July 1999). 30 pp. (unpub.).

Bonfil, R. 1994. Overview of world elasmonrach fisheries. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 341, Rome, FAO.

Brown, W. H. and A. F. Fischer. 1920. Philippine mangrove swamps. *In*: W.H. Brown (ed.). Minor Products of Philippine Forests. Vol. 1. Bureau of Printing, Manila. pp. 9-125.

Bryant, D.; L. Burke; J. McManus; and M. Spalding. 1998. Reefs at Risk: A map-based indicator of threats to the world's coral reefs. World Resources Institute.

Buddemeier, R.W.; J.P. Gattuso; and J.A. Kleypas. 1998. Rising CO_2 and marine calcification. *LOICCZ Newsletter* (Sept) 8.

Bumarlong, A.A. and V.C. de la Cruz. 1976. Tannin from our mangrove species. *Canopy* 2(3): 9.

Buot, Jr. I. E. 1994. The true mangroves along San Remigio Bay, Cebu, Philippines. *Philippine Scientist* 31: 105-120.

Bureau of Mines and Geosciences (BMG). 1982. Geology and Mineral Resources of the Philippines. Vol. 2. Manila.

Cadelina, A.M. 1997. The watershed of Bais Bay. *Silliman Journal* 37(3-4): 51-60.

Calumpong, H.P. and E.G. Meñez. 1996. Field Guide to the Common Mangroves, Seagrasses and Algae of the Philippines. Bookmark Inc., Makati City. 197 pp.

Calumpong, H.P.; J.S. Estacion; and M.V. Lepiten (eds.). 1997a. Status of the coastal resources of the Bohol Learning Site (from Jetafe to Calape). Silliman University COE-CRM. USAID, Manila, Philippines.

Calumpong, H.P.; J.S. Estacion; and M.V. Lepiten (eds.). 1997b. Status of the coastal resources of the Malalag Learning Site. Silliman University COE-CRM. USAID, Manila, Philippines.

Calumpong, H.P., J.S. Estacion and M.V. Lepiten (eds.). 1997c. Status of the coastal resources of the Malalag Learning Site. Silliman University COE-CRM. USAID, Manila, Philippines.

Calvelo, R.R. 1995. Report on the incidental catch of dolphin from drift gill net fishing. UNEP/SEA95/WP26. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 12 pp.

Camhi, M.; S. Fowler; J. Musick; A. Barutigam; and S. Fordham. 1998. Sharks and their relatives: ecology and conservation. *Occassional Paper of the IUCN Species Survival Commission* (20): 39.

Cantor, T. 1849. Catalogue of Malaysia fishes. *J. Asiat. Soc. Beng.* 18(1): 983-1442.

Carpenter, K.E. 1977. Philippine coral reef fisheries resources, Part I. *Philippine Journal of Fisheries*. 15(1): 95-126.

Carpenter, K. E. and A. C. Alcala. 1977. Philippine coral reef fisheries resources Part II- Muro-ami and kayakas reef fisheries, benefit or bane? *Philippine Journal of Fisheries* 15:217-235.

Carpenter, K.E.; R.I. Miclat; V.D. Alvaladejo; and V.T. Corpuz. 1981. The influence of substrate structure on the local abundance and diversity of Philippine reef fishes. *Proc. 4th Intl. Coral Reef Symposium* 2: 497-502.

Castaneda, P.G. and R.I. Miclat. 1981. The municipal coral reef park in the Philippines. *Proc. 4th Intl. Coral Reef Symposium* 1: 283-286.

Castro, P. and M.E. Huber. 1997. Chapter 8: Marine reptiles, birds, and mammals. *In*: Marine Biology. 2nd Ed. Times Mirror Higher Education Group, Inc., Dubuque. pp. 169-197.

Center for Development Studies (CDS). 1979. Ground Survey and Assessment of Mangrove Areas in the Philippines. Diliman, Quezon City.

Chappius, V.P.A. 1930. *Copepoda harpacticoida* von der Insel Luzon, Philippinen. *Philipp. J. Sci.*

Chen, H.K. (ed.). 1996. Shark fisheries and the trade in sharks and shark products of Southeast Asia. TRAFFIC Southeast Asia, Petaling Jaya, Selangor, Malaysia, 48 pp.

Chou, L. 1997. The status of Southeast Asian coral reefs. *Proc. 8th Int. Coral Reef Symp.* 1: 317-322.

Chou, L.M.; C. Wilkinson; E. Gomez; and S. Sudara. 1994. Status of coral reefs in the ASEAN region. *In:* C.R. Wilkinson (ed.). Living coastal resources of Southeast Asia: Status and Management. Report on the Consultative Forum, Bangkok, Thailand. pp. 8-12.

Cinco E.; J. Diaz; Q.P. Sia III; and G. Silvestre. 1994. A checklist of fishes caught in San Miguel Bay. *In*: Silvestre, G.; C. Luna; and J. Padilla (eds.). Multidisciplinary assessment of the fisheries in San Miguel Bay, Philippines. ICLARM.

Coastal Engineering Research Center (CERC). 1989. Water levels and wave heights for coastal engineering design. Publication No. EM 1110-2-1414. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

Cogger, H.G. 1975. Sea snakes of Australia and New Guinea. *In*: Dunson, W.A. (ed.). The Biology of Sea Snakes. University Park Press, Baltimore. pp. 59-139.

Compagno, L. 2000a. Sharks, fishery and biodiversity. Shark 2000 Conference. Honolulu, Hawaii, February 21-24, 2000. (Abstract only).

Compagno, L. 2000b. Checklist of Philippine Chondrochthyes. 26 pp. (unpub.).

Cordero, P.A. Jr. 1978. Phycological observations VI: Mangrove-associated algae from Aklan, Philippines. *Kalikasan, Philippine Journal of Biology* 7 (3): 275-296.

Corkeron, P.J. 1995a. Report on the trip to the eastern Malaysian states of Sarawak and Sabah, and to Negara Brunei Darussalam - April, May, 1995. (unpub.).

Corkeron, P.J. 1995b. Cetaceans and conservation in Sarawak, Sabah and Negara Brunei Darussalam. UNEP/SEA95/WP9. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 2 pp.

CRC Reef Research Center. 1998. Dugongs in the Great Barrier Reef, the current state of research. Compiled by the staff of CRC. (Brochure).

Davies, J.P.; M. Magsalay; R. Rigor; A. Mapalo; and H. Gonzales. 1990. A directory of Philippine wetlands. Volume II. AWBPFI-HF. Cebu, Philippines.

De Celis, N.C. 1982. Status of marine turtles in the Philippines. *In*: Bjorndal, K. (ed.). The Biology and Conservation of Sea Turtles. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington D.C.

De Iongh, H.H. 1996. Plant-Herbivore Interactions between Seagrasses and Dugongs in a Tropical Small Island Ecosystem. Netherlands. 205 pp.

De la Cruz, A. and J. Banaag, 1967. The ecology of a small mangrove patch in Matabungkay Beach, Batangas Province. *Natural and Applied Science Bulletin* 20 (4): 486-494.

De la Paz, R. and N. Aragones. 1985. Mangrove fishes of Pagbiao (Quezon Province, Luzon Island) with notes on their abundance and seasonality. *Natural and Applied Science Bulletin* 37 (2): 171-190.

De la Paz, R. and E. Gomez. 1995. Faunal diversity in the marine coastal zone. Biodiversity Conservation Reports 1995/No. 2. University of the Philippines, Center for Integrative and Development Studies in cooperation with Haribon Foundation, Quezon City, Philippines.

De las Alas, J.G. and R.D. Buan. 1986. A preliminary study on the effects of El Niño on rainfall at selected Philippine stations. *Nat. Appl. Sci. Bull*. 38(1): 25-64.

De Leon, R.O.D. and A. T. White. 1997. Mangrove resources decline in the Philippines: government and community look for new solutions. *Intercoast Network Special Edition* 1 (1997): 4, 5, 38.

De Sillva, G.S. 1982. Status of marine turtles in the Philippines. *In*: Bjorndal, K. (ed.). The Biology and Conservation of Sea Turtles. Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington D.C.

Delfin, F.G.; C.G. Newhall; M.L. Martinez; N.D. Salonga; F.E.B. Bayon; D. Trimble; and R. Solidum. 1997. Geological 14C and historical evidence for a 17th Century eruption of Parker Volcano, Mindanao, Philippines. *Journal of the Geological Society of the Philippines* 52: 25-42.

Delfin, F.G.; C.G. Newhall; D. Trimble; M.L. Martinez-Villegas; Syed Hussain; F.E.B. Bayon; R.D.C. Leynes; J.E.A. Caranto; and W.P.C. Pioquinto. 1999. Carbon 14 ages of some quarternary explosive eruptions in southern Philippines. Proceedings of the International Conference on Tectonics, Stratigraphy and Petroleum and Mineral Systems of Palawan, Borneo and Surrounding Areas. (CD-ROM).

DENR-EMB/Marcopper. 1991. Calancan Bay Rehabilitation Project Progress Report. March 1991.

DENR-UNEP. 1997. Philippine Biodiversity, An Assessment and Action Plan. Bookmark Publishing, Makati City.

Department of Agriculture (DA). 1997. May 1997 Daily fish catch report data sheet. Municipality of Lopez Jaena, Misamis Occidental. (photocopied sheets).

Department of Environment and Natural Resources/United Nations Development Programme (DENR/UNDP). 1997. Philippine Biodiversity: An Assessment Action Plan. Bookmark, Makati City. 298 pp.

Department of Environment and Natural Resources-Environmental Management Bureau (DENR-EMB) Marcopper. 1991. Calancan Bay Rehabilitation Project Progress Report. March 1991.

Department of Environment and Natural Resources-Protected Area and Wildlife Bureau (DENR-PAWB). 1994. Philippine Marine Mammals. Proceedings of the Symposium-Workshop on Marine Mammal Conservation. The Marine Science Institute, University of the Philippines, Diliman, Quezon City, April 7-8, 1994. World Wildlife Fund and Bookmark. 103 pp.

Dickinson, E. C.; R. S. Kennedy; and K. C. Parkes. 1991 The Birds of the Philippines: An Annotated Checklist. British Ornithologists Union, Great Britain.

Dight, L. and L. Scherl. 1997. The International Coral Reef Initiative (ICRI): Global priorities for the conservation and management of coral reefs and the need for partnership. *Coral Reefs* 16: 139-147.

Dixon, J. 1998. Economic values of coral reefs: What are the issues? Coral Reefs: Proceedings of an Associated Event of the Fifth Annual World Bank Conference on Environmentally and Socially Sustainable Development.

Dolar, M.L.L. 1990. Interaction between cetaceans and fisheries in the Visayas, Philippines: A preliminary study. The Workshop on Mortality of Cetaceans in Passive Fishing Nets and Traps. Oct. 22-25, 1990. La Jolla, California. SC/090/029.

Dolar, M.L.L. 1994. Incidental takes of small cetaceans in fisheries in Palawan, central Visayas and northern Mindanao in the Philippines. *Rep. Int. Whal. Commn Special Issue* 15: 355-363.

Dolar, M.L.L. 1999a. Abundance, distribution and feeding ecology of small cetaceans in the Philippines. Ph.D. Thesis, University of California, San Diego.

Dolar, M.L.L. 1999b. A survey of cetaceans and fishery interactions in the northwestern Sulu Sea and Malampaya Sound, Philippines. World Wildlife Fund-U.S. 54 pp.

Dolar, M.L.L. 1999c. Sulu-Sulawesi Cetacean Project. A review of literature on cetaceans in the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas submitted to WWF-US on 27 August 1999. 36 pp.

Dolar, L.L. and A.C. Alcala. 1993. Notes on the ichthyoplankton and marine mammals of the Sulu Sea, Philippines. *Silliman J.* 2: 43-57.

Dolar, M.L.L. and W.F. Perrin. 1995. Line-transect surveys of cetacean abundance: more cost-effective methods for developing countries. Eleventh Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals. Dec. 14-18, 1995. (Abstract only).

Dolar, M.L.L. and W.F. Perrin. 1996. Preliminary results on the distribution and abundance of cetaceans in the Philippines. *Int. Mar. Biol. Res. Inst*, *Kamogawa, Japan,* 6: 9-23.

Dolar, M.L.L. and C. Wood. 1993. Survey of marine mammals in the central Visayas and Mindanao. *Enviroscope* 8: 1-7.

Dolar, M.L.L.; C. Wood; and M.N.R. Alava. 1995. Incidental takes of cetaceans in a Philippine indigenous driftnet fishery. Tenth Biennial Conference on the Biology of Marine Mammals. Nov. 11-15, 1993. Galveston, Texas. (Abstract only).

Dolar M.L.L.; W.F. Perrin; A.A. SP. Yaptinchay; S.A.B.H.J. Jaaman; M.D. Santos; M.N.R. Alava; and M.S.B. Suliansa. 1997. Preliminary investigation of marine mammal distribution, abundance and interactions with humans in the southern Sulu Sea. *Asian Marine Biology* 14: 61-68.

Dolar, M.L.L.; S. Leatherwood; C. Wood; M.N.R. Alava; C. Hill; and L.V. Aragones. 1994. Directed fisheries for cetaceans in the Philippines. *Rep. Int. Whal. Commn* 44: 439-449.

Dolar, M.L.L.; P. Suarez; P.J. Ponganis; and G.L. Kooyman. 1999. Myoglobin in pelagic small cetaceans. *J. Exp. Biol*. 202: 227-236.

Dolar, M.L.L.; A.A. Yaptinchay; A.B.Hj. Jaaman; M.D. Santos; M.N.R. Alava; and S.B. Suliansa. 1997. Preliminary investigation of marine mammal distribution, abundance and interactions with humans in the southern Sulu Sea. *Asian Mar. Biol*. 14: 61-81.

Domantay, J.S. 1953. The fisheries of the Turtle Islands. *Bulletin of the Fisheries Society Philippines*. 3-4: 3-27.

Dunbar, C.O. and J. Rodgers. 1957. Principles of Stratigraphy. John Wiley & Sons, Inc. New York and London.

Dunson, W.A. 1975. Adaptations of sea snakes. *In*: Dunson, W.A. (ed.). The Biology of Sea Snakes. University Park Press, Baltimore. 530 pp.

Eckert, S.A. and B.S. Stewart. 1998. Telemetry, and the satellite tracking of whale sharks, *Rhincodon typus* in the Sea of Cortez, Mexico. International Seminar and Workshop on Sharks and Rays Biodiversity, Conservation and Management. Tuaran, Sabah, Malaysia, 7-10 July 1998.

Encendencia, Ma. E. M. 1984. The vanishing mangroves of Padre Burgos. *Canopy* 10(2): 1-7.

Environmental Center of the Philippines Foundation (EPCF). 1998. Environment and Natural Resources Atlas of the Philippines. EPCF, Manila. 395 pp.

Environmental Management Bureau (EMB). 1996. Philippine Environmental Report 1990-1995. Department of Environment and Natural Resources, Quezon City.

Erdmann, M.V.; R.L. Caldwell; and M.K. Moosa. 1998. Indonesian king of the seas discovered. *Nature* 395: 335.

Escolano, J. O. 1988. Utilization of mangrove forest. *PCARRD State of the Art: Mangrove Research Forestry Series* 4: 44-60.

Fernando, E. S. and J. V. Pancho. 1980. Mangrove trees in the Philippines. *Sylvatrop, Philippine Forest Research Journal* 5 (1): 35-54.

Fisheries Sector Program (FSP). (undated) a. Resource and Ecological Assessment (REA) in Davao Gulf. FSP, Bureau of Agricultural Resources (BAR).

Fisheries Sector Program (FSP). (undated) b. Resource and Ecological Assessment (REA) in Panguil Bay. FSP, Bureau of Agricultural Resources (BAR).

Fisheries Sector Program (FSP). 1989. Resource and Ecological Assessment (REA) in Iligan Bay. FSP, Bureau of Agricultural Resources (BAR).

Fisheries Sector Program (FSP). 1994. Resource and Ecological Assessment (REA) in Cariaga Bay. FSP, Bureau of Agricultural Resources (BAR).

Flores, J. F. and V. F. Balagot. 1969. Climate of the Philippines. World Survey of Climatology. Vol. 8. Elsevier Publishing Co., Amsterdam. pp. 159-213.

Florido, L. and E. Miclat. 1988. A profile of the present uses of mangrove and its potential for multiple use. Symposium-Workshop on Mangrove Research Environment, Policy and Information (DENR, ERDB, NARMANCOM) 28-30 November 1988, Sulo Hotel, Quezon City, Philippines.

Follosco, M. P. and F. R. Uyenco, 1984. Soil fungi in relation to some ecological factors in a mangrove forest at Pagbilao, Quezon Province. *Natural and Applied Science Bulletin* 36 (2): 77-102.

Fortes, M. D. 1975. Algal association in mangrove communities in Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro. M.S. Thesis, University of the Philippines, Diliman, Quezon City.

Fortes, M. D. 1982. Productivity studies on mangroves, seagrasses and algae at Calatagan, Batangas, Philippine. *BIOTROP Special Publication* 17: 17-24.

Fortes, M.D. 1986. Taxonomy and ecology of Philippine seagrasses. Ph.D. Dissertation. College of Science, University of the Philippines.

Fortes, M.D. 1989. Seagrasses: A resource unknown in the ASEAN Region. Association of SEA Nations, U.S. Coastal Management Project, Education Series 6. 46 pp.

Fortes, M. D. and G. C. Trono, Jr. 1979. Marine algal microphytes new to the Philippines. *Kalikasan, Philippine Journal of Biology* 8(1): 51-68.

Fortes, M. D. and R. S. Jara, 1988. Economic and ecological importance and potentials of mangrove areas. *PCARRD State of the Art: Mangrove Research Forestry Series* 4(1987): 61-66.

Fowler, S. 1999. The role of non-governmental organizations in the international conservation of shafks. *In*: Case studies of the management of elasmobranch fisheries. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 378/2: 880-903.

Francia, P. C.; E. U. Escolano; C. S. Bautista; and J. A. Semana. 1971. Proximate chemical composition of some Philippine mangrove woods. *Philippine Lumberman* 17 (5): 21, 24.

Gabriel, B. 1978. Mangrove forests: problems and management strategies. *Likas* y*aman* 1(3): 1-48.

Gelangang Samudera Jaya Ancol. 1990. Report on the pesut distribution and population. Segara Anakan-Cilacap, Central Java. GSA, Jakarta.

Gibson-Hill, C.A. 1950. The whales, porpoises and dolphins known in Sarawak waters. *Sarawak Museum J.* 5: 288-296.

Gomez, E.D. 1983. Corals and coral reefs. *In:* Philippine Encyclopedia: Biological Sciences. National Research Council of the Philippines.

Gomez, E.D. 1990. Coral reef ecosystems and resources of the Philippines. *Canopy International* 16(5): 6-12.

Gomez, E.D. 1997. Reef management in developing countries: A case study in the Philippines. *Coral Reefs* 16: 3-8.

Gomez, E. and A. Alcala. 1979. Status of Philippine coral reefs 1978. Proc. Int. Symp. on Southeast Asian Marine Biogeography and Evolution in the Southern Hemishpere. 17-20 July 1978, Auckland, New Zealand.

Gomez, E.D.; P.M. Aliño; H.T. Yap; and A.Y. Licuanan. 1994. A review of the status of Philippine reefs. *Mar. Pollut. Bull.* 29(1-3): 62-68.

Gonzales, P. 1977. Aquatic fauna in mangrove swamp. Provisional Proceedings of the National Symposium-Workshop on Mangrove Research and Development. Paranaque, Rizal. 3A: 32.41.

Groombridge, B. and Luxmoore. 1989. The green turtle and hawksbill (Reptilia: Cheloniadae): World Status, exploitation and trade. Secretariat of the Convention on International Trade of Endangered Species of Wild Fauna and Flora: Lausanne.

Hamoy, E. A. and L. A. Graciano. 1975. A preliminary report on studies of the mangrove swamp ecosystem of Silot Bay, Liloan, Cebu. *Philippine Scientist* 12:67-74.

Hampton, J. 1993. Status of tuna stocks in the SPC area. 6th Standing Committee on Tuna and Billfish. Tuna and Billfish Assessment Programme, South Pacific Commission, Noumea, New Caledonia.

Harger, J.R.E. 1995. ENSO Variations and Drought Occurrence in Indonesia and the Philippines. Asia Pacific Climate Change Conference. Manila, Philippines.

Heaney, L.R. 1985. Zoogeographic evidence for middle and late Pleistocene land bridges to the Philippine Islands. *Mod. Quaternary Res. SE Asia* 9: 127-143.

Heaney, L.R.; D.S. Balete; M.L.L. Dolar; A.C. Alcala; A.T.L. Dans; P.C. Gonzales; N.R. Ingle; M.V. Lepiten; W.L.R. Oliver; P.S. Ong; E.A. Rickart; B.R. Tabaranza; and R.C.B. Utzurrum. 1998. A synopsis of the mammalian fauna of the Philippine islands. *Fieldiana Zoology* 88: 1-61.

Hedgpeth, J.W. 1957. Classification of marine environment. *Geol. Soc. America* 67(1): 17-28.

Hermes, R. and E.P. Villoso. 1987. Zooplankton biomass distribution in Sulu Sea (Western Central Philippines) during October 1982 and February 1983. *Univ. Philipp. Visayas Fish. J.* 1-3: 33-37.

Herre, A. W. 1925. A Philippine rorqual. *Science* 61: 541.

Herre, A.W. 1953. Checklist of Philippine Fishes. Research Report 20, Fish and Wildlife Service, United States Department of Interior. US Government Printing Service, Washington D.C.

Herre, A.W.C.T. and D.S. Rabor 1949. Notes on Philippine sea snakes of the genus *Laticauda*. *Copeia* 1949: 282-284.

Hilomen, V.V. and H.T. Yap. 1991. Preliminary analysis and trends in individual abundance and species richness of the families Pomacentridae and Labridae in Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro, Philippines. *Proc. Reg. Symp. on Living Resources in Coastal Areas* 1991: 141-149.

Hilomen, V.V.; C.L. Nañola, Jr.; and A.L. Dantis. 2000. Status of Philippine reef fish communities. *In*: Licuanan, W.Y. and E.D. Gomez (eds.). Philippine Coral Reefs, Reef Fishes, and Associated Fisheries: Status and Recommendations to Improve their Management. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network (GCRMN).

Hodgson, G. and J.A. Dixon. 1988. Logging versus fisheries and tourism in Palawan: An environmental and economic analysis. *East-West Environment and Policy Institute Occasional Paper No.* 7.

Hodgson, G. and M.A. Ross. 1981. Unreported Scleractinian corals from the Philippines. *Proc.4th International Coral Reef Symposium* 2: 171-175.

Hoenig, J.M. and S.H. Gruber. 1990. Life-history patterns in elasmobranchs: implications for fisheries management. *In*: Pratt Jr., H.L.; S.H. Gruber; and T. Taiuchi (eds.). Elasmobranchs as Living Resources: Advances in the Biology, Ecology, Systematics, and the Status of the Fisheries. *NOAA Technical Report* 90: 1-16.

Howes, J. 1987. Rapid Assessment of Coastal Wetlands in the Philippines. IPT-AWB, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia.

Hurtado-Ponce, A.Q.; M.R.J. Luhan and N.G. Guanzon, Jr. 1990. Economic Importance of Panay Seaweeds. *SEAFDEC Asian Aquaculture* 12(1): 10.

Hurtado-Ponce, A.Q.; M.R.J. Luhan and N.G. Guanzon, Jr. 1992. Seaweeds of Panay. Aquacult. Dept. SEAFDEC, Tigbauan, Iloilo. 114 pp.

Husar, S.L. 1975. A review of the literature of the dugong (*Dugong dugon*). U.S. Department of Interior Fish and Wildlife Service. *Wildlife Research Report* 4:1-30.

Husar, S.L. 1978. *Dugong dugon*. Mammalian Species No. 88. *The American Society of Mammalogists* 7 pp.

Idso, C.D. and K.E. Idso. 1999. Atmospheric CO_2 enrichment: boon or bane of the biosphere? Editorial Review, vol.2, no.8. Center for the Study of Carbon Dioxide and Global Change. Http://www.co2.science.org/

INMAGIC Program. Seaweed Distribution Database. Seaweed and Invertebrate Research Center, Marine Science Institute, CS, U.P. Diliman, Quezon City.

ITF-CBRP. 1991. Calancan Bay Rehabilitation Project (CBRP) Progress Report. Submitted to the Department of Environment and Natural Resources (DENR).

Jeferson, T.A. and M. Pong. 1996. Where the dolphins play. *Action Asia* 3(5): 41-45.

Jeferson, T.A.; S. Leatherwood; and M.A. Webber. 1994. FAO Species Identification Guide: Marine Mammals of the World. United Nations Environment Programme Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations (UNEP-FAO). Rome. 320 pp.

Jeferson, T.A.; R.L. Pitman; S.J. Leatherwood; and M.L.L. Dolar. 1997. Developmental and sexual variation in the external appearance of Fraser's dolphins (*Lagenodelphis hosei*). *Aquatic Mammals* 23: 145-153.

Juinio-Menez, M.A.; C. Villanoy; C.-T. Liu; and L.T. McManus. 1999. Plankton accumulation in the Sulu Sea internal wave. 5th National Symposium in Marine Science, Oct. 17-19. Philippine Association of Marine Science. Diliman, Quezon City.

Kataoka, T.; T. Mori; Y. Wakai; J.A.M. Palma; A.A. Yaptinchay; R.T.R. de Veyra; and R.B. Trono. 1995. Dugongs of the Philippines: A report on the joint dugong research and conservation program. May 1995 Toba Aquarium and PCP. 166 pp.

Kintanar, R. L. 1984: Climate of the Philippines. PAGASA, Diliman, Quezon City.

Kleypas, J.A.; R.W. Buddemeier; D. Archer; J.P. Gattuso; C. Langdon; and B.N. Opdyke. 1999. Geochemical consequences of increased atmospheric carbon dioxide on coral reefs. *Science* 284: 118-120.

Kumagai, S. and T.U. Bagarinao. 1979. Results of drift card experiments and considerations of the movement of milkfish eggs and larvae in the northern Sulu Sea. *Fish. Res. J. Philipp*. 4 (2): 64-81.

Last, P.R. and J.D. Stevens. 1994. Sharks and rays of Australia. CSIRO Australia. 513 pp.

Leatherwood, S.; M.L.L. Dolar; C. Wood; L. Aragones; and C.L. Hill. 1992. Marine mammal species confirmed from Philippine waters. *Silliman Journal*. 36: 65-86.

Lepiten, M.V. 1995a. Sarangani Bay fish stock assessment project - first quarter report- June 15 to September 15, 1995. (Unpublished).

Lepiten, M.V. 1995b. Sarangani Bay fish stock assessment project – third quarter report – October and November, 1995. (Unpublished).

Liao, L.M. 1987. Taxonomy and distribution of the marine benthic algae of the Cuyo Islands, West Central Philippines. MS Thesis. MSI, CS, University of the Philippines.

Licuanan, W.Y. and E.D. Gomez (eds.). 2000. Philippine Coral Reefs, Reef Fishes, and Associated Fisheries: Status and Recommendations to Improve Their Management. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network (GCRMN).

Limpus, C. 1985. Establishment of an ASEAN Heritage Park at the Turtle Islands. Report on to the IUCN Survival Services Sea Turtle Specialist Group and the Philippine Ministry of Natural Resources. (Upublished).

Lipkin, Y. and M. Friedlander. 1998. The seaweed resources of Israel and other eastern Mediterranean countries. *In*: Critchley, A.T. and M. Ohno (eds.). Seaweed Resources of the World. pp. 156-163.

Liu, A. K.; J. R. Holbrook; and J. R. Apel. 1985. Nonlinear wave evolution in the Sulu Sea. *J. Phys. Oceanogr*. 15: 1613-1624.

Longhurst, A.R. and D. Pauly. 1987. Ecology of Tropical Oceans. Academic Press, London, England.

Lopez, M.D.; R.I. Miclat; N.C. Barut; and R.A. Ganaden. 1994. Movement patterns of tunas in Philippine waters. Proceedings of the 45th Annual Tuna Conference, Lake Arrowhead, California, USA, May 1994. Southwest Fisheries Science Center, La Jolla, California.

Lorica, R. G. and M. D. Fortes, 1982. Alcohol production from nipa (*Nypa fruticans* Wurmb): preliminary studies on ecology and chemistry. *Philippine Engineering Journal* 3(1): 76-91.

Luchavez, T.F. 1991. Report on the assessment of the finfish fisheries in the Central Visayas Regional Project Sites in Region 7. 70 pp.

Lukas, R.; E. Firing; P. Hacker; P. L. Richardson; C.A. Collins; R. Fine; and R. Gammon. 1991. Observations of the Mindanao Current during the Western Equatorial Pacific Ocean Circulation Study (WEPOCS). *J. Geophys. Res*. 96: 7089–7104.

Magsalay, P.M.; R.P. Rigor; H.I. Gonzales; and A.M. Mapalo. 1989. Survey of Olango Island Philippines with recommendations for nature conservation. AWB Philippines Foundation, Cebu City. Report Number 37.

Malayang, B.S. III 1999. Philippine environment and natural resources in one hundred years of nationhood and revolution. *Issues and Letters* 8 (4-5): 1-10.

Manas, A.E. 1982. Tannin extraction and utilization from bakauan barks. *NSTA Technology Journal* 7(1): 57-64.

Manjaji, B.M. 1997. New records of elasmobranch species from Sabah. Internaional Seminar and Workshop on Sharks and Rays Biodiversity. Conservation and Management, Tuaran, Sabah, Malaysia, 7-10 July 1997.

Mann, K.H. and J.R.N. Lazier. 1996. Chapter 2: Biology and boundary layers. *In*: Dynamics of Marine Ecosystems: Biological-Physical Interactions in the Oceans. 2nd Ed. Blackwell Science, Inc. pp. 9-55.

Mapalo, A. M. 1990. Waterbird Survey in Bohol, Philippines. *Ecosystems Research Digest* 1: 30-38.

Mapalo, A. M. 1991. Notes on the avifauna of Carnaza Island, Cebu, Philippines. *Ecosystems Research Digest* 2: 72-78.

Mapalo, A. M. and J. L. Mitchell. 1992. Faunal Survey in Bohol, Philippines. *Ecosystems Research Digest* 3 (2): 55-62.

Marine Conservation Development Program (MCDP). 1985. Final report and evaluation for the marine conservation and development program. Silliman University, Dumaguete, Negros Oriental, Philippines.

Marine Mammal Task Force -Philippines. 1995. Resolution adopting a policy for the conservation of whales and other marine mammals within territorial waters of the ASEAN region. UNEP/SEA95/WP29. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 2 pp.

Marine Parks/ Reserve Development Inter-agency Task Force (MPDITF-NRMC). 1982. Sombrero Island Marine Park. 20 pp. (pamphlet)

Marsh, H. and L.W. Lefebvre. 1994. Sirenian status and conservation efforts. *Aquatic Mammals* 20(3): 155-170.

Masuda, H.; C. Araga; and T. Yoshino. 1975. Coastal fishes of southern Japan. Tokai Univ. Press. Tokyo, Japan. 382 pp.

McManus, J. 1995. The state of the reefs report: A summary. Report presented to the 1995 International Coral Reef Initiative Workshop, Dumaguete City, Philippines. 29 May-2 June 1995.

McManus, J.W.; R.I. Miclat; and V.P. Palaganas. 1981. Coral and fish community structure of Sombrero Island in Batangas, Philippines. *Proc. 4th Intl. Coral Reef Symposium* 2: 271-280.

McManus, J.W.; C.L. Nañola, Jr.; R.B. Reyes, Jr.; and K.N. Kesner. 1992. Resource ecology of the Bolinao coral reef system. *ICLARM Stud. Rev*. 22: 117.

Medway, L. 1977. Mammals of Borneo: Field keys and an annotated checklist. *Monographs of the Malaysian Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society* 7. 172 pp.

Melana, D.M.; J. Atchue III; C.E. Yao; R. Edwards; E.E. Melana; and H.I. Gonzales. 2000. Mangrove Management Handbook. DENR, Manila, Philippines therough the Coastal Resource Management Project, Cebu City, Philippines. 96 pp.

Melana, E. and A.M. Mapalo. 1995. Mangrove Biodiversity in Central Visayas. ERDS-DENR Region 7, Banilad, Mandaue City.

Mendoza, D.R. and R.M. del Rosario. 1967. Philippine Aquatic Flowering Plants and Ferns. *Philippine National Museum Publication (Manila)* 1: 1-53.

Miclat, R.I.; P.M. Alino; N. Aragones; C. Nanola, Jr.; and E. Aguilar. 1991. Pa-Aling: An alternative to muro-ami? *Philippine Journal of Fisheries* (1991): 22-48.

Miller, J. 1971. A preliminary investigation of the zooplankton in the Hilutangan Channel, Cebu.

Mindanao State University - Naawan. 1991. Resource and ecological assessment of Panguil Bay. Terminal Report, Volume 1. Fisheries Sector Program-Department of Agriculture/Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources (FSP-DA/BFAR), Quezon City, Philippines.

Mindanao State University - Naawan. 1995. Resource appraisal of Davao Gulf. Termina Report. Fisheries Sector Program-Department of Agriculture/Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources (FSP-DA/BFAR), Quezon City, Philippines.

Minton, S.A. 1975. Geographic distribution of sea snakes. *In*: Dunson, W.A. (ed.). The Biology of Sea Snakes. University Park Press, Baltimore. pp. 21-31.

Mohammed Shaari, S.A.L. 1971. A guide to trawl species in Penang waters. Ministry of Agriculture and Lands Malaysia.

Mohd Ibrahim, M. 1987. Selectivity studies on Malaysia trawls. Ph.D. Thesis. University Pertanian Malaysia, Serdang, Selangor.

Mohsin, A.K.M. and M.A. Ambak. 1996. Marine fishes and fisheries of Malaysia and neighbouring countries. Publishers, University Pertanian Malaysia Press, Serdang, Selangor, Malaysia.

Montecillo, E. and R. Rosito. (unpub.). Corals in the mangrove area inside Arangas Island: Brief account on ecology and systematics. Aras-asan Timber Copany, Philippines.

Morrisey, J.F. 2000. Distribution table of the 14 megamouth sharks. [http:\\www.Megamouth.tablemega.htm].

Motoh, H. and N. Solis. 1978. A preliminary report on the fauna of decapod crustacea in the mangrove and estuarine areas of Batan Bay, Panay Island, Philippines. Proceedings of the International Workshop on Mangrove and Estuarine Area Development of the Indon-Pacific Region. PCARRD, Los Baños, Laguna. pp. 153-160.

Moyle, P.B. and J.J. Cech, Jr. 1996. Fishes: An Introduction to Ichthyology. 3rd ed. Prentice Hall, New Jersey. pp 213-217.

Mrozowski, C.L. and D.E. Hayes. 1978. Sediment isopachs. *In*: The Geophysical Atlas of the East and Southeast Asian Seas. International Decade of the Ocean Exploration.

Naamin, N. 1992. The straddling stocks issue: An ASEAN perspective. International Conference on the Economic and Legal Aspects of Tuna Management, Manila, Philippines. Western Pacific Fisheries Consultative Committee (WPFCC) pp. 134-142.

National Mangrove Committee (NATMANCOM). 1982. Initial findings: an assessment of mangrove areas as spawning grounds of fish and crustaceans. *Bakawan* 2(1): 3.

National Mangrove Committee Technical Staff. 1986. Country Report. *In:* R.M. Umali; P.M. Zamora; R. Gotera; R. Jara; and A.S. Camacho (eds.). Mangroves of Asia and the Pacific: Status and Management. Technical Report UNDP-UNESCO Regional Mangrove Projects RAS 79002. Quezon City. pp. 175-210.

National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration/Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory (NOAA/PMEL) website.

Nishiwaki, M.; T. Kasuya; T. Miyazaki; T. Tobayama; and T. Kataoka. 1979. Present distribution of the dugong in the world. *Sci. Rep. Whales Res. Inst.* 31:133-141.

NRMC, BFAR and UP-MSC. 1983. Field survey report of Tubbataha Reefs, Palawan, April 6-May 8 1982. Marine Parks Inter-Agency Task Force, Ministry of Natural Resources, Manila.

Olson, D.M. and E. Dinerstein. 1998. The Global 200: A representation approach to conserving the earth's most biologically valuable ecoregions. *Conservation Biology* 12(3): 502-515.

On-The-Edge-Magazine. 1999. Environment Watch. Update on Manado Walls of Death Stopping the Slaughter in Manado Sulewesi. [http:\\www.on-the-edge.com/environ/Sulewesi.html].

Pacific Rim Innovation and Management Exponents, Inc. 1992. Fisheries resources assessment study of the coastal and marine waters of Antique: Final report. Volume I: An assessment of the fisheries resources of Antique. 217 pp.

Palma, J.A.M. 1995. Review of marine mammal sanctuaries in the Philippines. UNEP/SEA95/WP5. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 6 pp.

Pathasani, D.; G. Rauck; A.A. Jothy; S.A.L. Mohammed Shaari; and T.B. Curtin. 1974. Demersal fish resources in Malaysian waters (trawl survey of the coastal waters off the east coast of West Malaysia). *Ministry of Agriculture. Fish. Bull*. No.1

Patterson, K. 1992. Fisheries for small pelagic species: An empirical approach to management targets. *Rev. Fish. Biol. Fish.* 2: 321-338.

Paw, J. N. and T. E. Chua. 1988. An assessment of the ecological and economic impact of mangrove conversion in Southeast Asia. Technical Workshop on Integrated Tropical Coastal Area Management. 28-31 October 1988, National University of Singapore, Singapore.

Pawikan Conservation Project. 2001. Monitoring of Olive Ridley turtle in the coast of Morong, Bataan. Trip Report. (Unpublished).

Payne, J.; C.M. Francis; and K. Philipps. 1985. A Field Guide to the Mammals of Borneo. Kuala Lumpur: The Sabah Society and World Wildlife Fund - Malaysia. 322 pp.

PCARRD. 1991. The Philippine Recommends for Mangrove Production. Philippine Recommends Series 74. PCAFNRRD, DOST and DENR, Los Baños, Laguna.

Perrin, W.F.; M.L.L. Dolar; and M.N.R. Alava. 1995. Recent information on small cetaceans in the Philippines. UNEP/SEA95/WP1. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 3 pp.

Perrin, W.F.; S. Leatherwood; and M.L.L. Dolar. 1995. The status of marine mammal research in Southeast Asia. *International Marine Biological Research Institute, Kamogawa, Japan* 5: 1-6.

Perrin, W.F.; M.L.L. Dolar; and M.N.R. Alava (eds.). 1996. Report of the Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. UNEP(W)/EAS WG.1/2. Bangkok: UNEP.

Perrin, W.F.; M.L.L. Dolar; and E. Ortega. 1996. Osteological comparison of Bryde's whales from the Philippines with specimens from other regions. *Rep. Int. whal. Commn* 46: 409-413.

Perrin, W.F.; M.L.L. Dolar; and D. Robineu. 1999. Spinner dolphins (*Stenella longirostris*) of the western Pacific and Southeast Asia: Pelagic and shallow water forms. *Mar. Mamm Sci*. 15: 1030-1054.

Phillips, R.C. and E.G. Meñez. 1988. Seagrasses. Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences Number 34. 104 pp.

Pinto, L. 1987. Environmental factors influencing the occurrence of juvenile fish in the mangroves of Pagbilao, Philippines. *Hyrdrobiologia* 150: 283-301.

Pinto, L. 1988. Population dynamics and community structure of fish in the mangroves of Pagbilao, Philippines. *Journal of Fish Biology* 33 (suppl A): 1-9.

Polunin, N.V.C. 1975 Sea Turtles: Report in Thailand, W. Malaysia and Indonesia, with a synopsis of data on the conservation status of sea turtles in the Indo-Pacific Region. (Unpublished Report to IUCN, 1-113).

Pratt, H.L. and J.G. Casey. 1990. Shark reprodcutive strategies as a limiting factor in directed fisheries, with a review of Holden's method of estimating growth-parameters. *In*: Pratt Jr., H.L.; S.H. Gruber and T. Taiuchi (eds.). Elasmobranchs as Living Resources: Advances in the Biology, Ecology, Systematics, and the Status of the Fisheries. *NOAA Technical Report* 90: 97-109.

Pratt, V.R.; S. Mamauag; J. Alban; E. Parfan; and T. Donaldson. 2000. Status report on the Philippine live reef fish trade and strategies to combat its destructive fishing practices. *In*: Licuanan, W.Y. and E.D. Gomez (eds.). Philippine Coral Reefs, Reef Fishes, and Associated Fisheries: Status And Recommendations To Improve Their Management. Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network (GCRMN).

PRIMEX and South Pacific Commission (SPC). 1993. Philippine tuna research project: Phase I Final Report. Department of Agriculture-Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources - Fisheries Sector Program. DA-BFAR FSP. Manila, Philippines.

PRIMEX. 1993. Fisheries Resource Assessment Study of Coastal and Marine Waters of Antique. Final Report Volume II. Annexes. September 1992.

Priyono, A. 1995a. The national review of status of small cetaceans in Indonesia. UNEP/SEA95/WP16. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June 1995. 11 pp.

Priyono, A. 1995b. Habitat status and population of pesut (*Orcaella brevisrostris*) in Indonesia. UNEP/SEA95/WP27. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June 1995. 3 pp.

Punay, E.Y. 1975. Commercial sea snake fisheries in the Philippines. *In*: Dunson, W.A. (ed.). The Biology of Sea Snakes. University Park Press, Baltimore. pp. 489-502.

Quimbo, L. 1980. Philippine mangrovce swamp species, their distribution. *Proceedings of Seminar on Southeast Asian Mangroves, Nodai Research Institute, Tokyo University Agriculture* 1980: 135-144.

Ramos, E.G. 1999. Subisdence, a serious hazard caused by groundwater extraction in Metro Manila. Philippine Volcanology and Seismology (PHIVOLCS).

Ramos, E.G.; A.A. Morado Jr.; M.A. Aurelio; and A.P. Ferrer. 1999. Current tectonic features of the Philippines from geomorphic, geophysical, geological and GPS data. Proceedings of the International Conference on Tectonics, Stratigraphy and Petroleum and Mineral Systems of Palawan, Borneo and Surrounding Areas. (CD-ROM).

Randall, J.E.; G.R. Allen; R.C. Steene. 1990. Complete diver's and fisherman's guide to fishes of the Great Barrier Reef and Coral Sea. Crawford House Press, Bathurst NSW, Australia. 507 pp.

Randall, J.E.; T.H. Fraser; and E.A. Lachner. 1990. On the validity of the Indo-Pacific cardinalfishes *Apogon aureus* (Lacepède) and *A. fleurieu* (Lacepède), with description of a related new species from the Red Sea. *Proc. Biol. Soc. Wash.* 103(1): 39-62.

Rangin, C. and E. Silver. 1990. Neogene tectonic evolution of the Celebes-Sulu basins: New insights from leg 124 drilling. Proceedings of the Ocean Drilling Program, Scientific Results. Vol. 124.

Rangin, C. and M. Pubellier. 1999. Distribution of deformation across the Sundaland/Philippine Sea Plate boundary from GPS results and topographic studies. Proceedings of the International Conference on Tectonics, Stratigraphy and Petroleum and Mineral Systems of Palawan, Borneo and Surrounding Areas. (CD-ROM)

Rathbun, G.B. 1984. Sirenians. Offprints from: Orders and Families of Recent Mammals of the World. Sydney Anderson and J. Knox Jones, Jr. (ed.) John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Rathbun, G.B. 1986. Aerial census of dugongs (Borneo). *Sirenews, Newsletter of the IUCN/SSC Sirenian Specialist Group* 6: 3.

Raymont, J.E.G. 1980. Plankton and Productivity in the Oceans. Volume 1 - Phytoplankton. 2ndedition. Pergamon Press. Oxford. 489 pp.

Raymont, J.E.G. 1983. Plankton and Productivity in the Oceans. Volume 2 - Zooplankton. 2ndedition. Pergamon Press. Oxford. 824 pp.

Redoloza, L.G. 1982. Alcohol from Philippine mangrove swamps. UPLB College of Forestry Library, College, Laguna.

Ren, Mie-e 1994. Relative sea level changes in China over the last eighty years. *In*: Zhou Di; Y.B. Liang; and C.K. Zeng (eds.). Oceanology of China Seas. Vol. 2. The Netherlands, Kluver Press. pp. 433-444.

Reyes, L.S. 1998. Rare megamouth shark found. *The Philippine Daily Inquirer.* 30 March 1998.

Reyes, M.R.C. 1983. Litter production and leaf decomposition rate in mangrove forest in Pagbilao, Quezon Province. M.S. Thesis, University of the Philippines, Diliman, Quezon City.

Reyes, N.E. 1978. The molluscan fauna of mangrove communities in Puerto Galera, Oriental Mindoro. M S Thesis, University of the Philippines, Diliman, Quezon City.

Rodulfa, E.V. 1962. Taxonomic importance of the vegetative characteristics of the mangrove species in Tarongnan, Jandura, Sta Margarita, Samar. B S Thesis, College of Forestry, University of the Philippines, Los Baños, Laguna.

Romero, F. and W. Zacher. 1981. Sulu Archipelago reef complexes. *Proc. of 4th Intl. Coral Reef Symp.* 1: 555-558.

Ronquillo, I.A. and M.E.G. Llana. 1979. Fishery recources of the mangrove swamp area. *NS DB Technology Journal* 4(4): 17-23.

Roque, C.R.; P.M. Zamora; R. Alonzo; S.G. Padilla; M.C. Ferrer; and Ma.D.M. Cacha. 1998. The Root Causes of Biodiversity Loss in the Philippines. WWF-Philippines Research Paper Number 1, Series of 1998, Quezon City.

Ross, M.A. and G. Hodgson. 1981. A quantitative study of hermatypic coral diversity and zonation at Apo Reef, Mindoro, Philippines. *Proc.4th International Coral Reef Symposium* 2: 281-291.

Rothauscher, H. 1999. A summing-up of the world dugong population. Website: home.t-online.de/home/rothauscher/popul_e.htm

Rottman, M.L. 1980. Net tow and surface sediment distributions of pteropods in the South China Sea.

Rudolf, P.; C. Smeenk; and S. Leatherwood. 1997. Preliminary checklist of cetacea in the Indonesian archipelago and adjacent waters. *Zool. Verh. Leiden*. 312 : 1-48.

Russ, G.R. and A.C. Alcala. 1994. Sumilon Island Reserve: 20 years of hope and frustrations. *Naga The ICLARM Quarterly* 17(3): 8-12.

Samaniego, B.R. and M.R. Cruz. 1996. Data on shark fisheries of Zamboanga Philippines (April 1996). WWF Philippines Program.

San Diego-McGlone, M. L.; G. S. Jacinto; V. C. Dupra; I. S. Narcise; D. O. Padayao; and I. B. Velasquez. 1999a. A comparison of nutrient characteristics and primary productivity in the Sulu Sea and South China Sea. *Acta Oceanographica Taiwanica* 37: 219-230.

San Diego-McGlone, M. L.; G. S. Jacinto; V. C. Dupra; I. S. Narcise; D. O. Padayao; and I. B. Velasquez. 1999b. Primary Production and Nutrient Characteristics in the South China Sea and Sulu Sea. 4th International Conference on the Marine Biology of the South China Sea, Oct. 20-22. The University of the Philippines - Marine Science Institute, Diliman, Quezon City.

Santos, T.M.; S.S. Dizon; J.D. Dorado, Jr.; E.G. Celso. 1992. Final report: Assessment of the erosion and siltation in La Mesa Watershed. Training Center for Applied Geodesy and Photogrammetry, College of Engineering, University of the Philippines.

Sarmiento, J.V. 1998. Fish pens endanger dolphins. *Philippine Daily Inquirer*. Dec. 1, 1998.

Schoenig. E. 1977. Plankton of Hilutungan Channel: Euthecosomatous pteropods. *Natl. Res.*

Schroeder, R.E. 1980. Philippine shorefishes of the Western Sulu Sea. Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources-Ministry of Natural Resources, Philippines. National Media Production Center, Manila, Philippines. 266 pp.

SEAFDEC. 1999. Aquaculture can be friendly to mangroves. *Science and Technology POST* 17(6): 4.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1990. Environmental Studies of Pamalican Island, Cuyo, Palawan.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1994a. Environmetal Impact Assessment Report on the AKEAN Resort Town, Caticlan, Aklan, Panay, Visayas. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1994b. Environmental Studies of the Durkee-Coplex Exploration Program Site GSEC 69, Northern Cebu, Visayas. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1995. Environmental Baseline Study of Northern Palawan, Philodrill Octon Project Site. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1995-1996. Environmental Impact Study for the Cebu-Bohol Water Supplu Project Site. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1996a. Characterization of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the Northern Palawan Mangrove Ecosystem vis-a-vis Study on Environmetally Sustainable Tourism Development Plan for Northern Palawan. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1996b. Environmental Characterization of Tago Island, Concepcion, Iloilo, Panay, Visayas. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1996c. Environmental Impact Assessment of the Bohol-Cebu Water Supply Project.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1997a. Environmental Assessment Studies of the Coastal Area in the Vicinity Distilleria bago, Inc. Negros Occidental. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1997b. Environmental Impact Assessment for the Panglao Tourism Development Project, Bohol. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1997c. Environmental Impact Assessment for Treasure Island at Laiya Ibabao, San Juan, Batangas, Southern Luzon. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1998a. Environmental Impact Assessment for the PHILNICO Mining and Industrial Corporation, Nonoc Project, Surigao del Norte. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1998b. Initial Environmental Examination for the Westmont Resort, Fatima, Mamburao, Occidental Mindoro. Quezon City.

SEASTEMS, Inc. 1998c. Preliminary Environmental Characterization of the Philippine Territory of the Sulu-Sulawesi Region. 109 pp.

Sia III Q.P.; L.R. Garces; and E.A. Cinco. 1994. Reef fisheries of northwestern San Miguel Bay. *In*: Silvestre, G.; C. Luna; and J. Padilla (eds.). Multidisciplinary assessment of the fisheries in San Miguel Bay, Philippines (1992-1993). *ICLARM Tech. Rep*.

Silliman University Marine Laboratory (SUML). 1994a. Final report on the resource and ecological assessment of Carigara Bay, Leyte. Vol.1. FSP-BFAR. pp. 110-129.

Silliman University Marine Laboratory (SUML). 1994b. Final report on the resource and ecological assessment of Sogod Bay, Leyte. Vol.1. Fisheries. FSP-BFAR. pp. 6-180.

Silliman University Marine Laboratory (SUML). 1997. Final report on the Assessment of the Central Visayas Regional Project-I. Nearshore Fisheries Component. USAID, Manila, Philippines. pp. 16-61.

Silliman University. 1999. Elasmobranch Biodiversity in the Philippines (Phase 1: December 28, 1998-June, 1999): Terminal Report. WWF-Philippines, July 9, 1999. (Unpublished).

Silva, P.A.; E.G. Meñez; and R.L. Moe. 1987. Catalogue of the Marine Benthic Algae of the Philippines. Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences Number 27. 179 pp.

Simpfendorfer, C. 2000. Environmental threats to sharks. Shark 2000 Conference. Honolulu, Hawaii, February 21-24, 2000. 8 pp.

Slijper, E.J.; W.L. Van Utrecht; and C. Naaktgeboren. 1964. Remarks on the distribution and migration of whales based on observations from Netherlands ships. *Bijdr. Dierkd*. 34: 3-93.

Smith, L.V. 1941. *Labidocera glauca* sp. nov., a blue copepod of Puerto Galera Bay, Mindoro. *Philipp. J. Sci.* 75 (3): 307-321.

Smith, M. 1926. Monograph of the Sea Snakes (Hydrophiidae). British Museum of Natural History, London. 130 pp.

SNC-Lavalin, 1995. Environmental Study for the Proposed Maritime Sector Project in the Philippines. Vol. II-Final Report.

Solis, J.G. 1991. Tidal phenomenon/Ocean dynamics. Infomapper: The National Surveys, Mapping and Resource Information Technology Quarterly. Vol. II, no.1. p.11.

Sottom, R. (ed.). 1999. Case studies of the management of elasmobranch fisheries. FAO Fisheries Technical Paper 378/1 and 378/2. 920 pp.

Synergistic Consultants. 1988. Calancan Bay Resurvey Report (unpubl.)

Tamse, A.F. 1999. Size structure of zooplankton in Kalayaan Island Group and Palawan Shelf waters. 4th International Conference on the Marine Biology of the South China Sea, Oct. 20-22. The University of the Philippines - Marine Science Institute, Diliman, Quezon City.

Tan, J.M.L. 1995a. A Field Guide to Whales and Dolphins in the Philippines. Bookmark, Inc., Makati, Metro Manila.

Tan, J.M.L. 1995b. From whaling to whale watching. UNEP/SEA95/WP24. Workshop on the Biology and Conservation of Small Cetaceans and Dugongs of Southeast Asia. Dumaguete, 27-30 June, 1995. 3 pp.

Tangon, E. 1999. Sirenews, Newsletter of the IUCN/SSC Sirenia Specialist Group, 1999. Number 31. April 1999.

Taniguchi, A. 1977a. Biomass and size composition of copepod nauplii and tintinnids in the Philippine Sea and Celebes Sea, summer 1972. *Bull. Plankton Soc. Jap*. 24 (1): 1-10.

Taniguchi, A. 1977b. Distribution of microzooplankton in the Philippine Sea and the Celebes Sea in summer 1972. *J. Oceanogr. Soc. Jap*. 33 (2): 87-103.

Tas'an, D.; Soemitro; and S. Hendrokusumo. 1979. Some biological notes of two male dugongs in captivity at the Jaya Ancol Ocenarium, Jakarta. Gelanggang Samudra, Jaya Ancol (Oceanarium), Jakarta, Indonesia.

Taylor, B. and D.E. Hayes, 1983. Origin and history of the South China Sea Basin. *In*: Hayes (ed.). Tectonic and Geologic Evolution of Southeast Asian Seas and Islands (Pt.2): *Am. Geophys. Union Monogr*. 27:23-56.

Tesoro, F. 1982. Utilization of Mangrove Forest Products. National Research Coordination Symposium-Workshop (NATMANCOM) 8-10 December 1992, Covelandia Resort Hotel, Kawit, Cavite.

Tikel, D. 1995. Population structure of Australasian dugongs (*Dugong dugon*) defined by hypervariable DNA sequence block in the control region on mitochondrial DNA: implications for conservation. First International Symposium on Dugong and Manatee held at Toba City, Japan. Nov. 15-17, 1995. (abstract only).

Tokuda, H.; S. Kawashima; M. Ohno; H. Ogawa. 1994. Seaweeds of Japan. Midori Shobo, Toshima-ku, Tokyo. x + 194 pp.

Torres, D.S.; I.A. Lim; C.T. Reyes, Jr.; and E. Narida. 2000. Notes on the characteristics of whalesharks (*Rhincodon typus*) in Honda Bay and some management implications. 9th Annual Philippine Vertebrate Symposium of the Wildlife Conservation Society of the Philippines (WCSP), Development Academy of the Philippines, Tagaytay City, 10-12 April 2000.

Townsend, C.H. 1935. The distribution of certain whales as shown by logbook records of American whale ships. *Zoologica* 19: 1-50.

Trono, G.C. Jr. (unpubl.). Assessment of seaweed communities in the Kalayaan Island Group. Marine Science Research Program at the Kalayaan Island Group Year 1 Annual Report.

Trono, G.C. Jr. (unpubl.). Inventory and assessment of the marine flora of the Turtle Islands Heritage Protected Area. WWF-Philippines.

Trono, G.C. Jr. 1973. Studies on the marine benthic Chlorophyta of Puerto Galera, Or. Mindoro, Philippines. *UPNSRC Tech. Rep.* No. 1. 26 pp.

Trono, G.C. Jr. 1997. Field Guide and Atlas of the Seaweed Resources of the Philippines. Bookmark Inc., Makati City. 306 pp.

Trono, G.C. Jr. and A.V. de Lara. 1981. Some marine benthic algae from Cabra and Lubang Is., Occ. Mindoro, Philippines. *Nat. Appl. Sci. Bull*. 33(1-2): 1-49.

Trono, G.C. Jr. and M.S. Santos-Maranan. 1974. The genus *Ectocarpus* of Puerto Galera, Or. Mindoro, Philippines. *UPNSRC Tech. Rep*. No. 10.

Trono, G.C. Jr. and R.T. Biña. 1973. Notes on some macrobenthic red algae of Puerto Galera, Or. Mindoro. *UPNSRC Tech. Rep. No.* 5. 16 pp.

Trono, G.C. Jr.; R. Savella; J. Uri; A. Ortiz. (unpubl.). Inventory and assessment of *Gracilaria* and *Sargassum* stocks in selected areas in the Philippines. PCAMRD.

Trono, R.B. 1996. Whale shark fishery in the Bohol Sea. WWF-Philippines Programme report.

Trono, R.B. 2001. An ocean of treasures. *In*: Freund, J. Sulu Sulawesi Seas. Bookmark, Inc. and WWF-Philippines (Kabang Kalikasan ng Pilipinas), Metro Manila, Philippines. pp. 2-5.

UBFI. 1992. NGO information fact sheet, Puerto Princessa: Ulugan Bay Foundation, Inc.

UNEP/IUCN. 1988. Coral Reefs of the World. Volume 2: Indian Ocean, Red Sea and Gulf. UNEP Regional Seas Directories and Bibliographies. IUCN, Gland, Switzerland and Cambridge, U.K./UNEP, Nairobi, Kenya. 1 + 389 pp., 36 maps.

United Nations Environment Program (UNEP). 1996. Report on the workshop on the biology and conservation of small cetaceans and dugongs of Southeast Asia. Bangkok: UNEP. 101 pp.

Uri, J; A.A. Yaptinchay; R.B. Trono; and N. Dumaup. 1998. Monitoring of *Dugong dugon* in Dimakya, Island, Palawan, Philippines. WWF-Philippines Research paper No. 8, Series of 1998.

Velasquez. 1999a. A comparison of nutrient characteristics and primary productivity in the Sulu Sea and South China Sea. *Acta Oceanographica Taiwanica.* 37 (3): 219-229.

Velasquez. 1999b. Primary Production and Nutrient Characteristics in the South China Sea.

Viles, H. and T. Spencer, 1995. Coastal Problems: Geomorphology, ecology and society at the coast. Edward Arnold. Great Britain.

White, A. 1984. Effects of Protective Management on Coral Reefs in the Philippines. *ICLARM Newsletter* 7: 4.

White, A. and A. Cruz-Trinidad. 1998. The values of coastal resources: Why protection and management are critical. Coastal Resources Management Project, Cebu City, Philippines. 96 pp.

White, A. T. and R.O. de Leon. 1996. Mangrove resource decline in the Philippines: government and community look for new solutions. *Tambuli* 1(1996): 6-11.

Whittaker, R.H. 1975. Communities and Ecosystems. New York: MacMillan.

Wilkinson, C.; L. Chou; E. Gomez; A. Ridzwan; S. Soekarno; and S. Sudara. 1993. Status of coral reefs in Southeast Asia: Threats and responses. Proc. of Colloquium on Global Aspects of Coral Reefs: Health, Hazards and History, University of Miami.

WWF. 1998. Proceedings: Ecoregion-Based Conservation Workshop. Washington, D.C. January 1998.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1987-1998. Ecological and Environmetal Studies of the Turtle Islands Marine Protected Area, Sulu Archipelago.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1997-1998. Protecting the Biodiversity of Mount Guiting-Guiting Through the Development of Sustainable Livelihood Enterprises, Sibuyan, Romblon.

WWF-Philippines/KKP, 1998-1999. El Nido Community-Based Conservation and Development Project, Northern Palawan.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1998a. Ecological and Environmental Studies of Baguan Island Marine Sanctuary. *KKP Research Paper* No. 4, series of 1998.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1998b. Preliminary Environmental Characteristics of the Philippine Territory for the Sulu-Sulawesi Region. Prepared by SEASTEMS for WWF-Philippines. 106 pp + 6 appendices.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1998c. The Sulu-Celebes Seas Large Marine Ecosystems: Overview of marine fisheries state and management issues. Prepared by L. Garses for Kabang Kalikasan ng Pilipinas (WWF-Philippines), December 1998. 69 pp + appendices.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999a. Sulu-Sulawesi Cetaceans Bio-Assessment Report. A report submitted by M.N.R. Alava to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 20 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999b. Sulu-Sulawesi Elasmobranchs Bio-Assessment Report. A report submitted by M.N.R. Alava to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 22 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999c. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Meterology Component. A report submitted by E. Anglo to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 14 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999d. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Oceanogrphy Component. A report submitted by E. Anglo to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 25 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999e. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Coral Reef Component. A report submitted by N. Aragones to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999f. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Geology Component. A report submitted by E. Bate to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 24 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999g. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Plankton Component. A report submitted by R. Hermes to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999h. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Watershed Component. A report submitted by D. Lagunzad to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999i. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Marine Fish Component. A report submitted by R. Miclat to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 35 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999j. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Riparian Ecology. A report submitted by T. Perez to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines. 27 pp.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999k. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Seaweed-Seagrass Component. A report submitted by G.C. Trono, Jr. to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999l. Sulu-Sulawesi Dugong Biophysical Assessment Report. A report submitted by A.A. Yaptinchay to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 1999m. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Mangrove Component. A report submitted by P.M. Zamora to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 2000a. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Seasnakes. A report submitted by A.C. Alcala to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

WWF-Philippines/KKP. 2000b. Sulu-Sulawesi Biophysical Assessment Report: Draft integrated report. A report submitted by F. Guarin to the Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Conservation Program Development (SSMECPD), WWF-Philippines.

Wyrtki, K. 1961. Scientific results of marine investigations of the South China Sea and the Gulf of Thailand, 1959-1961. *NAGA Report 2*. Scripps Institute of Oceanography, La Jolla, CA.

Yao, C. E. 1983. Tangal for the bahalian industry. *Canopy* 9(6): 9, 10.

Yao, C. E. 1986. Mangrove reforestation in Central Visayas. *Canopy* 12(2): 6-9.

Yao, C. E. 1987. Bakauan backyard for wind and tidal break. *Canopy* 10(5): 3-5, 9

Yao, C. E. 1987. Bakauan-babae: two sisters? *Canopy* 13(5): 1-2.

Yao, C. E. 1991. Amatong in Bais Bay. *Canopy* 17(4): 4-5.

Yao, C. E. 1991. Look-alike species in the mangroves. *Canopy* 23(3): 2-3.

Yao, C. E. 1997. Siquijor has rare Sonneratia ovata. *Canopy* 23(5): 5.

Yao, C. E. 1999. The mangroves of Cogtong Bay. *Canopy* 25(2): 9.

Yao, C. E. and F. Nanagas, 1984. Banacon Island: biggest bakauan plantation in Central Visayas. *Canopy* 10(5): 3-5

Yaptinchay, A.A.SP.; R. Uy; and M.N.R. Alava. 1998. Catch and effort data of whale sharks in the Philippines. 14th Annual American Elasmobranch Meeting, University of Guelph, Ontario, Canada, July 16 –22, 1998.

Zacher, W. 1981. Geology and morphology of Apo Reef. *Proc. of 4th Int. Coral Reef Symp.* 1: 596. (abstract only).

Zaikina, A.V. 1977. Vertical distribution and diurnal migrations of *Cyclopoida* (Copepoda) in the waters of the North Trade Wind Current and the Sulu Sea. *Pol. Arch. Hydrobiol.* 24 (Suppl.): 337-362.

Zamora, P. M. 1980. Philippine Mangroves: Assessment of Status, environmental problems conservation and management strategies. *Bakawan* 1(1): 2.

Zamora, P. M. 1982a. Conservation and management of Philippine Mangroves. *Proceedings of the First National Natural Resources Conservation Conference* 1981: 84-104.

Zamora, P. M. 1982b. State of the Art on Mangrove Research in the Philippines. National Mangrove Research Coordination Symposium-Workshop (NATMANCOM). 6-10 December 1982, Covelandia Resort Hotel, Kawit, Cavite.

Zamora, P. M. 1984a. Mangrove Research in the Philippines. *Natural and Applied Science Bulletin* 35: 211-223.

Zamora, P. M. 1984b. Philippine Mangrove: Assessment of status, environmental problems, conservation and management strategies. *In:* Soepadmo, E.A.N. Rao and D.J. Macintosh (eds.). Asian Symposium on Mangrove Environment: Research and Management, University of Malaya, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia. pp. 696-707.

Zamora, P. M. 1985. Conservation strategies for Philippine Mangroves. *Enviroscope* 5(2): 5-9.

Zamora, P. M. 1986. Status of mangrove conservation and management in the Philippines. *Philippine Biota* 19: 12-19.

Zamora, P. M. 1987a. Mangrove wilderness areas and forest reserve in the Philippines. U.P. SRF-DENR Seminar-Workshop on the Policy and Planning for Civil, Military and other Reservations in the Philippines. Development Academy of the Philippines, Tagaytay City, Cavite.

Zamora, P.M. 1987b. The role of mangrove forests as a life support system. Workshop on the Conversion of Mangrove Areas to Aquaculture, 24-26 April 1986, Iloilo City, Visayas. pp. 7-13.

Zamora, P. M. 1988a. Diversity of Flora in the Philippine Mangrove Ecosystems. Haribon Foundation-INternational Institute for Environment and Development (IIED) Technical Workshop on Biological Diversity. PCED Hostel, University of the Philippines, Diliman, Quezon City.

Zamora, P. M. 1988b. Mangrove resources of the Philippines. *Proceedings of the NEPC First National Conference on Seagrass Management, Research and Development* (Pasay City) 1986: 16-42.

Zamora, P. M. 1989a. Conservation strategies for Philippine mangroves. *CORE* 2: 34-49.Zamora, P. M. 1989a. Impact of fishpondification on the mangrove ecosystem of the Philippines. *BIOTROP Special Publication* (Bogor, Indonesia) 37: 21-37.

Zamora, P. M. 1989b. Management policies and political awareness. *In:* C.D. Field and M. Vannucci (eds.). Proceedings of the Symposium on New Perspectives in Research and Management of Mangrove Ecosystem, 11-14 November 1986, Colombo, Sri Lanka. pp. 189-191.

Zamora, P. M. 1989c. Mangroves of the Philippines. *BIOTROP Special Publication* (Bogor, Indonesia) 37: 43-65.

Zamora, P. M. 1989d. Protection, conservation and rehabilitation of Philippine mangrove resources. *UNEP Regional Seas Reports and Studies* (Nairobi, Africa) 90 (1988): 78-101.

Zamora, P. M. 1990a. Environmental Impact Assessment Modular Studies for the Mount Apo Geothermal Project: Marine EIA (MEIA-4): Mangroves (Cotabato River Estuary, Tamontaca River Estuary).

Zamora, P. M. 1990b. Fishpondification, a major controversial environmental issue in mangrove ecosystem in the Philippines. Proceedings of the 13th Biennial Conference of the Association of Biology Education (28 August-1 September 1990), Seoul, Korea. pp. 265-285.

Zamora, P. M. 1990c. Philippine Mangroves: their depletion, conversion and decreasing productivity. *WALLACEANA* 58 : 1-5.

Zamora, P. M. 1992. DA Resources and Environmental Assessment of Calauag Bay Project: Subcomponent V: Mangrove Study (with PRIMEMOVERS + MSI). Quezon City.

Zamora, P. M. 1995. Diversity of Flora in the Philippine Mangrove Ecosystems. U.P. CIDS-NAST Biodiversity Conservation Reports 1: 1-92.

Zamora, P. M. 1997. Managing the Philippine mangal for long term human survival. *Transactions of the National Academy of Science* 13: 89-125.

Zamora, P. M. 1998. Chapter 7: Forest of the sea. *In:* R.S. Punongbayan; P.M. Zamora; and P.S. Ong (eds.). The Philippine Archipelaho: Kasaysayan, The Story of the Filipino People. Volume 1. Hongkong: Asia Publication Company, Ltd. pp. 177-191.

Zamora, P. M. and L. Quimbo. 1988. Taxonomy and ecological features of mangroves. *PCARRD State of the Art: Mangrove Research. Forestry Series* 4: 10-25.

Zamora, P. M.; E. Baltazar; and S. Nisperos-Ayallew. 1988. Information Dissemination and Campaign for Mangrove Resources Conservation. Workshop-Symposium on Mangrove Research, Environment, Policy and Information (DENR, ERDB, NATMANCOM) 28-30 November 1988, Sulo Hotel, Quezon City.

ADCP	Acoustic Doppler Current Profilers
ANIAD	Antique Integrated Area Development
ARMM	Autonomous Region of Muslim Mindanao
ASEAN	Association of Southeast Asian Nations
BAR	Bureau of Agricultural Resource
BFAR	Bureau of Fisheries and Aquatic Resources
BOD	Biological Oxygen Demand
BMG	Bureau of Mines and Geosciences
CBRP	Calancan Bay Rehabilitation Project
CCC	Coral Cay Conservation Ltd.
CDS	Center for Development Studies
CERC	US Army Coastal Engineering Research Center
CITES	Convention in International Trade in Endangered Species of Wildlife Flora and Fauna
CLRP	Coastal Living Resources Project
CMS	Convention on Migratory Species
CRC	Cooperative Research Center
CRRP	Coral Reef Reseach Project
CRRT	Coral Reef Research Team
CVRPO	Central Visayas Regional Project Office
DA	Department of Agriculture
DAO	Department Administrative Orders
DENR	Department of Environment and Natural Resources
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
EMB	Environmental Management Bureau
ENSO	El Niño Southern Oscillation
EO	Executive Order
FAD	Fish Aggregating Device
FAO	Fisheris Administrative Order

FMB	Forest Management Bureau
FSP	Fisheries Sector Program
GCRMN	Global Coral Reef Monitoring Network
IATFMMC	Inter-Agency Task Force Marin Mammal Council
ICRI	The International Coral Reef Initiative
ICZM	The Integrated Coastal Zone Management
IEC	Information, education, and communication program
ITCZ	Intertropical Convergence Zone
ITF	Inter-Agency Task Force
IUCN	International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources
KKP	Kabang Kalikasan ng Pilipinas (a.k.a. WWF-Philippines)
KKPFI	Kabang Kalikasan ng Pilipinas Foundation, Inc.
LGU	Local Government Unit
MCDP	Marine Conservation Development Program
MNR	Ministry of Natural Resources
MPA	Marine Protected Area
MPDITF	Marine Parks/Reserve Development Inter-Agency Task Force
MSC	Marine Science Center (Presently MSI)
MSI	Marine Science Institute
MSU	Mindanao State University
NAMRIA	National Mapping and Resource Information Authority
NAPOCOR/NPC	National Power Corporation
NATMANCOM	National Mangrove Committee
NEDA	National Economic Development Authority
NIA	National Irrigation Authority
NIPAS	NationalIntegrated Protected Areas System
NGO	Non-Governmental Organizations
NOAA	US National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Agency
NOCOP	Naval Operations Center for Oil Pollution
NRMC	Natural Resources Management Center (now integrated into NAMRIA)

PAGASA	Philippine Atmospheric, Geophysical and Astronomical Services Administration
PAR	Philippine Area of Responsibility /
	Photosynthetically Active Radiation
PAWB	Protected Areas and Wildlife Bureau
PCP	Pawikan Conservation Project
PHILNICO	Philippine Nickel Co.
PHIVOLCS	Philippine Volcanology and Seismology
PLS	Protected Landscape and Seascape Program
PMEL	Pacific Marine Environmental Laboratory
PNOC	Philippine National Oil Company
PRIMEX	Pacific Rim Innovation and Management Exponents
PRRCFI	Philippine Reef and Rainforest Conservation Foundation, Inc.
PSP	Paralytic Shellfish Poisoning
PTA	Philippine Tourism Authority
REA	Resource and Ecological Assessment
SAGUDA	Sagipin and Gubat at Dagat Program
SCUBA	Self-contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus
SEAFDEC-AQD	Southeast Asian Fisheries Development Council-Aquaculture Department
SMB	Sverdrup-Munk-Bretschneider
SPC	South Pacific Commission
SSC	Species Survival Commission
SSG	Shark Specialist Group
SSME	Sulu-Sulawesi Marine Ecoregion Program
SU	Silliman University
SUML	Silliman University Marine Laboratory
TC	Tropical cyclones
TRAFFIC	joint wildlife trade monitoring programme of WWF and IUCN
TRNMP	Tubbataha Reef National Marine Park
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
UNEP	United Nations Environment Program
UP	University of the Philippines

UPLB	University of the Philippines at Los Baños
WFR	Watershed Forest Reserve
WWF	World Wildlife Fund for Nature

Angel C. Alcala, Ph.D.
Director
Silliman University-Angelo King
Resource and Environmental
Management
(SUAKCREM) Foundation
Dumaguete City 6200
Philippines
Telefax: +63 35 4225698
Email: suakcrem@philwebinc.com

Moonyeen Alava
Conservation Officer
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: malava@wwf-phil.org.ph

Emmanuel G. Anglo, Ph.D.
Consultant
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9513641
Fax: +63 2 7229492
E-mail: emma_anglo@urscopr.com /
eganglo@pusit.admu.edu.ph

Naniel Aragones, Ph.D.
Consultant
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9204589 / 8140401 / 9214635
Mobile: +63 918 8803035
E-mail: ttemi@info.com.ph /
naniel@nsclub.net

Emmanuel S. Bate
Managing Director, SEASTEMS, Inc.
242 Tandang Sora Avenue
Bgy. Tandang Sora, Quezon City
Philippines
Telefax: +63 2 9201506
Tel: +63 2 9201706 / 4554916
Email: bate@edsamail.com.ph

Jose Noel B. Dumaup
Conservation Officer
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: ndumaup@wwf-phil.org.ph

Flordeliz Guarin, Ph.D.
Consultant
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 7596773 to 74
Mobile: +63 917 8344844
Fax: +63 2 7596943
Email: guarin@compass.com.ph

Rudolf Hermes, Ph.D.
Research Fellow
Philippine Council for Aquatic and
Marine Resource Research and
Development (PCAMRRD)
Department of Science and Technology
Los Baños, Laguna
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 8372071 loc. 2430 (Mla off.)
Tel: +63 49 5361582, 5361566
E-mail: hermes@mozcom.com /
Karl.Hermes@hoexter.netsurf.de

Daniel A. Lagunzad, Ph.D.
National Institute of Biology
University of the Philippines
Diliman, Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9205301 loc. 6536
Telefax: +63 2 9205471
E-mail: dal@nib.upd.edu.ph

Evangeline Florence B. Miclat
Assistant Technical Director
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: emiclat@wwf-phil.org.ph

Ramon I. Miclat
Consultant
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: monmiclat@lycos.com

Jose Angelito M. Palma
Conservation Officer
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: jpalma@wwf-phil.org.ph

Teresita Perez, Ph.D.
National Institute of Biology
University of the Philippines
Diliman, Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9205301 loc. 6536
Telefax: +63 2 9205471
E-mail: trp@nib.upd.edu.ph

Filemon Romero, Ph.D.
Director
Marine Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: mromero@wwf-phil.org.ph

Josephine Sumangil-Evangelista
Technical Assistant
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: jsumangil@wwf-phil.org.ph

Gavino C. Trono, Jr., Ph.D.
Professor Emeritus
Marine Science Institute
University of the Philippines
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9205301 loc. 7415
Telefax: +63 2 9223958
Email: trono@upmsi.ph

Romeo B. Trono
Vice President for Conservation & Field Operations
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: rtrono@wwf-phil.org.ph

Alan White, Ph.D.
The Coastal Resource Management Project (CRMP)
5th Floor, CIFC Towers, J. Luna cor.
Humabon Sts., North Reclamation Area
Cebu City
Tel: +63 32 2321821 to 22
Tel: +63 32 4120487 to 89
Fax: +63 32 2321825
E-mail: awhite@mozcom.com

Arnel Andrew Yaptinchay, D.V.M.
Director, Species Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 4333220 to 22
Fax: +63 2 4263927
Email: aayaptinchay@wwf-phil.org.ph

Prescillano M. Zamora, Ph.D.
Consultant
SSME Conservation Program
WWF-Philippines
LBI Bldg., #67 Kalayaan Ave.
Diliman 1101 Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9220748
Email: seastem@skyinet.net

Augustus Rex F. Montebon, M.Sc.
Coral Reef Specialist
ECAN Zoning Component
Sustainable Environment Management
Project in Northern Mindanao
PTFPP Bldg., Sta. Monica Heights,
Puerto Princesa City, Palawan
Tel: +63 48 4346245
Fax: +63 48 4346246
Email: arfmontebon@yahoo.com

Hildie Maria E. Nacorda, M.Sc.
Marine Science Institute
University of the Philippines
Diliman, Quezon City
Philippines
Tel: +63 2 9223921
Email: nacordah@upmsi.ph

Ma. Johanna Pe-Montebon
Marine Science Institute
University of the Philippines
Diliman, Quezon City
Philippines
Telefax: +63 2 9223958
Email: jo@upmsi.ph

APPENDIX 1A DECLARED NATIONAL PARKS IN THE PHILIPPINES (DENR, 1997)

BIOGEO-GRAPHIC ZONE	NAME	REGION	LOCATION	ESTABLISHMENT		AREA (ha)	SPECIAL FEATURES	EXAMPLES OF FLORA AND FAUNA
				Legislation	Date			
D	Quezon	4	Atimonan,Padre Burgos and Pagbilao,Quezon	Proc. 740 Proc.594	10/25/34 8/5/40	535.08 983	Virgin dipterocarp forests;winding road;deep ravines;rock formations, superb scenery	
D	Bulusan Volcano	5	Casiguran,Barcelona, Irosin & Juban, Sorsogon	Proc.811	6/7/35	3673	Famous crater, mineral hot springs, peculiar rock formations	kingfisher, woodpecker, hawks, zebra and green imperial pigeons
F	Mts. Iglit-Baco	4	Sablayan, Occidental Mindoro &Bongabon, Oriental Mindoro	R.A. 6	11/9/70	75445	Habitat of tamaaw (Bubalus mindoroensis) natural grasslands, dipterocarp forest	Dominant rees include Leguminosae, Euphorbiaceae, Dipterocarpaceae, and Anacardiaceae. Pgeons, hornbils, swifts, swiftlets, kingfisher
H	Mt. Canlaon	6	Bago, La Carlota, La Castellana, Morcia, Canlaon, San Carlos, Negros Occidental and Valehermosa, Negros Oriental	Proc.721	8/8/34	24557.6	Pictureqe cone of the active volcano, waterfalls, hotsprings, gorges; rock formations; virgin forest; lagoon; endemic wildlife	Sanggumai Dendrobium anosmym) pitcher plant (Nepenthes spp.) and staghorn fern (Platycerium stouli) Spotted deer, wild pigs, Philippine monkey reptiles and lizards

BIOGEO-GRAPHIC ZONE	NAME	REGION	LOCATION	ESTABLISHMENT		AREA (ha)	SPECIAL FEATURES	EXAMPLES OF FLORA AND FAUNA
				Legislation	Date			
H	Kuapnit-Balinsasaya	8	Baybay & Abuyog, Leyte	Proc. 142	4/16/37	364	Home of bats and swifts; caves with guano deposits	Palm civet, wild pig, Philippine macaque, reptiles like monitor lizard (Varanus salvator) and land turtle (Cyclemys ambionensis)
H	Mahganao	8	Burauen & La Paz, Leyte	Proc. 184	8/27/37	635	Rock formation; beautiful lakes, panoramic view; dipterocarp forests	Dipterocarps e.g. Shorea negrosensis, S, contorta
H	Rajah Sikatuna	7	Carmen, Sierra, Bullones Valencia, Garcia Hernandez Dimiao, Bilar Batuan Bohol	Proc. 129	7/10/87	9023	Last remaining forested portion of Bohol Island, Home of the flying lemur, Philippine arsier; mossy forest	Flying lemur, Philippine tarsier, Dipterocarp spp. Mossy forest Philippine cockatoo, Philippine trogon, wild pig, Malay civet, Philippine palm civet, monitor lizard, green imperial pigeon, black-back coleto, Philippine grass owl, screech owl
I	Taklong Island	6	Guimaras, Iloilo	Proc. 525	2/8/90	1143	White sandy beaches interesting coves and coral reefs, two major islands surrounded by 46 islets	Rabbit fish, sea grasses and invertebrates
J	Sudlon	7	Cebu, Cebu	Proc. 56	4/11/36	696	Caverns; waterhole; wondeful scenery; temperate climate historical	Molave trees, pine, Dipterocarp species; sun bird (Nectarina jugularis) swiflet (Collocalia esculenta) bulbul(Pycnonotus goiavier) and wagtail (Motacilla cinerea robusta)

BIOGEO-GRAPHIC ZONE	NAME	REGION	LOCATION	ESTABLISHMENT		AREA (ha)	SPECIAL FEATURES	EXAMPLES OF FLORA AND FAUNA
				Legislation	Date			
K	St. Pau Subterrenean River	4	Puerto Princesa, Palawan	Proc. 835	3/26/71	3901	Underground river	Dracontomelon dao, Diospyros spp. and Pometia pinnata, Philippine monkey, mound builders (tabon birds) Pacific reeef egrets, Philippine cockatoo, talking mynah
L	Mt. Dajo	ARMM	Patikul and Talipau, Sulu	Proc. 261	2/28/38	213	Historical, only mountain in Jolo	No data on flora and fauna
M	Basilan	9	Lamitan, Basila	Proc. 457 Proc. 1531	9/25/39 2/2/76	6451 3100	Waterfalls, natural swimming pool, virgin dipterocarp forest, moist forest, abundant wildlife, invigorating climate	Dipteroarps, Podocarpus, Pandanus, wild boar, phyton, green parrots, hanging parakeets, woodpeckers, owls, orioles, Philipine eagle, tarier, giant scops, owls, rufous hornbill, Philippine deer
N	Initao	10	Initao, Misamis Oriental	R.A. 3568	6/21/63	57	Virgin dipterocarp forests; scenic spot; sandy beach; caves and recreational areas.	Kamagong (Diospyros philippinensis), tangisang bayawak (Ficus variegata), margapali (Dehaasia triandra), talisai gubat (Terminalia foetidissima), bats, tarsier, lizards

BIOGEO-GRAPHIC ZONE	NAME	REGION	LOCATION	ESTABLISHMENT		AREA (ha)	SPECIAL FEATURES	EXAMPLES OF FLORA AND FAUNA
				Legislation	Date			
N	Mt. Kitanglad	10	Manolo Fortich, Sumilao,Impasugong Malaybalay, Lantapan talakag, Baungon &Libuna, Bukidnon	Proc. 677	12/14/90	29716	Habitat of the Philippine eagle; virgin diterocarp and mossy forests; composed of range of mountains with features such as; waterfalls smal mountain lake; caves and rock formation	Dipterocarps, Podocarpus philippinensis, Kleinhovia hospitata, Philippine eagle, serpent eagle, Brahminy kite, hornbill, finches, mynah
N	Mt. Malindang NP and Watershed	10,9	Oroquieta, Ozamis City, Calamba Bonifacio and Jimenez in Misamis Occidental and Zamboanga	R.A. 6266	6/19/71	53262	Contains several peaks with high elevations and intact forest cover that are ideal for mountaineering and nature observation, has a climate that is good for summer relaxation, crater lake in Lake Duminagat, Liboron Valley, several big rivers and beautiful sceneries, Dipterocarp forest, pine raiforest, mossy forest	Almaciga, catmon, bakon binuga, gubas etc. Lingatong, Pugahan, Anibong, Liverworts, Kaningag, Kapok, ferns, Philippine tarsier, Philippine flying lemur, Malindang deer, Philippine flying squirrel, Philippine deer, Philippine macaque, wild boar, Palm civet, tinggalong, giant flying fox, etc
N	Mt. Apo	11	Kidapawan, North Cotabato & Guianga & Sta. Cruz, Davao	Proc. 59 Proc.35	5/9/36 5/8/66	76900 72813.59	Volcanic mountain; rock formations; waterfalls; mountain lakes; medicinal hotsprins; home of the Philippine eagle, dipterocarp forest; highest peak in the Philipines	Flying lemur, Philippine monkey, wild pig, Philippine deer, Philippine eagle, Dipterocarps, 84 recorded species of birds

BIOGEO-GRAPHIC ZONE	NAME	REGION	LOCATION	ESTABLISHMENT		AREA (ha)	SPECIAL FEATURES	EXAMPLES OF FLORA AND FAUNA
				Legislation	Date			
N	Sacred Mountain	ARMM	Marawi City, Lano del Sur	R.A. 4190	5/5/65	94	Panoramic mountain; forest rich in interesting wildlife	Pigeons, hawks, snakes, lizards

APPENDIX 1B PROTECTED AREAS DECLARED THROUGH ADMINISTRATIVE AND MEMORANDUM ORDERS (DENR, 1997)

Biogeo-graphic Zone	Name	Category	Region	Location	Area (ha)	Date	Legislation
C	Minasawa Island	Game Refuge and Bird Sanctuary	4	Patnanongan, Quezon	4	9/15/64	P&W Adm. Order No. 7
G	El Nido	Marine Reserve	4	El Nido Palawan	95,000	1987	RED's Adm. Order No. 25
G	Sampunong Bolo	Game Refuge and Bird Sanctuary	6	Juaneza, Sara, Iloilo	52	1987	RED's Adm. Order No. 25
G	Lake Danao	Game Refuge and Bird Sanctuary	7	San Francisco, Pacijan Islands Camotes Group Cebu	480	12/24/65	Adm. Order 1
H	Imelda Lake (Lake Danao)	Tourist Resort	8	Ormoc City, Leyte	2,193	6/2/72	Memo to DENT from the Office of the President
I	Panagata	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	6	Antique		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8
K	Ursula Island	Game Refuge and Bird Sanctuary	4	Bataraza, Palawan	20	4/30/60	Adm. Order 14
K	Halog Island	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	4	Palawan		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8
K	Tanobon Island	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	4	Palawan		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8
K	Panata Cay	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	4	Palawan		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8
K	Kota Island	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	4	Palawan		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8
O	Bancauan Island	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	12	Tawi-Tawi		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8
O	Baguan Island	Marine Turtle Sanctuary	12	Tawi-Tawi		6/8/82	MNR Adm Order N0.8

Biogeo-graphic Zone	Name	Category	Region	Location	**Area** (ha)	Date	Legislation
O	Liguasan Marsh	Game Refuge and Bird Sanctuary	12	Liguasan, South Cotobato	30,000	12/1/26	FAO Adm. Order No. 19

APPENDIX 1C ISLANDS PROCLAIMED AS TOURIST ZONES AND MARINE RESERVES

Name	Municipality	Province	Region
Fortune Island		Batangas	4
Maricaban Island		Batangas	4
Gaban Island		Batangas	4
Sombrero Island		Batangas	4
Ligpo Island		Batangas	4
Malhibong Manok Island		Batangas	4
Verde Island		Batangas	4
Port Galera	Puerto Galera	Oriental Mindoro	4
Balatero Cove		Oriental Mindoro	4
Medio Island		Oriental Mindoro	4
Buyayao Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Aslom Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Bating Peninsula	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Maasim Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Balatasan Cove	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Pocanel Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Opao Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Buyallao Peninsula	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Suguicay Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Libago Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Sibalat Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Pambaron Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Apo Reef Island	Bulalakao	Oriental Mindoro	4
Busuanga Island		Palawan	4
Coron Island		Palawan	4
Puerto Princesa and surrounding areas		Palawan	4
Malampaya Sound and Islands		Palawan	4
Canaron Island		Palawan	4
Solitario Island		Palawan	4
Bacuit Bay Island		Palawan	4
Balabac Island		Palawan	4
Fort Bunton		Palawan	4
Boracay Island	Aklan	Aklan	6

Name	Municipality	Province	Region
Apo Island 3	Dumaguete	Negros Oriental	7
Siquijor Island	Dumaguete	Negros Oriental	7
Selinog Island	Dumaguete	Negros Oriental	7
Aligway Island	Dumaguete	Negros Oriental	7
Gaubian Island and vicinity	Sea of Mactan	Cebu	7
Olango Island	Pangan	Cebu	7
Buyong Beach	Maribago, Mactan	Cebu	7
Sogod	North of Cebu City	Cebu	7
Panglao Island	Tagbiliran	Bohol	7
Cabilao Island	Tagbiliran	Bohol	7
Balicasag Island	Tagbiliran	Bohol	7
Gigantangan Island	Northwest tip of Leyte	Leyte	8
Guiuan	Eastern Samar	Samar	8
Big and Small Sta. Cruz Island	Sta. Cruz	Zamboanga	9
Sangali Cove		Zamboanga	9
Sacol Island		Zamboanga	9
Ayala/San Ramon		Zamboanga	9
Malanipa Island		Zamboanga	9
Al-Sulnuan Point	West of Cagayan de Oro	Misamis Oriental	10
Camiguin Island	Cagayan de Oro City	Misamis Oriental	10
Maliputo-Talicud Island		Davao	11
Ligig Island		Davao	11
Easternside of Samal Island		Davao	11

APPENDIX 2A MANGROVE-ASSOCIATED FISHES IN PAGBILAO (PINTO, 1987)

Family	**Species**	**Residency**	**Food types**	**Trophic status**	**Life habits**
Clupeidae	*Sardinella fimbriata, S. melanura*	M	Zooplankton	C	SBp
Engraulidae	*Stolephorus bataviensis, S. indicus*	M	Copepods, other crustaceans, plant detritus		
Elopidae	*Elops machnata*	M	Crustaceans, fish	C	P
Megalopidae	*Megalops cyprinoides*	EM	Fish	C	P
Muraenidae	*Echidna polyzona, E. rhodochilus*	E	Molluscs, small fish, crustaceans	C	BBp
Muraenesocidae	*Muraenesox cinereus*	E	-do -	C	BBp
Ophiehthidae	*Pisodonophis boro*	E	- do -	C	BBp
Chanidae	*Chanos chanos*	E	Algae, invertebrates	H	SB
Plotosidae	*Plotosus unguillaris*	M	Crustaceans larvae, fish	C	Bp
Synodontidae	*Saurida undosquamis*	MS	Fish, crustanceans	C	
Hemiramphidae	*Hyporamphus neglectus, Zenarchopterus buffonis, Z. gilli*	E	Algae, small fish, crustaceans	O	S
Belonidae	*Strongylura strongylura, Tylosurus crocodilus crocodilu*	MS	Fish	C	SP
Atherinidae	*Atherinimorus endrachtensis*	M	Crustaceans, polychaetes	C	Bp
Centriscidae	*Aeoliscus strigatus*	MS	Plankton	O	Bp
Syngnathidae	*Syngnathoides biaculeatus*	MS	Zooplankton	C	B
Scorpaenidae	*Pterois volitans, Prosopodasys gogorzae*	MSE	Crustaceans, fish, detritus	C	B
Aploactinidae	*Paracentropogan longispinis*	MS	Algae, plant detritus	H	B
Synanceiidae	*Synanceua verrucosa*	MS	Fish	C	B
Platycephalidae	*Platycephalus indicus, P. isacanthus, Rodadius tentaculatus*	M	Fish, crustaceans	C	B

Family	Species	Residency	Food types	Trophic status	Life habits
Ambassidae	*Ambassis gymnocephalus, A. kopsi, A. miops*	E	Zooplankton, shrimp, plant detritus	C	Bp
Serranidae	*Epinephelus malabaricus, E. tauvina*	M	Fish, crustaceans	C	Bp
Theraponidae	*Helotes sexlineatus, Pelates quadrilineatus, Therapon jarbua*	ME	Crustaceans, fish, algae	C	Bp
Apogonidae	*Apogon hyalosama, A. lateralis, Pogonichthys ellioti, Fowleria aurita, Pseudamia gelatinosa*	M	Shrimp, fish, plant detritus	C	Bp
Sillaginidae	*Sillago maculata, S. sihama*	ME	Annelids, crustaceans	C	Bp
Carangidae	*Alectis ciliaris, Caranx sansun, C. sexfasciatus, Scomberoides tala, S. tol*	M	Shrimps	C	P
Leiognathidae	*Gazza minuta, Leiognathus brevirostris, L. elongates, L. equulus, L. blochii, L. splendens L. bindus, Secutor insidiator, S. ruconius*	M	Copepods, polychaetes, plant detritus	C	Bp
Lutjanidae	*Lutjanus russelli, L, argentimaculatus, L. biguttatus, L. johni, L. monostigma, L. kasimira*	M	Shrimp, fish	C	Bp
Gerreidae	*Gerres abbreviatus, G. filamentosus, G. macrosoma, G. oyena*	M	Invertebrates, plant detritus	C	B
Pomadasyidae	*Pomadasys hasta*	M	Polychaetes, crustaceans	C	Bp
Lethrinidae	*Lethrinus haematopterus*	MS	Fishes, crustaceans	C	Bp
Sparidae	*Sparus datnia*	E	Crustaceans	C	Bp
Mullidae	*Upeneus sulphureus, U. sundaicus, U. tragula, U. vittatus*	M	Crustaceans, annelids, molluscs		

Family	Species	Residency	Food types	Trophic status	Life habits
Scatophagidae	*Scatophagus argus*	E	Algae, plant detritus	H	Bp
Monodactylidae	*Monodactylus argenteus*	E	Fish, invertebrates	C	Bp
Platacidae	*Platax orbicularis*	MS	Invertebrates	C	Bp
Chaetodontidae	*Chaetodon octofasciatus*	MS	Invertebrates	C	Bp
Mugilidae	*Liza argentea, L. diadema, L. ramsayi, L. strongylocephalus, L. subviridis*	E	Diatoms, algae, detritus	H	SB
Sphyraenidae	*Sphyraena barracuda*	M	Fish	C	P
Labridae	*Halichoeres bicolor, H. hyrtil, H. nigriscens*	EMS	Crustaceans, molluscs, algae	H	B
Blenniidae	*Petroscirtes variabilis*	MS	Invertebrates, detritus	C	B
Gobiidae	*Butis butis, Microgobius stellatus, Creisson validus, Ctenogobius nebulosus, Gnatholepis calliurus, G. gemmeus, Ctenogobius puntagoides, C. criniger, Glossogobius biocellatus, G. celebius, Rhinogobius caninus, Oxyurichthys microlepsis, O. ophthalmonema Trypauchen vagina, Vaimosa bikolana*	RE	Amphipods, isopods nematodes, plant detritus	C	B
Acanthuridae	*Acanthurus dussumierri*	MS	Algae	H	Bp
Siganidae	*Siganus canaliculatus, S. guttatus, S. javus, S. vermiculatus, S. fuscescens*		Algae, diatoms	H	Bp
Callionymidae	*Callionymus marleyi*	M	Crustaceans, polychaetes	C	B
Cephalocanthidae	*Dactyloplena orientalis*	MS	Shrimps, crabs, fish	C	SB
Psettodidae	*Psettodes erumei*	M	Crustaceans	C	B

Family	Species	Residency	Food types	Trophic status	Life habits
Bothidae	*Pseudorhombus arsius, P. javanicus*	M	Crustaceans, fish	C	B
Soleidae	*Synaptura sorsogonensis*	M	Crustaceans, foraminiferans, detritus, diatoms	C	B
Tricanthidae	*Triacanthus brevirostris, T. biaculeatus*	M	Plant material	H	B
Monocanthidae	*Monocanthus chinensis*	MS	Invertebrates	C	Bp
Tetradontidae	*Chelonodon patoca, C. reticulates, Tetradon nigropunctatus, T. hepidus, T. immaculatus, Spheroides lunaris, Lagocephalus laevigatus*	MS	Barnacles, algae, molluscs	C	Bp
Antennariidae	*Antennarius hespidus*	MS	Crustaceans, fish	C	B
Pegasidae	*Parapegasus natans*	MS	Detritus	H	B

Residency
E - Predominantly estuarine with the main population thriving in the mangroves.
M - Predominantly marine, entering or with small populations in mangroves.
R - Predominantly riverine, entering or with small populations in the mangroves.
S - Stragglers (reported only once).

Trophic status
C - carnivore
H - herbivore
O - omnivore

Life habits
S - surface
P - pelagic
B - benthic
Bp - benthopelagic

APPENDIX 2B FAUNAL ASSESMBLAGE IN PHILIPPINE MANGROVE SWAMPS (RONQUILLO AND LLANA, 1979)

Common Name	**Local Name**	**Scientific Name**	**Family Name**
A. Invertebrates			
1. Penaeid shrimps or prawn	sugpo (T)	*Penaeus* sp. *Penaeus monodon*	
2. Crabs Mud crab Blue crab	alimango (T) alimasag (T)	*Scylla serrata* *Neptunus pelagicus* *Charybdis (Goniosoma) crucifera*	
3. Bivalves Oysters Mud clams Razor clams Large clams Small clams Mussels Heart shells	 libu-tik (W) tikhan (T) lukan, bebe or kabibi (T) tuway or kayog (V) tahong (T) butil or kanturi (T)	 *Crassostrea* sp. *Geloina similis* *Mytilus* sp.	 Solenidae Mytilidae Cardiidae
4. Univalves Horn shells Whelks or melongenas	 suso (T) bayongon (V) kalaunhung (T) kalang or alan-alan (V)		 Potamidae
B. Vertebrates (Fish)			
1. Common	milkfish or bangos (T)* mullets* banak (T)* gobies* eleotrids siganids or spine fishes* snappers tarpons worm eels snake eels plotosid catfishes luminous perches groupers	*Chanos chanos** *Mugil* sp. *Mugil cephalus**	Chanidae* Mugilidae Gobiiidae* Eleotridae Siganidae Lutiangidae Elopidae Moringuidae Ophichthyidae Plotosidae Leiognathidae Serranidae

Common Name	Local Name	Scientific Name	Family Name
2. Present bur not common	cardinal fishes jacks glass fishes rays anchovies halfbeaks moon fishes damsel fishes whitings barracudas puffers archer fishes		Apologonidae Carangidae Centropomidae Dasyatidae Engraulidae Hemirhamphidae Monodactylidae Pomacentridae Sillaginidae Sphyraenidae Tetraodontidae Toxotidae

*These are four commercially important species/families of fish cited by Ronquillo and Llana (1979). These also appeared in the study site of de la Paz and Aragons (1985). Although not numerically abundant, milkfish is common along with the mullets in the study site of de la Paz and Aragones (1985).

Legend: (T) Tagalog, (W) Waray, (V) Visayan

APPENDIX 3 OCCURRENCE OF PSP IN THE PHILIPPINES FROM 1983 TO 1996.

Year	Location of PSP
1983	Masqueda Bay, Sorsogon Bay, Balete Bay
1987	Coastal waters of Zambales (Subic to Sta. Cruz); Samar (Biliran and Canahauan); Carigara Bay, Masqueda Bay
1988-1989	Manila Bay: Bataan, Cavite, Bulacan, and Pampanga Western Samar, Zummaraga and Daran Islands San Pedro Bay; Carigara to Leyte Gulf Negros Occ and Capiz province
1991	Bamban Bay and Masinloc Bay in Zambales Maac, Guinsiliban, Camiguin Limay and Orion Bataan Mariveles and Abucay, Bataan Samal Bacoor Bay Manila Bay Cavite Paranaque Las Piñas Navotas
1992	Daram Island, Samar Magueda Bay, Samar Villareal Bay, Samar Pagsanghan, Samar Tagduyong Mariveles to Orani, Bataan Benoni Lagoon in Camiguin island Canacao Bay, Cavite Las Piñas Parañaque Navotas Bulacan Masinloc, Zambales Maragondon

Year	Location of PSP
	Manila Bay Bamban Bay
1993	Jiabong and Lamingao, Villareal Samar Daram, Western Samar Calbayog City and Tarangnan, Western Samar Carigara Bay Capoocan and Barugo Leyte Masinloc, Zambales Bamban and Oyon Bays, Zambales Masqueda Bay Bataan Samal to Mariveles Navotas
1994	Cancabato Bay, Tacloban City Masinloc, Zambales Bamban and San Salvador, Zambales Binoni Lagoon in Camiguin Island Northern Leyte Manila Bay (Bataan, Orion, Bulacan, Parañaque0 Bacoor, Cavite Dumanguillas Bay, Pagadian City Maqueda and Villareal Bays Catbalogan, Samar Carigara Bay, Leyte Binoni Lagoon, Camiguin Island
1995	Calbayog, Western Samar San Salvador and Masinloc Bay, Zambales Cancabato Bay, Tacloban City Juag Lagoon, Matnog, Sorsogon Tanguines Lagoon, Camiguin Province Sibuguey Bay, Zamboanga del Sur Blanters, Limay, Bataan Atlag,, Malolos, Bulacan Entire Manila Bay Asid Gulf, Milagros, Masbate Cancabato Bay, Tacloban City
1996	Masinloc, Zambales Juag Lagoon, Matnog, Sorsogon Asid Gulf, Milagros, Masbate

Year	Location of PSP
	Cancabato Bay, Tacloban City Tanguines Lagoon, Camiguin Province Manila Bay (Bataan, Navotas and Bulacan waters) Cancabato Bay, Tacloban City Calbayog, Western Samar Bataan Las Piñas Navotas Cavite Manila Bay Sibuguey Bay and Dumanguilas Bay, Zamboanga del Sur Calbayog waters, Calbayog City Banago and Victorias Waters, Bacolod City Pujada and Balite Bays in Mati, Davao Oriental Dumanguilas and Sibuguey Bays, Zamboanga del Sur

APPENDIX 4 CHECKLIST OF PHILIPPINE CHONDRICHTHYES

L.J.V. Compagno
Shark Research Center
South African Museum
Southern Flagship Institution
Cape Town, South Africa
lcompagno@samuseum.ac.za
http://www.museums.org.za/sam/src/sharks.htm

SRC Report 19951107
Revised 2000-02-22

PART 1. CHECKLIST OF PHILIPPINE CHONDRICHTHYES:

ORDER CHIMAERIFORMES. MODERN CHIMAERAS.

FAMILY CHIMAERIDAE. SHORTNOSE CHIMAERAS.
Chimaera phantasma Jordan & Snyder, 1900. Silver chimaera.
Hydrolagus deani (Smith & Radcliffe, 1912). Philippine chimaera.

LIVING SHARKS:

ORDER HEXANCHIFORMES. COW AND FRILLED SHARKS.

FAMILY HEXANCHIDAE. SIXGILL AND SEVENGILL SHARKS.
?*Hexanchus griseus* (Bonnaterre, 1788). Bluntnose sixgill shark.
Hexanchus nakamurai Teng, 1962. Bigeye sixgill shark.

ORDER SQUALIFORMES. DOGFISH SHARKS.

FAMILY SQUALIDAE. DOGFISH SHARKS.
Squalus cf. *mitsukurii* Jordan & Snyder, *in* Jordan & Fowler, 1903. Shortspine spurdog.
Squalus sp. Philippine longnose spurdog.

FAMILY CENTROPHORIDAE. GULPER SHARKS.
Centrophorus cf *isodon* (Chu, Meng, & Liu, 1981). Blackfin gulper shark.
Centrophorus moluccensis Bleeker, 1860. Smallfin gulper shark.
Centrophorus squamosus (Bonnaterre, 1788). Leafscale gulper shark.
Deania profundorum (Smith & Radcliffe, 1912). Arrowhead dogfish.

FAMILY ETMOPTERIDAE. LANTERN SHARKS.
Centroscyllium cf. *kamoharai* Abe, 1966. Bareskin dogfish.
Etmopterus brachyurus Smith & Radcliffe, 1912. Shorttail lanternshark.
?*Etmopterus lucifer* Jordan & Snyder, 1902. Blackbelly lanternshark.

FAMILY DALATIIDAE. KITEFIN SHARKS.
Isistius brasiliensis (Quoy & Gaimard, 1824). Cookiecutter or cigar shark.
Squaliolus aliae Teng, 1959. Smalleyed pygmy shark.
Squaliolus laticaudus Smith & Radcliffe, 1912. Spined pygmy shark.

ORDER PRISTIOPHORIFORMES. SAWSHARKS.

FAMILY PRISTIOPHORIDAE. SAWSHARKS.
Pristiophorus sp. Philippine sawshark.

ORDER SQUATINIFORMES. ANGEL SHARKS.

FAMILY SQUATINIDAE. ANGEL SHARKS.
Squatina formosa Shen & Ting, 1972. Taiwan angelshark.

ORDER ORECTOLOBIFORMES. CARPET SHARKS.

FAMILY PARASCYLLIIDAE. COLLARED CARPETSHARKS.
Cirrhoscyllium expolitum Smith & Radcliffe, 1913.

FAMILY ORECTOLOBIDAE. WOBBEGONGS.
Orectolobus japonicus Regan, 1906. Japanese wobbegong.

FAMILY HEMISCYLLIIDAE. LONGTAILED CARPETSHARKS.
?*Chiloscyllium griseum* Müller & Henle, 1838. Gray bambooshark.
?*Chiloscyllium indicum* (Gmelin, 1789). Slender bambooshark.
Chiloscyllium plagiosum (Bennett, 1830). Whitespotted bambooshark.
Chiloscyllium punctatum Müller & Henle, 1838. Brownbanded bambooshark.

FAMILY GINGLYMOSTOMATIDAE. NURSE SHARKS.
Nebrius ferrugineus (Lesson, 1830). Tawny nurse shark.

FAMILY STEGOSTOMATIDAE. ZEBRA SHARKS.
Stegostoma fasciatum (Hermann, 1783). Zebra shark.

FAMILY RHINCODONTIDAE. WHALE SHARKS.
Rhincodon typus Smith, 1828. Whale shark.

ORDER LAMNIFORMES. MACKEREL SHARKS.

FAMILY LAMNIDAE. MACKEREL SHARKS.
Carcharodon carcharias (Linnaeus, 1758). White shark.
?*Isurus oxyrinchus* Rafinesque, 1810. Shortfin mako.

ORDER CARCHARHINIFORMES. GROUND SHARKS.

FAMILY SCYLIORHINIDAE. CAT SHARKS.
Apristurus herklotsi (Fowler, 1934). Longfin catshark.
Atelomycterus marmoratus (Bennett, 1830). Coral catshark.
Galeus sauteri (Jordan & Richardson, 1909). Blacktip sawtail catshark.
Galeus schultzi Springer, 1979. Dwarf sawtail catshark.
Halaelurus buergeri (Müller & Henle, 1838). Blackspot catshark.
Halaelurus boesemani Springer & D'Aubrey, 1972. Speckeled catshark.
Pentanchus profundicolus Smith & Radcliffe, 1912. Onefin catshark.
Scyliorhinus garmani (Fowler, 1934). Brownspotted catshark.
Scyliorhinus torazame (Tanaka, 1908). Cloudy catshark.

FAMILY PROSCYLLIIDAE. FINBACK CATSHARKS.
Eridacnis radcliffei Smith, 1913. Pygmy ribbontail catshark.

FAMILY TRIAKIDAE. HOUNDSHARKS.
Hemitriakis leucoperiptera Herre, 1923. Whitefin topeshark.
Hemitriakis sp. [Compagno, 1988]. Ocellate topeshark.
Iago sp. nov. Compagno (1988).
Mustelus sp. near *griseus*
?*Triakis scyllium* Müller & Henle, 1838. (?= *Hemitriakis* sp.)

FAMILY HEMIGALEIDAE. WEASEL SHARKS.
?*Hemigaleus microstoma* Bleeker, 1852. Sicklefin weasel shark.
Hemipristis elongatus (Klunzinger, 1871). Snaggletooth shark.

FAMILY CARCHARHINIDAE. REQUIEM SHARKS.
Carcharhinus albimarginatus (Rüppell, 1837). Silvertip shark.
Carcharhinus amblyrhynchoides (Whitley, 1934). Graceful shark.
Carcharhinus amblyrhynchos (Bleeker, 1856). Gray reef shark.
Carcharhinus borneensis (Bleeker, 1859). Borneo shark.
Carcharhinus brevipinna (Müller & Henle, 1839). Spinner shark.
Carcharhinus dussumieri (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Whitecheek shark.
Carcharhinus falciformis (Bibron, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Silky shark.
Carcharhinus hemiodon (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Pondicherry shark.
Carcharhinus leucas (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Bull shark.
Carcharhinus limbatus (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Blacktip shark.
Carcharhinus longimanus (Poey, 1861). Oceanic whitetip shark.

Carcharhinus macloti (Müller & Henle, 1839). Hardnose shark.
Carcharhinus melanopterus (Quoy & Gaimard, 1824). Blacktip reef shark.
Carcharhinus sealei (Pietschmann, 1916). Blackspot shark.
Carcharhinus sorrah (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Spottail shark.
Galeocerdo cuvier (Peron & Lesueur, *in* Lesueur, 1822). Tiger shark.
Glyphis gangeticus (Müller & Henle, 1839). Ganges shark.
Loxodon macrorhinus Müller & Henle, 1839. Sliteye shark.
Negaprion acutidens (Rüppell, 1837). Sharptooth lemon shark.
?*Prionace glauca* (Linnaeus, 1758). Blue shark.
Rhizoprionodon acutus (Rüppell, 1837). Milk shark.
Triaenodon obesus (Rüppell, 1837). Whitetip reef shark.

FAMILY SPHYRNIDAE. HAMMERHEAD SHARKS.
Eusphyra blochii (Cuvier, 1817). Winghead shark.
Sphyrna lewini (Griffith & Smith, *in* Cuvier, Griffith & Smith, 1834). Scalloped hammerhead.
Sphyrna mokarran (Rüppell, 1837). Great hammerhead.
?*Sphyrna tiburo* (Linnaeus, 1758). Bonnethead shark.

LIVING BATOIDS (RAYS)

ORDER RAJIFORMES. BATOIDS.
SUBORDER PRISTOIDEI. SAWFISHES.

FAMILY PRISTIDAE. MODERN SAWFISHES.
Anoxypristis cuspidata (Latham, 1794). Knifetooth sawfish.
Pristis microdon Latham, 1794. Greattooth or freshwater sawfish.
?*Pristis pectinata* Latham, 1794. Smalltooth sawfish.

SUBORDER RHINOIDEI. SHARKRAYS.

FAMILY RHINIDAE. SHARKRAYS.
Rhina ancylostoma Bloch & Schneider, 1801. Bowmouth guitarfish or sharkray.

SUBORDER RHYNCHOBATOIDEI. WEDGEFISHES.

FAMILY RHYNCHOBATIDAE. WEDGEFISHES.
Rhynchobatus australiae Whitley, 1939. Whitespotted wedgefish.
Rhynchobatus sp.. [Compagno]. Broadnose wedgefish.

SUBORDER RHINOBATOIDEI. GUITARFISHES.

FAMILY RHINOBATIDAE. GUITARFISHES.
Rhinobatos formosensis Norman, 1926. Taiwan guitarfish.
Rhinobatos granulatus Cuvier, 1829. Sharpnose guitarfish.

?*Rhinobatos halavi* (Forsskael, 1775). Halavi guitarfish.
Rhinobatos schlegelii Müller & Henle, 1841. Brown guitarfish.
Rhinobatos typus Bennett, 1830. Giant shovelnose ray.

SUBORDER TORPEDINOIDEI. ELECTRIC RAYS.

FAMILY NARCINIDAE. NUMBFISHES.
Narcine timlei (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Blackspotted electric ray.

FAMILY NARKIDAE. SLEEPER RAYS.
Narke dipterygia (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Spottail sleeper ray.

FAMILY TORPEDINIDAE. TORPEDOS.
Torpedo (Torpedo) sp. Philippine torpedo.

SUBORDER RAJOIDEI. SKATES.

FAMILY ARHYNCHOBATIDAE. SOFTNOSE SKATES.
Pavoraja (Insentiraja) sp. B [Last & Stevens, 1994]. Western looseskin skate.

FAMILY RAJIDAE. SKATES.
Dipturus gigas (Ishiyama, 1958).
Dipturus tengu (Jordan & Fowler, 1903).
Dipturus sp. 1 near *D.* sp. I, Weng's skate (Australia) and *D. springeri* (Wallace, 1967) (South Africa).
Dipturus sp. 2.
Dipturus sp. [Seret] (Philippines)
Okamejei boesemani (Ishihara, 1987)
Okamejei hollandi (Jordan & Richardson, 1909)
Okamejei kenojei (Müller & Henle, 1841).

FAMILY ANACANTHOBATIDAE. LEGSKATES.
Anacanthobatis cf. *borneensis* Chan, 1965. Borneo legskate.

SUBORDER MYLIOBATOIDEI. STINGRAYS.

FAMILY PLESIOBATIDAE. GIANT STINGAREES.
Plesiobatis daviesi (Wallace, 1967). Giant stingaree.

FAMILY HEXATRYGONIDAE. SIXGILL STINGRAYS
Hexatrygon bickelli Heemstra & Smith, 1980.

FAMILY DASYATIDAE. WHIPTAIL STINGRAYS.
Dasyatis bennetti (Müller & Henle, 1841). Bennett's cowtail or frilltailed stingray.
Dasyatis kuhlii (Müller & Henle, 1841). Bluespotted maskray.

Dasyatis zugei (Müller & Henle, 1841). Pale-edged stingray.
Himantura bleekeri (Blyth, 1860). Whiptail stingray.
Himantura gerrardi (Gray, 1851). Sharpnose stingray, Bluntnose whiptail ray or whipray, banded whiptail ray.
?*Himantura imbricata* (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Scaly stingray or whipray.
Himantura uarnak (Forsskael, 1775). Honeycomb or leopard stingray or reticulate whipray.
Himantura undulata (Bleeker, 1852). Leopard whipray. [= *H. fava*].
Himantura walga (Müller & Henle, 1841). Dwarf whipray.
Pastinachus sephen (Forsskael, 1775). Feathertail or cowtail stingray.
Taeniura lymma (Forsskael, 1775). Ribbontailed stingray, Bluespotted ribbontail or fantail ray.
Taeniura meyeni Müller & Henle, 1841. Fantail stingray.
Urogymnus asperrimus (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Porcupine ray.
Dasyatidae sp. ?. Freshwater stingrays in Lake Naujan, Philippines, and at Moncayo on the upper Agusan River.

FAMILY GYMNURIDAE. BUTTERFLY RAYS.
Aetoplatea zonura Bleeker, 1852. Zonetail butterfly ray.
Gymnura cf. *micrura* (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Smooth butterfly ray.
Gymnura poecilura (Shaw, 1804). Longtail butterfly ray.

FAMILY MYLIOBATIDAE. EAGLE RAYS.
Aetobatus narinari (Euphrasen, 1790). Spotted eagle ray or bonnetray. [=*A. guttatus*?]
Aetomylaeus milvus (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1841). Ocellate eagle ray.
Aetomylaeus nichofii (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Banded eagle ray.

FAMILY RHINOPTERIDAE. COWNOSE RAYS.
Rhinoptera javanica Müller & Henle, 1841. Javanese cownose ray or flapnose ray.

FAMILY MOBULIDAE. DEVIL RAYS.
?*Manta birostris* (Donndorff, 1798). Manta.
Mobula eregoodootenkee (Bleeker, 1859). Longfin devilray.
Mobula sp. cf. *thurstoni*?

PART 2. ANNOTATED CHECKLIST OF PHILIPPINE CHONDRICHTHYES:

LIVING CHIMAEROIDS:

ORDER CHIMAERIFORMES. MODERN CHIMAERAS.

FAMILY CHIMAERIDAE. SHORTNOSE CHIMAERAS.

Chimaera phantasma Jordan & Snyder, 1900. Silver chimaera. In addition to USNM specimens listed by Fowler (1941) and Herre (1953) from Philippines (Matoco Pt, Batangas Prov., Luzon; Point Tagolo Light, Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; off Jolo Light, Jolo, Sulu Prov.), material taken by MUSOSTROM and by TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1.

Hydrolagus deani (Smith & Radcliffe, 1912). Philippine chimaera. Smith & Radcliffe (1912), Fowler (1941), Herre (1953): In addition to USNM holotype from off Sombrero Island, west coast of Luzon, 469 m., material taken by MUSOSTROM and by TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 off East Coast of Luzon.

LIVING SHARKS:

ORDER HEXANCHIFORMES. COW AND FRILLED SHARKS.

FAMILY HEXANCHIDAE. SIXGILL AND SEVENGILL SHARKS.

Hexanchus griseus (Bonnaterre, 1788). Bluntnose sixgill shark. Herre (1953), nominal on specimens from Dumaguete and Manila Bay in Silliman U. collections, possibly based in part on the following species.

Hexanchus nakamurai Teng, 1962. Bigeye sixgill shark. SU specimens from Herre, Dumaguete?

ORDER SQUALIFORMES. DOGFISH SHARKS.

FAMILY SQUALIDAE. DOGFISH SHARKS.

Squalus cf *mitsukurii* Jordan & Snyder, *in* Jordan & Fowler, 1903. Shortspine spurdog. This may include more than one species in Philippine waters. Holotype of *S. philippinus* = *S. montalbani* is one, specimen from TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 may be another (or identical). Neither may be the real *S. mitsukurii*. Herre (1953) as *S. fernandinus*, extensive listing of non-Philippine references, notes from Dumaguete market and Fowler's (1941) record of the type of *S. philippinus*.

Squalus sp. Philippine longnose spurdog. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimens and series from Bolinao market collections. Definitely not the same species as *S. rancureli* Fourmanoir, 1978 from New Caledonia but resembling it.

FAMILY CENTROPHORIDAE. GULPER SHARKS.

Centrophorus isodon (Chu, Meng, & Liu, 1981). Blackfin gulper shark. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen.

Centrophorus moluccensis Bleeker, 1860. Smallfin gulper shark. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen.

Centrophorus squamosus (Bonnaterre, 1788). Leafscale gulper shark. Smith & Radcliffe (1912) on specimen in USNM collection, probably collected by *Albatross* (no station) between Leyte and Mindanao, Philippines, at depth of 1757 m. Herre (1953) as *Lepidorhinus folicaceus*: Japan (Enoshima or Inosima), also Smith & Radcliffe's record.

Deania profundorum (Smith & Radcliffe, 1912). Arrowhead dogfish. Smith & Radcliffe (1912). Holotype and other USNM material from Philippines (several localities). Herre (1953): Smith & Radcliffe's records.

FAMILY ETMOPTERIDAE. LANTERN SHARKS.

Centroscyllium cf. *kamoharai* Abe, 1966. Bareskin dogfish. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimens.

Etmopterus brachyurus Smith & Radcliffe, 1912. Shorttail lanternshark. Smith (1912): Holotype and other USNM material.

Etmopterus lucifer Jordan & Snyder, 1902. Blackbelly lanternshark. Smith (1912): Nominally from Philippine Islands, from *Albatross* dredging stations from 14 stations in 9 localities (not listed), from Mindanao Sea off N coast Mindinao; between Negros and Siquijor; from Balayan Bay, Luzon; Verde Island Passage between Luzon and Mindoro; off east coast of Mindoro; near Malavatuan Island, between Lubang and Luzon; off W. coast of Jolo Island; and between Jolo and Tawi-Tawi. Depth range is 311-582 m. Some of these are apparently *E. brachyurus*. Yamakawa, Taniuchi and Nose (1986) did not see Philippine specimens of this shark.

FAMILY DALATIIDAE. KITEFIN SHARKS.

Isistius brasiliensis (Quoy & Gaimard, 1824). Cookiecutter or cigar shark. Jahn & Haedrich (1987) specimens from near Philippines.

Squaliolus aliae Teng, 1959. Smalleyed pygmy shark. One of USNM types from Philippines. Sasaki & Uyeno (1987).

Squaliolus laticaudus Smith & Radcliffe, 1912. Spined pygmy shark. Smith & Radcliffe (1912). Holotype and other USNM material. Herre (1953): Batangas Bay, Batangas Prov., Luzon, 311 m.

ORDER PRISTIOPHORIFORMES. SAWSHARKS.

FAMILY PRISTIOPHORIDAE. SAWSHARKS.

Pristiophorus sp. Philippine sawshark. Specimens in CAS collection. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953) on Fowler's (1941) specimen from Apo Island, off Zamboanguita, Oriental Negros Prov., Negros. Fowler (1941): USNM 10170 (now USNM-151231 according to Springer & Bullis, 1960), Albatross D. 5536, from Apo Island, 9°15.75'N, 123°22.00'E, between Negros and Siquijor.

ORDER SQUATINIFORMES. ANGEL SHARKS.

FAMILY SQUATINIDAE. ANGEL SHARKS.

Squatina formosa. Taiwan angelshark. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen.

ORDER ORECTOLOBIFORMES. CARPET SHARKS.

FAMILY PARASCYLLIIDAE. COLLARED CARPETSHARKS.

Cirrhoscyllium expolitum Smith & Radcliffe, 1913. Barbelthroat carpetshark. Holotype from n. of Luzon, NW of the Batanes Islands.

FAMILY ORECTOLOBIDAE. WOBBEGONGS.

Orectolobus japonicus Regan, 1906. Japanese wobbegong. Herre (1953) noted Martin's (1938) record with illustration from off Siquijor Island.

FAMILY HEMISCYLLIIDAE. LONGTAILED CARPETSHARKS.

Chiloscyllium griseum Müller & Henle, 1838. Gray bambooshark. Nominal records from the Philippines, not listed by Dingerkus & DeFino (1983), possible confusion with either *C. punctatum* or *C. hasselti*, status uncertain. Listed by Herre (1953) from Sim Sim Laut Island, Sulu Sea, near entrance to Sandakan Bay.

Chiloscyllium indicum (Gmelin, 1789). Slender bambooshark. Nominal records from the Philippines, not listed by Dingerkus & DeFino (1983), status uncertain. Listed by Herre (1953) but without original records.

Chiloscyllium plagiosum (Bennett, 1830). Whitespotted bambooshark. Specimen in MSI, University of Philippines, from Cebu. Listed by Herre (1953) with records from Manila Bay; Calapan, Mindoro.

Chiloscyllium punctatum Müller & Henle, 1838. Brownbanded bambooshark. Specimen in MSI, University of Philippines, from Cebu. Listed by Herre (1953) with records from Dumaguete, Oriental Negros; and Cebu.

FAMILY GINGLYMOSTOMATIDAE. NURSE SHARKS.

Nebrius ferrugineus (Lesson, 1830). Tawny nurse shark. Specimen from Manila at SAM.

FAMILY STEGOSTOMATIDAE. ZEBRA SHARKS.

Stegostoma fasciatum (Hermann, 1783). Zebra shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953) had records from Manila Bay; a river at San Jose del Monte, Bulacan Prov; coast of Batangas Prov., Luzon; and Dumaguete.

FAMILY RHINCODONTIDAE. WHALE SHARKS.

Rhincodon typus Smith, 1828. Whale shark. Compagno (1984), also numerous records by Uchida (1984), Herre (1934, 1953). Caught in fish traps.

ORDER LAMNIFORMES. MACKEREL SHARKS.

FAMILY LAMNIDAE. MACKEREL SHARKS.

Carcharodon carcharias (Linnaeus, 1758). Great white shark. Compagno (1984) on Herre (1925); Herre (1953), Camiguin Strait, off Misamis Oriental Prov., Mindanao; Malampaya Sound, Palawan.

Isurus oxyrinchus Rafinesque, 1810. Shortfin mako. Compagno (1984), general range, no specific locality.

ORDER CARCHARHINIFORMES. GROUND SHARKS.

FAMILY SCYLIORHINIDAE. CAT SHARKS.

Apristurus herklotsi (Fowler, 1934). Longfin catshark. USNM holotype from near Cayagan Sulu Island (Herre, 1953).

Atelomycterus marmoratus (Bennett, 1830). Coral catshark. SU and LACM specimens, specimen from Bolinao fish market, 1995. Herre (1953) gives records from Dicuayan Island, Busuanga; Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov.; Linapacan Is., Palawan; Siasi, Sitankai, and Jolo, Sulu Prov.

Galeus sauteri (Jordan & Richardson, 1909). Blacktip sawtail catshark. CAS specimens.

Galeus schultzi Springer, 1979. Dwarf sawtail catshark. USNM types. CAS specimens. Specimen in MSI, U. of Philippines from MUSOSTROM survey.

Halaelurus buergeri (Müller & Henle, 1838). Blackspot catshark. Herre (1953), record from China Sea between Hainan and Luzon.

Halaelurus boesemani Springer & D'Aubrey, 1972. Speckeled catshark. Compagno (1988).

Pentanchus profundicolus Smith & Radcliffe, 1912. Onefin catshark. USNM holotype. Smith & Radcliffe (1912).

Scyliorhinus garmani (Fowler, 1934). Brownspotted catshark. Type from 'East Indies'. Herre (1953) reported on three additional specimens from Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov, 340-380 mm. TL, in Silliman University collection.

Scyliorhinus torazame (Tanaka, 1908). Cloudy catshark. Herre (1953) reported on two specimens from Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov, 225 and 330 mm. TL, in Silliman University collection.

FAMILY PROSCYLLIIDAE. FINBACK CATSHARKS.

Eridacnis radcliffei Smith, 1913. Pygmy ribbontail catshark. Smith (1913). USNM holotype and other specimens.

FAMILY TRIAKIDAE. HOUNDSHARKS.

Hemitriakis leucoperiptera Herre, 1923. Whitefin topeshark. Herre (1923) and SU specimens. Herre (1953): Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov., Negros; also sites Umali's record from Bagac Bay, Bataan Prov, caught off motorship *Theodore N. Gill* in October 1947, this was an immature female, 522 mm long, caught in 26 fa. (48 m). Compagno (1988). Philippine endemic.

Hemitriakis sp. [Compagno, 1988]. Ocellate topeshark. SU specimens labelled *T. scyllium* by Herre.

Iago sp. nov. Compagno (1988). CAS specimens and specimens from TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1.

Mustelus sp. near *griseus*. Navotas Market, in SAM.

?*Triakis scyllium* Müller & Henle, 1838. Herre (1953): Refers to 1933-34 collection from Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov., Negros, may refer in whole or part to *Hemitriakis* sp.

FAMILY HEMIGALEIDAE. WEASEL SHARKS.

?*Hemigaleus microstoma* Bleeker, 1852. Sicklefin weasel shark. ?Herre (1953): Type of *Hemigaleus machlani* from Jolo, Sulu Prov., see also Compagno (1988).

Hemipristis elongatus (Klunzinger, 1871). Snaggletooth shark. Compagno (1984), Philippines record via V. Springer or Garrick & Schultz (1963).

FAMILY CARCHARHINIDAE. REQUIEM SHARKS.

Carcharhinus albimarginatus (Rüppell, 1837). Silvertip shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953), mentions record by Umali, motorship *Theodore N. Gill* May 1948, Sulu Sea, Sulu Prov., specimen not mentioned.

Carcharhinus amblyrhynchoides (Whitley, 1934). Graceful shark. Compagno (1988), USNM specimen. Fowler (1941) pictures a specimen from Manila mkt. as *C. pleurotaenia*, this 520 mm, *Albatross* sta. 6762, in USNM. Herre (1953) as *C. pleurotaenia* may refer to this species, after Fowler (1941). He had two specimens collected by motorship *Spencer F. Baird*, from Gulf of Lingayen, Pangasinan Prov., Luzon.

Carcharhinus amblyrhynchos (Bleeker, 1856). Gray reef shark. Compagno (1984).

Carcharhinus borneensis (Bleeker, 1859). Borneo shark. Compagno (1984), questionable records.

Carcharhinus brevipinna (Müller & Henle, 1839). Spinner shark. Compagno (1984), possibly from area. Herre (1953) from 990 mm. specimen taken by motorship *Spencer F. Baird*, Oct. 1947, in Turung Bay, Malampaya Sound, Palawan.

Carcharhinus dussumieri (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Whitecheek shark. Nominal. Herre (1953), lists various large (ca. 3 m) specimens under this name from Manila Bay, Sulu Sea, which are certainly not this species; also records from Dumaguete, Cebu Mkt. and other parts which may include *C. sealei*. Herre (1953) records of *C. menisorrah* may refer to this species as well as *C. sealei*, from Cebu and Manila Bay.

Carcharhinus falciformis (Bibron, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Silky shark. Manila specimen in MSI. Herre (1953): SU holotype of *Aprionodon sitankaiensis*, from Sitankai, Sibutu Is., Sulu Arch.

Carcharhinus hemiodon (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Pondicherry shark. Nominal from Philippines. Compagno (1988). Herre (1953)

Carcharhinus leucas (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Bull shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953) may be mostly referring to this species as *C. gangeticus*: "Enters rivers and is a permanent resident in some Philippine lakes". He gives records from Manila Bay; Cebu; Agusan River at Monkayo, and Saug River, Davao Prov., Mindanao; Parang, Jolo Island and Sitankai, Sulu Prov.; Lake Naujan, Mindoro.

Carcharhinus limbatus (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Blacktip shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953) mentions a specimen caught by Kaufmann off motorship *Theodore N. Gill* in April 1948 off reef near Pilas Island, off Basilan, Sulu Sea.

Carcharhinus longimanus (Poey, 1861). Oceanic whitetip shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953) as *Carcharias commersoni* in part by ref. to *C. lamia* of Müller & Henle, 1839; records from Manila Bay; Sibuyan Island; and Sitankai, Sulu Prov. may not be this species.

Carcharhinus macloti (Müller & Henle, 1839). Hardnose shark. Nominally from Philippines. Compagno (1988).

Carcharhinus melanopterus (Quoy & Gaimard, 1824). Blacktip reef shark. Compagno (1988). SU specimens. Herre (1953); Manila Bay; Cabalian, Leyte: Cebu mkt; Zamboanga mkt., Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; Jolo, Siasi, and Sitankai, Sulu Prov.

Carcharhinus sealei (Pietschmann, 1916). Blackspot shark. Manila specimens in MRI or CSIRO. Compagno (1988), SU specimen. Herre (1953) records of *C. menisorrah* may refer to this species as well as *C. dussumieri*, from Cebu and Manila Bay.

Carcharhinus sorrah (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1839). Spottail shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953): cites Fowler's 1941 records from San Roque mkt., Cavite Prov., Luzon, no additional material. Herre also cites Umali's record from motorship *Theodore N. Gill* in Sulu Sea, SW of Jolo, Sulu Prov. as *C. spallanzani* could refer to this species, to *C. melanopterus*, or to *C. amblyrhynchos*.

Galeocerdo cuvier (Peron & Lesueur, *in* Lesueur, 1822). Tiger shark. Compagno (1984) on Kaufmann (1950). Herre (1953): Malampaya Sound, Palawan (227 kg spec. caught by Alvin Seale); between Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov. and Siquijor Is. (4 m female with 25 fetuses, one in Silliman U. collection); Sulu Sea on reefs near Pilas Island, west of Basilan Island (abundant, a 490 kg specimen had 53 fetuses, caught by Kaufmann on motorship *Theodore N. Gill* in April 1948.

Glyphis gangeticus (Müller & Henle, 1839). Ganges shark. Compagno (1984, 1988). Nominal from the area but cannot be confirmed; possibly *C. leucas* in whole or part? Herre (1953): "Enters rivers and is a permanent resident in some Philippine lakes". He gives records from Manila Bay; Cebu; Agusan River at Monkayo, and Saug River, Davao Prov., Mindanao; Parang, Jolo Island and Sitankai, Sulu Prov.; Lake Naujan, Mindoro.

Loxodon macrorhinus Müller & Henle, 1839. Sliteye shark. Compagno (1988), SU specimens. Herre (1953) as *Scoliodon dumerili*, Manila Bay, Luzon; Dumaguete, Oriental Negros Prov., also caught in Malampaya Sound, Palawan in October 1947 by the motorship *Spencer F. Baird*.

Negaprion acutidens (Rüppell, 1837). Sharptooth lemon shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953) from 790 mm. specimen taken by motorship *Spencer F. Baird*, Oct. 1947, in Turung Bay, Malampaya Sound, Palawan.

Prionace glauca (Linnaeus, 1758). Blue shark. Compagno (1984) general range, no specimens.

Rhizoprionodon acutus (Rüppell, 1837). Milk shark. Compagno (1988), SU specimens. Herre (1953) as *Scoliodon palasorrah*, presumably this species rather than *Scoliodon laticaudus*: Cavite, Cavite Prov., Luzon; Dumaguete; common in Manila and Cebu mkts.; Tacloban, Leyte; Iloilo mkt, Iloilo Prov., Panay; Dapitan, Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; Jolo mkt., Sulu Prov.; also cites Fowler's (1941) records from Limbones Cove, Cavite Prov., and Langao Point, Sorsogon Prov., Luzon, and Umali's record from San Miguel Bay, Luzon. As *S. intermedius*, collected by motorship *Spencer F. Baird*, Oct. 1947, in Malampaya Sound, Turung Bay, Palawan. As *S. walbeehmi*: Common in Philippine markets; Orion, Bataan Prov, Luzon; Manila; Dumaguete. It is uncertain if Herre is referring to this species or to *R. oligolinx* Springer, 1964 (which is not presently known from Philippines) in his records of *intermedius* and *walbeehmi*.

Triaenodon obesus (Rüppell, 1837). Whitetip reef shark. Compagno (1988) on Randall (1977). Herre (1953): Specimens collected from Manila Bay and Sitankai, Sulu Prov.

FAMILY SPHYRNIDAE. HAMMERHEAD SHARKS.

Eusphyra blochii (Cuvier, 1817). Winghead shark. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953): "Common in markets of the Sulu Islands. Specimens collected from Sitankai, Sulu Prov.

Sphyrna lewini (Griffith & Smith, *in* Cuvier, Griffith & Smith, 1834). Scalloped hammerhead. Compagno (1984). Herre (1953, also 1930): Records of *Sphyrna zygaena* (Linnaeus, 1758) from Philippines may be this species because of head shape. Recorded from various collections from Taytay, Palawan (U. of Philippines collection, 12' specimen); straits of Balabac (A. Seale, up to 15'); Zamboanga mkt., Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; Sitankai, Sulu Prov.; museums of Santo Tomas U. and the Ateneo de Manila; also cites records from Dumaguete; from San Miguel Bay, Luzon; from Cagayan Prov., Luzon; from Iloilo mkt., Iloilo Prov., Panay; and from Jolo Mkt., Sulu Prov..

Sphyrna mokarran (Rüppell, 1837). Great hammerhead. Herre (1953, also 1930): Recorded as *S. tudes* from Manila Bay; Cebu, Cebu Prov.; Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; probably this species from description of head in Herre (1930); only young seen.

Sphyrna tiburo (Linnaeus, 1758). Bonnethead shark. Herre (1953): Recorded from 1936-1937 collections from Zamboanga mkt., Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao. Apparently not in SU collections. One of two records of this species from the eastern Hemisphere, the other being Fowler (1930) from China; there may be a problem on this identification.

LIVING BATOIDS (RAYS)

ORDER RAJIFORMES. BATOIDS.
SUBORDER PRISTOIDEI. SAWFISHES.

FAMILY PRISTIDAE. MODERN SAWFISHES.

Anoxypristis cuspidata (Latham, 1794). Knifetooth, pointed, or narrow sawfish. Herre (1953) recorded 5490 mm. specimen with saw at Cebu, Cebu Prov., Philippines, apparently not lodged in Stanford Collection.

Pristis microdon Latham, 1794. Greattooth or freshwater sawfish. SU specimens. Fowler (1941) had this from Lake Naujan, Mindoro; Laguna de Bay, Luzon. Herre (1953) noted this to be common in the Philippines. Philippines records include fresh water catches in Lake Naujan, Mindoro; Luzon (Laguna de Bay, Laguna Prov; Bikol River, Camarines Sur Prov.); Mindanao (Rio Grande and Liguasan Swamp, Cotabato Prov., and Agusan R. at Moncayo, Davao Prov.).

Pristis pectinata Latham, 1794. Fowler (1941) listed this from Luzon, Manila Bay, Laguna de Bay. Possibly based on *P. zijsron* in part? Fowler had no Philippine records of the latter species. Herre (1953) had no records of either species.

SUBORDER RHINOIDEI. SHARKRAYS.

FAMILY RHINIDAE. SHARKRAYS.

Rhina ancylostoma Bloch & Schneider, 1801. Bowmouth guitarfish or sharkray. Fowler (1941) listed this from Luzon, Cavite, Santa Cruz. Herre (1953) listed it from *Theodore N. Gill* sta. SW of entrance to Manila Bay at 64 m.

SUBORDER RHYNCHOBATOIDEI. WEDGEFISHES.

FAMILY RHYNCHOBATIDAE. WEDGEFISHES.

Rhynchobatus australiae Whitley, 1939. Whitespotted wedgefish. Specimens in SU collection, one also bagged by Ron Frische for HSU collection.

Rhynchobatus sp.. [Compagno]. Broadnose wedgefish. SU collection.

Herre (1953) listed Philippine records of *R. "djiddensis"* which probably includes both species: SW Samar; Manila Bay, Cayagan Prov, Lingayen Gulf, Pangasinan Prov., Aloneros, Ragay Gulf, Tayabas Prov., in Luzon; Culion; Iloilo, Iloilo Prov., Panay; Cebu mkt.; Tacloban mkt, Leyte; Dapitan and Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; Jolo, Siasi, Bongao, and Sitankai, Sulu. Prov.

SUBORDER RHINOBATOIDEI. GUITARFISHES.

FAMILY RHINOBATIDAE. GUITARFISHES.

Rhinobatos formosensis Norman, 1926. Taiwan guitarfish. Herre (1953), from *Theodore N. Gill* station in China Sea off mouth of Manila Bay, 9.5 mi. S. of Bataan Pen., Luzon, in 119 m.

Rhinobatos granulatus Cuvier, 1829. Sharpnose guitarfish. Herre (1953) had this from Philippines (Cebu mkt, Cebu; mouth of Malampaya R. and vicinity, Malampaya Sound, w. coast of Palawan). Herre has a record from *Theodore N. Gill* station in China Sea off Bataan Pen., Luzon, Philippines in 119 m. At least one set of specimens in SU collection?

Rhinobatos halavi (Forsskael, 1775). Halavi guitarfish. Fowler (1941) listing of nominal records; Randall & Compagno (in press, 1995) note that records beyond known range from Red Sea to Gulf of Oman needs confirmation.

Rhinobatos schlegelii Müller & Henle, 1841. Brown guitarfish. Fowler (1941), Manila and Navotas.

Rhinobatos typus Bennett, 1830. Giant shovelnose ray. Herre (1953) had this from Sitankai, Sulu Prov, Philippines.

SUBORDER TORPEDINOIDEI. ELECTRIC RAYS.

FAMILY NARCINIDAE. NUMBFISH.

Narcine timlei (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Blackspotted electric ray. Herre (1953) had this from Gulf of Lingayen; Manila Bay; Mangarin, Mindoro; Malampaya Sound, Palawan; Sulu Sea. CHECK also specimens.

FAMILY NARKIDAE. SLEEPER RAYS.

Narke dipterygia (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Spottail sleeper ray. Possibly Philippines from specimens? CHECK.

FAMILY TORPEDINIDAE. TORPEDO.

Torpedo (Torpedo) sp. Philippine torpedo. Fowler (1941), USNM specimen referred to *T.(T.) marmorata*, San Andreas (San Andres?) Is. off w. side of Marinduque Is, Philippines in 92 m depth. Herre (1953) repeats this record.

SUBORDER RAJOIDEI. SKATES.

FAMILY ARHYNCHOBATIDAE. SOFTNOSE SKATES.

Pavoraja (Insentiraja) sp. B [Last & Stevens, 1994]. Western looseskin skate. This or closely similar species from TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen.

FAMILY RAJIDAE. SKATES.

Dipturus gigas (Ishiyama, 1958). Ishihara (1987): Specimens from off Hermanos Is., 18°32'30"N, 122°01'E, Philippines.

Dipturus tengu (Jordan & Fowler, 1903). Ishihara (1987): Specimens from Boguato I., Philippines, 12°51'40"N, 123°26'15"E.

Dipturus sp. 1 near *D.* sp. I, Weng's skate (Australia) and *D. springeri* (Wallace, 1967) (South Africa). TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen.

Dipturus sp. 2. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen.

Dipturus sp. [Seret] (Philippines)

Okamejei boesemani (Ishihara, 1987) CHECK FOR PHILIPPINE RECS.****

Okamejei hollandi (Jordan & Richardson, 1909) CHECK ISHIHARA, 1987 for Philippine RECS.****

Okamejei kenojei (Müller & Henle, 1841). Ishihara (1987), possibly Philippines. CHECK ISHIHARA, 1987 for Philippine RECS.****Herre (1953), as *R. fusca*: Fowler's (1941) record from off Bagatao Island, Sorsogon Prov., Luzon. As *R. kenojei*: Fowler's (1941) record from off Bagatao Island, Sorsogon Prov., Luzon.

FAMILY ANACANTHOBATIDAE. LEGSKATES.

Anacanthobatis cf. *borneensis* Chan, 1965. Borneo legskate. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimen, off east coast of Luzon.

SUBORDER MYLIOBATOIDEI. STINGRAYS.

FAMILY PLESIOBATIDAE. GIANT STINGAREES.

Plesiobatis daviesi (Wallace, 1967). Deepwater stingray or giant stingaree. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimens, off east coast of Luzon.

FAMILY HEXATRYGONIDAE. SIXGILL STINGRAYS

Hexatrygon bickelli Heemstra & Smith, 1980. TFRI Fisheries Researcher 1 specimens, off east coast of Luzon.

FAMILY DASYATIDAE. WHIPTAIL STINGRAYS.

Dasyatis bennetti (Müller & Henle, 1841). Bennett's cowtail or frilltailed stingray. Fowler (1941), from Manila.

Dasyatis kuhlii (Müller & Henle, 1841). Bluespotted maskray. Specimens from Manila markets and Bolinao. Fowler (1941) gives records from Dumaguete, Manila, Capiz, Cebu, Sitankai. Herre (1953): Records from Manila; Cebu mkt, Cebu; Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; Gulf of Lingayen; Divisoria and Quiapo mkts, Manila; Cavite mkt; Batangas mkt, Batangas Prov., San Miguel Bay, Luzon; Siquijor Is.; Butuan Bay, Agusan Prov., Panguil Bay, Lanao Prov, Mindanao; Estancia, Iloilo Prov., panay; Dumaguete, Oriental Negros; Capiz, Capiz Prov; Sitankai, Sulu Prov.; SW. Samar. Specimens in Philippine Bureau of Science, Ateneo de Manila Museum, and University of Santo Tomas Museum.

Dasyatis zugei (Müller & Henle, 1841). Pale-edged stingray. Herre (1953): Gulf of Lingayen and Balayan Bay, Batangas Prov., Luzon; Malampaya Sound, Palawan; South Ubian and Sitankai, Sulu. Prov. Specimens in Philippine Bureau of Science and Ateneo de Manila Museum.

Himantura bleekeri (Blyth, 1860). Whiptail stingray. Herre (1953) lists this from Malampaya Sound, Palawan, collected by *Spencer F. Baird*, Oct. 1947.

Himantura gerrardi (Gray, 1851). Sharpnose stingray, Bluntnose whiptail ray or whipray, banded whiptail ray. Fowler (1941) gave records from Luzon, Cavite, Santa Cruz.

Himantura imbricata (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Scaly stingray or whipray. Herre (1953): Nominal record from Manila Bay, *Theodore N. Gill* station in 57 m.

Himantura uarnak (Forsskael, 1775). Honeycomb or leopard stingray or reticulate whipray. Spotted form from Manila Mkts. Herre (1953): Records from S.W. Samar; Manila Bay; Zamboanga, Mindanao; Sorsogon mkt, Sorsogon Prov.; Port San Vicente, Cagayan Prov.; Abuyog, Leyte; mouth of malayampaya R., Malampaya Sound, Palawan; Gulf of Lingayen; Cavite, Cavite Prov., Batangas Bay, Luzon; Cebu, Cebu Prov.; Cotabato Prov. and Lianga Bay, Surigao Prov., Mindanao; Siquijor Is.; Basey, Samar; Jolo and Sitankai, Sulu Prov. Specimens in Philippine Bureau of Science, Ateneo de Manila Museum, and University of Santo Tomas Museum.

Himantura undulata (Bleeker, 1852). Leopard whipray. [= *H. fava*]. Manila markets?

Himantura walga (Müller & Henle, 1841). Dwarf whipray. Herre (1953): Nominal record from an old specimen in Ateneo de Manila Museum, stuffed, from Manila Bay, Luzon.

Pastinachus sephen (Forsskael, 1775). Feathertail or cowtail stingray. Fowler (1941) gives records from Orion, Bolalo Bay, Catbalogan, Sorsogon market, Luzon. Herre (1953): Numerous records from Manila Bay; Puerto Princesa, Palawan; Mangarin, Mindoro; Catbalogan, Samar; Surigao, Surigao Prov.; Dapitan and Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov, Mindanao; Jolo and Sitankai, Sulu. Prov., also Fowler's (1941) records and Herre and Kaufmann record from Guimaras, between Guimaras Island and Negros, in 22 m, motorship *Theodore N. Gill*.

Taeniura lymma (Forsskael, 1775). Ribbontailed stingray, Bluespotted ribbontail or fantail ray. Manila markets. Fowler (1941) gives records from Sitanki, Jolo, Cebu, Tampotana Is, Ulugan Bay, Palawan. Herre (1953): Cebu, Cebu Prov.; Dapitan and Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov.; Tubigan Is., Siasi mkt., Tandubas Is., Sibutu, and Sitankai Is., Sulu Prov.; Balabac. Specimens in Philippine Bureau of Science and Ateneo de Manila Museum.

Taeniura meyeni Müller & Henle, 1841. Fantail stingray. Last & Stevens (1994) indicate Philippines on map of range.

Urogymnus asperrimus (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Porcupine ray. Last & Stevens (1994) suggest possibly Philippines on map of range. Herre (1953): Manila mkt.; Cavite mkt, Cavite Prov., and Manila Bay, Luzon; Malampaya Sound and Brooke's Point, Palawan; Balabac Is.; Bantayan Is.; Dapitan, Zamboanga Prov., Mindanao; Jolo, Pearl Bank, Cagayan Sulu Is. and Sitankai, Sulu Prov.

Dasyatidae sp. ?. Freshwater stingrays in Lake Naujan, Philippines, and at Moncayo on the upper Agusan River, thought by Herre (1958) to be either *Dasyatis kuhlii* or *Himantura uarnak* but not necessarily either of these species.

FAMILY GYMNURIDAE. BUTTERFLY RAYS.

Aetoplatea zonura Bleeker, 1852. Zonetail butterfly ray. Manila markets.

Gymnura cf. *micrura* (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Smooth butterfly ray. Nominal for area. Fowler (1941) lists this from Manila.

Gymnura poecilura (Shaw, 1804). Longtail butterfly ray. Nominal for area. Herre (1953) lists this from Capiz, Capiz Prov., Panay.

FAMILY MYLIOBATIDAE. EAGLE RAYS.

Aetobatus narinari (Euphrasen, 1790). Spotted eagle ray or bonnetray. Nominal (Fowler, 1941, Herre, 1953), needs confirmation, a spotted eagle ray seen at Malabon mkt. but identity could not be confirmed. Herre (1953) gives records from Taytay Bay, Palawan; Sulu Islands; Jolo Is., Sulu Prov.; Manila Bay, San Miguel Bay, Sorsogon Mtk., Sorsogon Prov, Luzon; Abuyog, Leyte Province; Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov., Mindinao. Specimens in Philippine Bureau of Science and Ateneo de Manila Museum.

Aetomylaeus milvus (Valenciennes, *in* Müller & Henle, 1841). Ocellate eagle ray. Nominal, Fowler (1941) from Manila, Luzon.

Aetomylaeus nichofii (Bloch & Schneider, 1801). Banded eagle ray. Nominal, Fowler (1941) from Cavite, Luzon.

FAMILY RHINOPTERIDAE. COWNOSE RAYS.

Rhinoptera javanica Müller & Henle, 1841. Javanese cownose ray or flapnose ray. Bolinao market. Fowler (1941) gave records from Manila. Herre (1953), from SW Samar; Manila Bay, Ragay Gulf, Manila Mkt., Luzon.

FAMILY MOBULIDAE. DEVIL RAYS.

Manta birostris (Donndorff, 1798). Manta. Possibly from Philippines, but no solid records.

Mobula eregoodootenkee (Bleeker, 1859). Longfin devilray. di Sciara (1987), specimens. Herre (1953): Nominal under this name, but including citations of *kuhlii*, *thurstoni*. Nominal records on specimens from Manila Bay, Mariveles Bay Pataan Prov; Calabanga, Camarines Sur Prov. (San Miguel Bay); Luzon. Maqueda Bay, Samar; Cebu mkt., Cebu; Dumaguete; Siquijor; Zamboanga, Zamboanga Prov. Mindanao; Tawitawi, Sibutu, and Sitankai, Sulu Prov.

Mobula sp. with white spot, seen in Manila Market, possibly *thurstoni* but not confirmed.

APPENDIX 5 MARINE PROTECTED AREAS (MPAS) IN THE PHILIPPINES

MPA name	Aim
Acha Reef Fish Sanctuary	For protection of habitat of reef fishes and other marine flora and fauna; as gene pool for other reefs
Caranan Fish Sanctuary	
Otoc Pt. Fish Sanctuary	
Alibijaban Island Mangrove Wilderness Area and Marine Protected Area	For protection of mangroves and reefs
Naro Island Wildlife Sanctuary	Mangrove wilderness area
Chico Island Wildlife Sanctruary	Mangrove wilderness area
Sagay Protected Landscape and Seascape	Protection and conservation of ecological, biological, scenic, scientific and educational features. For sustainable development
Bantayan Island Wilderness Area	Marine Sanctuary a no-take-zone
Siargao Protected landscape and Seascape	For protection and conservation of biological diversity and unique features for public enjoyment
Talibon Group of Islands Protected Landscape/Seascape	Protection of wilderness area and surrounding waters
Albuquerque-Loay-Loboc protected Landscape/seascape	Protection of mangrove swamp forest reserve of Albuquerque coastal areas of Loay and riverside of Loboc
Aguining Fish Sanctuary	For fishery management
Tulapos Fish Sanctuary	For protection of coastal area and resources
Baliangao Wetland Park	For protection of mangroves and coral reefs
Apo Island Protected Landscape and Seascape	For protection of marine habitats
Agutayan Fish Sanctuary	For rehabilitation
Initao Protected Landscape and Seascape	For protection of forest and management of marine park
Duca Marine Reserve	For protection of coral reefs
Mantangle Marine Sanctuary	For protection of coral reefs

Hulaw-Hulaw Marine Sanctuary	For conservation of reefs
Biri Larosa Protected Landscape/Seascape	Protection of coastal areas, neighboring islands and surrounding reefs
Aliguay Island Protected Landscape/Seascape	Protection of Aliguay Island Island and buffer zones
Selinog Island protected Landscape and Seascape	
Great and Little Sta. Cruz Islands Protected Landscape and Seascape	Tourist zone and marine reserve
Dumanguilas Bay Protected Landscape and Seascape	
Sarangani Bay Protected Seascape	For protection and conservation of coastal marine resources for benefit and enjoyment of the people of the Sulu-Sulawesi Seas
Mabini Protected Landscape and Seascape	Protection of Pindasan Island mangrove wilderness area and Kopiat island and surrounding portions of Davao Gulf
Murcielagos Island Protected Landscape and Seascape	
Gui-Ob Reef, Malalison Islands	No Take zone
Danjugan Island Marine Reserve and Wildlife Sanctuary	For protection of terrestrial and marine biodiversity
Bongalongan Marine Reserve	For conservation